



# **unfoldingWord® Translation Notes**

**Isaiah**

**Version 78**

[en]

# Copyrights and Licensing

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Notes**

**Date:** 2024-01-18

**Version:** 78

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Literal Text**

**Date:** 2024-01-18

**Version:** 78

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Simplified Text**

**Date:** 2024-01-18

**Version:** 78

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Hebrew Bible**

**Date:** 2022-10-11

**Version:** 2.1.30

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Greek New Testament**

**Date:** 2023-09-26

**Version:** 0.34

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Academy**

**Date:** 2024-01-18

**Version:** 78

**Published by:** unfoldingWord®

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Words**

**Date:** 2024-01-18

**Version:** 78

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Words Links**

**Date:** 2024-01-18

**Version:** 78

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

*unfoldingWord® Translation Notes*

*Copyright © 2022 by unfoldingWord*

This work is made available under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License. To view a copy of this license, visit <https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/> or send a letter to Creative Commons, PO Box 1866, Mountain View, CA 94042, USA.

unfoldingWord® is a registered trademark of unfoldingWord. Use of the unfoldingWord name or logo requires the written permission of unfoldingWord. Under the terms of the CC BY-SA license, you may copy and redistribute this unmodified work as long as you keep the unfoldingWord® trademark intact. If you modify a copy or translate this work, thereby creating a derivative work, you must remove the unfoldingWord® trademark.

On the derivative work, you must indicate what changes you have made and attribute the work as follows: "The original work by unfoldingWord is available from [unfoldingword.org/utn](https://unfoldingword.org/utn)". You must also make your derivative work available under the same license (CC BY-SA).

If you would like to notify unfoldingWord regarding your translation of this work, please contact us at [unfoldingword.org/contact/](https://unfoldingword.org/contact/).

# Table of Contents

<b>unfoldingWord® Translation Notes</b>	<b>7</b>
Isaiah	7
Introduction to Isaiah	8
Isaiah 1	10
Isaiah 2	42
Isaiah 3	66
Isaiah 4	93
Isaiah 5	100
Isaiah 6	132
Isaiah 7	146
Isaiah 8	172
Isaiah 9	195
Isaiah 10	217
Isaiah 11	252
Isaiah 12	269
Isaiah 13	276
Isaiah 14	299
Isaiah 15	332
Isaiah 16	342
Isaiah 17	357
Isaiah 18	372
Isaiah 19	380
Isaiah 20	406
Isaiah 21	413
Isaiah 22	431
Isaiah 23	457
Isaiah 24	476
Isaiah 25	500
Isaiah 26	513
Isaiah 27	535
Isaiah 28	549
Isaiah 29	579
Isaiah 30	604
Isaiah 31	638
Isaiah 32	649
Isaiah 33	670
Isaiah 34	695
Isaiah 35	713
Isaiah 36	724
Isaiah 37	747
Isaiah 38	786
Isaiah 39	809
Isaiah 40	818
Isaiah 41	850
Isaiah 42	880
Isaiah 43	906
Isaiah 44	935
Isaiah 45	964
Isaiah 46	990

Isaiah 47	1004
Isaiah 48	1020
Isaiah 49	1043
Isaiah 50	1070
Isaiah 51	1082
Isaiah 52	1106
Isaiah 53	1122
Isaiah 54	1135
Isaiah 55	1153
Isaiah 56	1167
Isaiah 57	1180
Isaiah 58	1202
Isaiah 59	1217
Isaiah 60	1239
Isaiah 61	1262
Isaiah 62	1274
Isaiah 63	1287
Isaiah 64	1307
Isaiah 65	1320
Isaiah 66	1346
<b>unfoldingWord® Translation Academy</b>	<b>1371</b>
Abstract Nouns	1372
Active or Passive	1374
Apostrophe	1377
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information	1379
Background Information	1383
Biblical Volume	1386
Direct and Indirect Quotations	1389
Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding	1391
Double Negatives	1394
Doublet	1397
Ellipsis	1399
Euphemism	1402
Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'	1404
First, Second or Third Person	1406
Forms of You	1408
Generic Noun Phrases	1409
Go and Come	1411
Hendiadys	1413
How to Translate Names	1416
Hyperbole	1420
Hypothetical Situations	1424
Idiom	1427
Imperatives — Other Uses	1429
Introduction of a New Event	1432
Irony	1435
Litotes	1438
Merism	1440
Metaphor	1442
Metonymy	1449
Nominal Adjectives	1452

Numbers .....	1454
Ordinal Numbers .....	1457
Parables .....	1459
Parallelism .....	1461
Personification .....	1464
Possession .....	1466
Predictive Past .....	1469
Pronouns .....	1471
Proverbs .....	1473
Rhetorical Question .....	1475
Simile .....	1479
Symbolic Action .....	1482
Symbolic Language .....	1484
Synecdoche .....	1486
Textual Variants .....	1488
Translate Unknowns .....	1490
<b>unfoldingWord® Translation Words .....</b>	<b>1493</b>
anoint, anointed, anointing .....	1494
atonement, atone, atoned .....	1495
blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous .....	1496
Christ, Messiah .....	1497
eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever .....	1499
evil, wicked, unpleasant .....	1501
faith .....	1503
faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy .....	1505
fulfill, fulfilled, carried out .....	1507
God .....	1508
god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry .....	1510
heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly .....	1512
holy, holiness, unholy, sacred .....	1514
Israel, Israelites .....	1516
judge, judgment .....	1518
just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification .....	1520
last day, last days, latter days .....	1522
people of God .....	1523
promise, promised .....	1524
prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess .....	1525
remnant .....	1527
repent, repentance .....	1528
restore, restoration .....	1530
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning .....	1531
trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness .....	1533
wrath, fury .....	1534
<b>Contributors .....</b>	<b>1535</b>
unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors .....	1535
unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors .....	1541
unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors .....	1542
unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors .....	1543
unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors .....	1543
unfoldingWord® Translation Words Links Contributors .....	1544



# **unfoldingWord® Translation Notes**

## **Isaiah**

## Introduction to Isaiah

### Part 1: General Introduction

#### Outline of the Book of Isaiah

Yahweh judges his people but gives them hope (chapters 1–12)

Isaiah prophesies against many nations (13–23)

Universal judgment and promise of redemption (24–27)

The people of Yahweh judged (28–31)

The righteous kingdom (32–33)

The nations judged; the ransomed will be restored (34–35)

Hezekiah and Sennacherib (36–39)

Yahweh comforts his people and will restore them (40–45)

Prophecies against Babylon (46–48)

The servant of Yahweh (49–55)

Ethics of Yahweh's kingdom (56–59)

Restored Jerusalem (60–66)

#### What is the Book of Isaiah about?

The first part of the Book of Isaiah (chapters 1–39) contains many different prophecies. Some of Isaiah's prophecies are about how God would send an army to destroy the southern kingdom of Judah. Some of the prophecies are about how God would punish other nations of the world. The end of the first part (chapters 36–39) tells how Isaiah helped King Hezekiah when the Assyrians were about to attack Jerusalem.

The second part of the Book of Isaiah (chapters 40–66) has prophecies about how God will comfort and restore his people. He will do this through his chosen servant. By the suffering of this servant, God will forgive his people (chapter 53). This servant will also cause Gentiles to worship Yahweh. The Book of Isaiah ends with a prophecy about God creating a new heavens and earth.

#### How should the title of this book be translated?

Translators can use the traditional title, "The Book of Isaiah" or just "Isaiah." Or they may call it "The Book about Isaiah" or "The Sayings of Isaiah." (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

#### When was the Book of Isaiah written?

Isaiah prophesied around 740–700 B.C., when the Assyrian Empire was becoming more powerful. Isaiah spoke the prophecies from God to the people of Judah during the reigns of Kings Uzziah, Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah. The story of Isaiah helping King Hezekiah (chapters 36–39) is also found in 2 Kings 19–20.

### Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

#### What did Isaiah prophesy about the future Messiah of Israel?

Jews and Christians have interpreted many passages in Isaiah to be about the Messiah. In 9:1–7, Isaiah described a child being born who would rule over David's kingdom. In chapter 11, Isaiah described a descendant of David who would have God's spirit upon him. Several prophecies in chapters 40–66 are about "the servant." This servant will



comfort the people, rule righteously, and suffer so that God will forgive the people for sinning against him. The New Testament writers interpret these prophecies to be about Jesus Christ.

## What did Isaiah mean by the “last days”?

Isaiah prophesied of the “last days” (2:2) as some later or final period of time. The New Testament writers understood the “last days” to be the church age (Acts 2:17, Hebrews 1:2). The Book of Isaiah was one of the first books to include prophecies about the last days. Isaiah explained that in the last days there would be a future kingdom of Israel. Jerusalem would be its main city. And people from all over the world will go there to learn about Yahweh and worship him.

## Part 3: Important Translation Issues

### What is the meaning of the term “Israel”?

The name “Israel” is used in many different ways in the Bible. Jacob was the son of Isaac. God changed Jacob’s name to Israel. The descendants of Jacob became a nation also called Israel. Eventually, the nation of Israel split into two kingdoms. The northern kingdom was named Israel. The southern kingdom was named Judah. (See: **Israel, Israelites (p.1516)**)

### What are some characteristics of prophetic literature in the Book of Isaiah?

Most of Isaiah’s prophecies are in poetic form. Many prophets in Israel used poetry when they spoke important messages that were meant to be remembered.

Sometimes Isaiah’s messages are hard to understand. He assumed his original hearers would know what he was talking about. But readers today do not always understand what he meant. However, Isaiah’s basic messages are still clear to us today. These messages are about how God’s people sinned against him, how he would punish them, and how he would eventually comfort and restore them.

Isaiah also speaks about the Servant of Yahweh, in four different poems that are today called the “Four Servant Songs.” Christians understand these very clearly as prophecies about Jesus Christ, the Messiah. These “songs” are in Isaiah 42:1-9; 49:1-7; 50:4-9; and 52:13-53:12. (See: [\[\[rc://tw/dict/bible/kt/sin\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc://tw/dict/bible/kt/mercy\]\]](#) and **Christ, Messiah (p.1497)**)

# Isaiah 1

## Isaiah 1 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 1:2-31, which is a vision Isaiah receives. These are the words of Yahweh.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Woe

The prophecy of this chapter serves as a warning to the people of the kingdom of Judah. If they do not change their evil ways, Yahweh will punish them. (See: [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/woe\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/prophet\]\]](#) and **evil, wicked, unpleasant (p.1501)**)

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Metaphors

There are many vivid metaphors used to describe Judah's sin. Their sin is described as a sickness that spreads. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/sin\]\]](#))

#### Rhetorical Questions

Yahweh uses several rhetorical questions in this chapter. The purpose of these questions is to convince the people of Judah of their sin. (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

## Isaiah 1:1

### The vision of Isaiah & that he saw

Alternate translation: "This is the vision of Isaiah ... that Yahweh showed him" or "This is what God showed Isaiah"

### Amoz

Amoz was the father of Isaiah. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

### Judah and Jerusalem

"Judah" refers to the southern kingdom of Israel. "Jerusalem" was its most important city. The names of the places represent the people who live in them. Alternate translation: "those living in Judah and Jerusalem" or "the people of Judah and Jerusalem" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### in the days of Uzziah, Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah, kings of Judah

This is an idiom and refers to the time when each king reigned. They reigned one after the other, not all at the same time. Alternate translation: "when Uzziah, Jotham, Ahaz and Hezekiah were kings of Judah" (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

## Isaiah 1:2

### General Information:

## General Information:

Isaiah speaks to the people of Judah in the form of a poem. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### Hear, heavens, and give ear, earth

Although these prophecies were meant for the people of Jerusalem and Judah to hear, Isaiah knows they will not listen. This could mean: (1) he speaks in apostrophe, as though the “heavens” and “earth” would be able to listen to what Yahweh said, or (2) the words “heavens” and “earth” are metonyms and a merism for all living beings everywhere. Alternate translation: “you who live in the heavens ... you who live on the earth” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-apostrophe\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-personification\]\]](#) and **Merism (p.1440)**) (See: **Apostrophe (p.1377)**)

### Yahweh

This is the name of God that he revealed to his people in the Old Testament. See the translationWord page about Yahweh concerning how to translate this.

### I have nourished and brought up children, but they have rebelled against me

Words that Yahweh spoke and which Isaiah is speaking to the Israelites for Yahweh.

### I have nourished and brought up children

Yahweh speaks as if his words were food and as if the Israelites were his children. Alternate translation: “I have taken care of the people living in Judah like they were my children” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 1:3

### The ox knows & does not understand

Words that Yahweh spoke and which Isaiah is speaking to the Israelites for Yahweh.

### the donkey his master's feeding trough

You can make clear the understood information. Alternate translation: "the donkey knows his master's feeding trough" or "the donkey knows where his master gives him food" (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**) (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**)

### but Israel does not know, Israel does not understand

This probably means "but the people of Israel do not know me, they do not understand that I am the one who cares for them."

## Israel

This is a metonym for the people of Israel. Judah is part of what had been the nation of Israel. Alternate translation: "the people of Israel" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 1:4

### General Information:

## General Information:

Isaiah speaks to the people of Judah in the form of a poem. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### Nation, sinners

This could mean: (1) Isaiah is saying two different things about them. Alternate translation: "Nation of Israel, you sinners" or (2) he is saying only one thing about them. Alternate translation: "Nation of sinners"

### a people weighed down with iniquity

Something very heavy that a person might carry is a metaphor for their many sins. Alternate translation: "their sin is like a heavy bag on their shoulders that makes it hard for them to walk" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### offspring of evildoers

The word "offspring" is a metaphor for people who do what others have done. Alternate translation: "people who do the same evil they see others doing" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### act corruptly

do evil deeds

### They have abandoned Yahweh

Alternate translation: "They have gone away from Yahweh"

### have despised

Alternate translation: "have refused to obey" or "have refused to respect"

### Israel

Judah is part of what had been the nation of Israel.

### they have estranged themselves from him

Though at one time they were friends, they now treat him as though they do not know him.

## Isaiah 1:5

### General Information:

## General Information:

Isaiah speaks to the people of Judah in the form of a poem. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### Why are you still being beaten? Why do you rebel more and more?

Isaiah uses these questions to scold the people of Judah. The questions can be translated as statements. This can also be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "You keep doing things that Yahweh has to punish you for. You continue to rebel against him." (See: [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-rquestion\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### you

Here the word "you" refers to the people who live in Judah and so is plural. (See: **Forms of You (p.1408)**) (See: **Forms of You (p.1408)**)

### The whole head is sick, the whole heart is weak

This metaphor compares the nation of Israel to a person who has been beaten. Alternate translation: "You are like someone whose head is wounded and whose heart is weak" or "You are like someone whose whole mind and heart are sick" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 1:6

### there is no part unharmed

This can be stated positively. It can also be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “every part of you has been harmed” or “someone has harmed every part of you” (See: **Double Negatives (p.1394)**) (See: **Double Negatives (p.1394)**)

### they have not been closed, cleansed, bandaged, nor treated with oil

This metaphor compares the punishment God has given Israel to physical wounds. It can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “no one has closed, cleansed, bandaged, or treated them with oil” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)



## Isaiah 1:7

### General Information:

## General Information:

Isaiah speaks to the people of Judah in the form of a poem. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### Your country is ruined

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “They have ruined your country” or “Your enemies have ruined your country” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### your cities are burned

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “they have burned your cities” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### your fields—in your presence, strangers are destroying them

Alternate translation: “people who are not from your own country steal the crops from your fields while you watch”

### abandoned devastation

“empty and devastated.” This abstract noun phrase can be expressed as verbal phrases. Alternate translation: “they have destroyed the land and no one lives there” (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**)

### overthrown by strangers

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “strangers have overthrown your country” or “a foreign army has completely conquered it” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 1:8

### The daughter of Zion is left

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “I have left the daughter of Zion” (See: **Active or Passive (p. 1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p. 1374)**)

### The daughter of Zion

The “daughter” of a city means the people of the city. Alternate translation: “The people of Zion” or “The people who live in Zion” (See: **Idiom (p. 1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p. 1427)**)

### is left like a hut in a vineyard, like a shed in a garden of cucumbers

This could mean: (1) “has become as small as a hut in a vineyard or a shed in a garden of cucumbers” or (2) “is left the way a farmer leaves a hut in a vineyard or a shed in a garden of cucumbers when he is finished with them” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-simile\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-explicit\]\]](#)) (See: **Simile (p. 1479)**)

### like & cucumbers, like a besieged city

Another possible meaning is “like ... cucumbers. She is a besieged city”

## Isaiah 1:9

### General Information:

## General Information:

Isaiah speaks to the people of Judah in the form of a poem. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### If Yahweh

This describes something that could have happened in the past but did not. (See: **Hypothetical Situations (p.1424)**) (See: **Hypothetical Situations (p.1424)**)

### a small remnant

Alternate translation: "a few survivors"

### us & we

Here these words refer to Isaiah and includes all the people of Judah and Jerusalem. (See: **Exclusive and Inclusive 'We' (p.1404)**) (See: **Exclusive and Inclusive 'We' (p.1404)**)

### we would have been like Sodom, we would have been like Gomorrah

How Judah would have been like Sodom and Gomorrah can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "God would have destroyed us, like he destroyed the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-explicit\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-simile\]\]](#)) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

## Isaiah 1:10

### General Information:

## General Information:

Isaiah speaks to the people of Judah in the form of a poem. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### you rulers of Sodom & you people of Gomorrah

Isaiah is comparing the people of Judah to Sodom and Gomorrah to emphasize how sinful they have become. Alternate translation: “you rulers who are as sinful as the people of Sodom ... you people who are as wicked as those who lived in Gomorrah” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 1:11

### What is the multitude of your sacrifices to me?

God is using a question to scold the people. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this question as a statement. Alternate translation: "Your many sacrifices mean nothing to me!" (See: **Rhetorical Question (p. 1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

## Isaiah 1:12

### General Information:

## General Information:

Isaiah speaks Yahweh's words to the people of Judah in the form of a poem. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### who has required this of you, to trample my courts?

The word “trample” means to step on and crush with one’s feet. God is using a question to scold the people who live in Judah. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this question as a statement. Alternate translation: “no one told you to stomp around in my courtyards!” (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

## Isaiah 1:13

### Bring no more meaningless offerings

Alternate translation: "Do not bring me any more of your worthless gifts"

### incense is an abomination to me

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **abomination**, you can express the same idea with the verb "hate." Alternate translation: "I hate the incense the priests burn" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p. 1372)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**)

### I cannot tolerate these wicked assemblies

This could mean: (1) "I cannot allow you to gather together because of the wicked things you do" or (2) "I cannot allow myself to watch you gather together because of the wicked things you do."

## Isaiah 1:14

### General Information:

## General Information:

Isaiah speaks Yahweh's words to the people of Judah in the form of a poem. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### your new moons and your appointed feasts

The words "new moons" are a metonym for the celebrations of the new moon. They are also a synecdoche for all regular celebrations. Alternate translation: "your celebrations of the new moon and your other regular feasts" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-synecdoche\]\]](#)) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### new moons

A new moon is when the moon first shows light after having been dark.

### they are a burden to me; I am tired of enduring them

This compares how God feels about the people's celebrations to carrying a heavy object. Alternate translation: "they are a heavy load that I am tired of carrying" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)



## Isaiah 1:15

### I hide my eyes from you

This idiom is a way of saying “I will not look at you” or “I will not pay attention to you” (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

### your hands are full of blood

This is the reason that God will not listen to their prayers. The blood likely refers to violence that they have done against people. Alternate translation: “because it is like your hands are covered with the blood of those you have harmed” or “because you are guilty of violence” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 1:16

### General Information:

## General Information:

Isaiah speaks Yahweh's words to the people of Judah in the form of a poem. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### Wash, cleanse yourselves

Here God compares a person who stops sinning with one who washes his body. Alternate translation: "Repent and wash the sin from your heart like you wash the dirt from your body" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### remove the evil of your deeds from my sight

God was not telling them to do their evil deeds somewhere else, but to stop doing them. Alternate translation: "stop doing the evil deeds that I see you doing" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 1:17

### make straight the oppression

God speaks of people who oppress others as if they had made crooked something that should be straight, and he calls on them to make that object straight again. If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **oppression**, you can express the same idea with a verbal form. Alternate translation: “make sure that those helpless people you have harmed no longer suffer from the bad things you have done to them” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-abstractnouns\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### give justice to the fatherless

Alternate translation: “be fair to the children who do not have fathers”

### defend the widow

Alternate translation: “protect the women whose husbands have died”

## Isaiah 1:18

### Come now, and let

Yahweh graciously and lovingly invites the people to listen to what he is about to say. “Please listen to me. Let” or “Pay attention; I want to help you. Let”

### let us reason together

“let us think about this together” or “we need to discuss this” or “what are we going to do?” Yahweh invites the people to discuss the future. Here the word “us” refers to Yahweh and includes the people of Judah. (See: **Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’ (p.1404)**) (See: **Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’ (p.1404)**)

### though your sins are like scarlet, they will be white like snow; though they are red like crimson, they will be like wool

Isaiah is speaking of the people as if they were wearing clothes that were supposed to be white wool and of their sins as if they were red stains on the clothes. If Yahweh forgives their sins, it will be as if their clothes become white again. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### like scarlet

Scarlet is a bright red color. Alternate translation: “bright red” (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

### white like snow

White is often a symbol for holiness or purity. “Snow” refers to something like frozen rain that is very white. Since this simply describes something as very white, you could replace it with something else that is white: “white as a seashell” or “white as a dove.” This means that their sins will be forgiven. (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

### red like crimson

Crimson is a dark red color. Alternate translation: “dark red” (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

### like wool

Wool is the hair of a sheep or goat. How they will be like wool can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “white like wool” (See: [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-explicit\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-simile\]\]](#)) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

## **Isaiah 1:19**

### **If you are willing and obedient**

Here, “willing” and “obedient” are used together to express one idea. Alternate translation: “If you willingly obey”  
(See: **Hendiadys (p.1413)**) (See: **Hendiadys (p.1413)**)

### **you will eat the good of the land**

Alternate translation: “the land will produce good food for you to eat”

## Isaiah 1:20

### but if you refuse and rebel

Alternate translation: “but if you refuse to listen and instead disobey me”

### the sword will devour you

The word “sword” refers to Judah’s enemies. Also, the word “devour” compares Judah’s enemies coming to kill them to a wild animal that attacks and eats other animals. Alternate translation: “your enemies will kill you” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### the mouth of Yahweh has spoken it

The word “mouth” emphasizes that Yahweh has spoken and what he says will certainly happen. Alternate translation: “Yahweh has spoken” or “Yahweh has said that this will happen” (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

## Isaiah 1:21

### General Information:

## General Information:

Isaiah speaks to the people of Judah in the form of a poem. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### How the faithful city

This exclamation shows Isaiah's anger and sadness about the people of Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "See how the people of Jerusalem, who had been faithful to God" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### has become a prostitute

Isaiah compared the people to a woman who is not loyal to her husband but who sleeps with other men for money. The people were no longer loyal to God but were worshiping false gods. Alternate translation: "acts like a prostitute" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### but now she is full of murderers

The word "she" refers to Jerusalem and its people. Those who wrote the Bible often refer to cities as women. Alternate translation: "but now the people of Jerusalem are murderers" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 1:22

### Your silver has become impure, your wine mixed with water

Possible meanings are that Isaiah uses silver and wine as metaphors for: (1) the people of Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "You are like silver that is no longer pure, and like wine that is mixed with water" or (2) the good deeds that the people formerly did. Alternate translation: "You used to do good deeds, but now your bad deeds make your good deeds worthless" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

#### silver & impure

Someone needs to clean silver often or it will no longer shine brightly.

#### wine & water

Wine with water in it has little taste and so is no better than water.



## Isaiah 1:23

### General Information:

## General Information:

Isaiah speaks Yahweh's words to the people of Judah in the form of a poem. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### Your princes are rebels

Alternate translation: "Your leaders rebel against God"

### companions of thieves

Alternate translation: "they are friends with people who steal from others"

### bribes & payoffs

People give "bribes" as gifts to dishonest rulers so the rulers will then act unjustly. Rulers receive "payoffs" as gifts from those who make profits from unjust laws that the ruler has passed.

### runs after payoffs

A person eagerly desiring for someone to give him a bribe is spoken of as if the payoff were running away and the person were running after it. Alternate translation: "everyone desires for someone to pay money to them to make dishonest decisions" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### They do not defend the fatherless

Alternate translation: "they do not protect those who do not have fathers"

### nor does the widow's legal plea come before them

Alternate translation: "nor do they listen when widows go to them for help against those who break the law" or "and they do not help widows who go to them for help against those who break the law"

## Isaiah 1:24

### General Information:

## General Information:

Isaiah begins to speak Yahweh's words to the people of Judah in the form of a poem. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### Therefore

Alternate translation: "For that reason"

### this is the declaration of the Lord Yahweh of hosts, the Mighty One of Israel

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. Alternate translation: "this is what the Lord Yahweh of hosts, the Mighty One of Israel, has declared" or "this is what I, Yahweh, the Mighty One of Israel, have declared" (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1406)**) (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1406)**)

### I will take vengeance against my adversaries, and avenge myself against my enemies

Both of these phrases mean basically the same thing. The words "take vengeance against my adversaries" speak more of Yahweh doing whatever he needs to do to those who work against him so he can be happy. The words "avenge myself against my enemies" speak more of Yahweh justly punishing his enemies. Alternate translation: "I will punish those who opposed me" or "I will do what pleases me to those who work against me, and I will justly punish my enemies" (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

## Isaiah 1:25

### I will turn my hand against you

Here “hand” refers to God’s power which he would use to punish his people. Alternate translation: “I will begin to use all my power against you” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### refine away your dross as with lye

Here the process in which God removes his people’s sin is spoken of as if he were separating metal from the bad things mixed with it. The words “as with lye” adds another metaphor, because lye is used in soap, not in refining metal. Alternate translation: “and like fire removing the dirt from silver, I will remove all the evil from among you” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### dross

This is the dirt and other things that people remove from metals so the metal will be pure.

## Isaiah 1:26

### General Information:

## General Information:

Isaiah speaks to the people of Judah in the form of a poem. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### at the first & at the beginning

These are two ways of speaking of the first part or beginning of Israel's history, when Israel first became a nation.

### you will be called

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "people will call you" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### the city of righteousness, a faithful town

Here "city" and "town" refer to the people living in Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "the city where the people are righteous and loyal to God" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 1:27

### General Information:

## General Information:

Isaiah speaks Yahweh's words to the people of Judah in the form of a poem. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### **Zion will be redeemed by justice, and her repentant ones by righteousness**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. This could mean: (1) "Yahweh will redeem Zion because the people there do what is just, and he will redeem those who repent because they do what Yahweh says is right" or (2) "Yahweh will redeem Zion because he is just, and he will redeem those who repent because he is righteous" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#)) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### **Zion**

This is a metonym for the people who live on Mount Zion. (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 1:28

### Rebels and sinners will be crushed together

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “God will destroy those who rebel and sin against him” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### those who abandon Yahweh will be done away with

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “and Yahweh will completely do away with those who turn away from him” or “and Yahweh will kill all who reject him” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 1:29

### General Information:

## General Information:

Isaiah speaks Yahweh's words to the people of Judah in the form of a poem. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### the sacred oak trees & gardens

These phrases refer to places where the people of Judah worshiped idols.

### you will be embarrassed by

Some versions read, "you will blush because of." A person blushes when his face turns hot and red, often because he feels that he has done something wrong.

## Isaiah 1:30

**For you will be like an oak whose leaf fades, and like a garden that has no water**

Water gives life to trees and gardens. The people have cut themselves off from Yahweh, who gives them life. (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)



## Isaiah 1:31

### General Information:

## General Information:

Isaiah speaks Yahweh's words to the people of Judah in the form of a poem. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### The strong man

"The strong person" or "Whoever is powerful." This may refer to people who are important and who influence other people.

### tinder

dry material that burns easily

### his work like a spark

This compares the person's deeds or evil works to a spark that falls on tinder and sets it on fire. Alternate translation: "his work will be like a spark that starts a fire" (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

## Isaiah 2

### Isaiah 2 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 2:2-22.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Latter days

This is probably a reference to the “last days.” This makes parts of this prophecy reference events near the end of this world. Most scholars expect these prophecies to be fulfilled by Jesus. (See: [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/lastday\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/prophet\]\]](#) and **fulfill, fulfilled, carried out (p.1507)**)

#### Idolatry

While the first prophecy of Isaiah concerned the lack of justice in Judah, this chapter focuses on the presence of idolatry in Judah. (See: **just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification (p.1520)**)

## Isaiah 2:1

### General Information:

## General Information:

Isaiah speaks to the people of Judah in the form of a poem. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### Judah and Jerusalem

“Judah” and “Jerusalem” are metonyms for the people who live there. Alternate translation: “those living in Judah and Jerusalem” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 2:2

### in the last days

Alternate translation: “in the future”

### the mountain of Yahweh’s house will be established

This can be stated (1) as a description. Alternate translation: “The mountain of Yahweh’s house will stand” or (2) in active form. Alternate translation: “Yahweh will establish the mountain on which his temple is built” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### as the highest of the mountains

Isaiah speaks of importance as if it were physical height. Alternate translation: “the most important of the mountains” or “the most important place in the world” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### it will be raised up above the hills

Isaiah speaks of honor in metaphor as if it were physical height. This can be stated (1) in active form. Alternate translation: “Yahweh will honor it more than any other hill” or (2) as a metonym for the people who worship there. Alternate translation: “Yahweh will honor the people who worship there more than he honors any other people” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#) and **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### all the nations

Here “nations” is a metonym for the people of those nations. Alternate translation: “people from all the nations” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### will flow to it

The people around the world going to the mountain of Yahweh is compared to how a river flows. This emphasizes that many people will come, not just a few people. Alternate translation: “will flow like a river to it” or “will go to it” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 2:3

### General Information:

## General Information:

Isaiah speaks to the people of Judah in the form of a poem. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### Jacob, so he may teach & and we may walk

Another possible meaning is "Jacob. He will teach ... and we will walk"

### he may teach us some of his ways, and we may walk in his paths

The words "ways" and "paths" are metaphors for the way a person lives. If your language has only one word for the ground on which people walk, you may combine these phrases. Alternate translation: "he may teach us his will so that we may obey him" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### For out of Zion will go the law, and the word of Yahweh from Jerusalem

These phrases mean the same thing. Isaiah was emphasizing that all nations will understand that the truth is found in Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "People in Zion will teach God's law, and people in Jerusalem will teach the word of Yahweh" (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### For out of Zion will go the law

"For the law will go out from Zion." Isaiah speaks as if the law were something like a river that moves without people doing anything. Alternate translation: "Those to whom they teach the law will go out from Zion" or "Yahweh will proclaim his law from Zion" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### the word of Yahweh from Jerusalem

"the word of Yahweh will go out from Jerusalem." Isaiah speaks as if the word of Yahweh were something like a river that moves without people doing anything. You can make clear the understood information. Alternate translation: "Those to whom they teach the word of Yahweh will go out from Jerusalem" or "Yahweh will proclaim his word from Jerusalem" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 2:4

### General Information:

### General Information:

Isaiah speaks to the people of Judah in the form of a poem. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### He will judge

Alternate translation: "Yahweh will judge"

### will render decisions

Alternate translation: "will solve disputes"

### they will hammer their swords into plowshares, and their spears into pruning hooks

The people of the nations will turn their weapons of war into tools for farming.

### swords & spears & sword

These words are synecdoches for weapons of any kind. (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### plowshares & pruning hooks

These words are synecdoches for tools of any kind that people use in peaceful activity. (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### they will hammer their swords into plowshares

"they will make their swords into tools for planting seeds." A plowshare is a blade that people use to dig into soil so they can plant seeds there.

### their spears into pruning hooks

"they will hammer their spears into pruning hooks" or "they will make their spears into tools for caring for plants." A pruning hook is a knife that people use to cut unwanted branches off of plants.

### nation will not lift up sword against nation

"no nation will lift up its sword against another nation." The sword is a metonym for war. Alternate translation: "one nation will not fight wars against another nation" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## **nor will they train for war**

“nor will they even train to fight wars.” The writer expects his reader to believe that those who fight wars train before they fight and that some who train do not fight.

## Isaiah 2:5

### General Information:

## General Information:

In 2:5 Isaiah speaks to the people of Judah, and in 2:6 he speaks to Yahweh. Both times he speaks in the form of a poem. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### House of Jacob

“You descendants of Jacob.” The word “house” is a metonym for the people who live in the house, the family. Here “Jacob” represents the nation of Judah, but it would be best to use “Jacob” here. (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### come

a gentle encouragement to do what the speaker is about to tell the hearer to do

### let us walk in the light of Yahweh

Isaiah speaks of people learning and then doing what Yahweh wants them to do as if they were walking at night with a lamp that Yahweh has provided so they can see the path. Alternate translation: “let us learn how Yahweh wants us to live and then live that way” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)



## Isaiah 2:6

### For you have abandoned your people

“For you have left your people” and do not care what happens to them. Here the word “you” refers to Yahweh and so is singular. (See: **Pronouns (p.1471)**) (See: **Pronouns (p.1471)**)

### they are filled with customs from the east

Isaiah speaks as if the people were containers who were full of something from the east. Possible meanings are that he speaks of: (1) the deeds that the eastern peoples do. Alternate translation: “they do all the time the evil things the people who live in lands east of Israel do” or (2) people, specifically those who claim to speak to dead people, who have come from the east to do evil deeds. Alternate translation: “many diviners have come from the east and now live there” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-explicit\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### they practice divination

they try to tell the future by looking at things like animal parts and leaves

### they shake hands with sons of foreigners

Clasping hands together is the symbol of friendship and peace. Alternate translation: “they make peace and work together with people who are not from Israel” (See: **Symbolic Action (p.1482)**) (See: **Symbolic Action (p.1482)**)

## Isaiah 2:7

### General Information:

## General Information:

Isaiah speaks to Yahweh in the form of a poem. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### Their land is full of silver and gold & their land also is full of horses

Isaiah speaks as if the land were a container in which someone had placed silver, horses, and idols. The word “land” is a metonym for the people themselves, and the words “is full of” is a metaphor for the people possessing these items. Alternate translation: “They possess much silver and gold ... they also possess many horses” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 2:8

### Their land also is full of idols

Isaiah speaks as if the land were a container in which someone had placed silver, horses, and idols. The word “land” is a metonym for the people themselves, and the words “is full of” is a metaphor for the people possessing these items. Alternate translation: “They also possess many idols” (See: [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### the craftsmanship of their own hands, things that their own fingers have made

These two phrases mean almost the same thing and emphasize that these are not real gods. If your language has no general word for something someone has made, you can combine these two phrases into one. Alternate translation: “things that they themselves have made” (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### craftsmanship of their own hands

The word “hands” is a synecdoche for the people themselves. Alternate translation: “their own craftsmanship” or “their own work” or “things they have made with their hands” (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### things that their own fingers have made

The word “fingers” is a synecdoche for the people themselves. Alternate translation: “things that they have made with their own fingers” (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

## Isaiah 2:9

### General Information:

## General Information:

In 2:9 Isaiah finishes speaking to Yahweh. In 2:10-11 Isaiah speaks to the people of Judah. Both times he speaks in the form of a poem. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### The people will be bowed down, and individuals will fall down

Here being low to the ground represents people who are completely humiliated because they realize all they trusted in is worthless, and they can do nothing to help themselves. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "God will make the people ashamed, and they will realize that all they trusted in is worthless" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### The people

human beings, as opposed to animals

### individuals

Alternate translation: "each person"

### do not raise them up

The words "raise them up" are a metaphor for Yahweh forgiving the people. Alternate translation: "do not forgive them" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 2:10

### Go into the rocky places

Possible meanings are the people should go into: (1) caves on steep hillsides or (2) places where there are many large rocks among which to hide.

### hide in the ground

Possible meanings are that the people should hide: (1) in natural holes in the ground or (2) in pits that they dig in the ground.

### from the terror of Yahweh

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **terror**, you can express the same idea with the verb “terrifying.” Alternate translation: “to get away from Yahweh’s terrifying presence” or “from Yahweh because you will be extremely afraid of him” (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**)

### the glory of his majesty

“the great beauty and power he has as king” or “his royal splendor.” See how you translated this in [Isaiah 2:10](#).

## Isaiah 2:11

### The lofty gaze of man will be brought low

“Yahweh will bring down the lofty gaze of man.” A man with a “lofty gaze” is looking above everyone to show them that he is better than they are. Here all people are guilty of thinking they are better than Yahweh, and the way they look at those who worship Yahweh, is a metonym for their pride. Alternate translation: “Yahweh will make ashamed all people because they think they are better than he is” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### the pride of men will be brought down

“The pride of men” here is a metonym for proud people, and being “brought down” is a metaphor for being humbled or ashamed. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “Yahweh will bring down proud men” or “Yahweh will make proud people ashamed of themselves” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### Yahweh alone will be exalted

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “people will praise only Yahweh” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### on that day

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “on the day that Yahweh judges everyone” (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

## Isaiah 2:12

### General Information:

## General Information:

Isaiah speaks to the people of Judah in the form of a poem. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### who is proud and raised up

One who is “raised up” is proud and considers himself better than other people. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language.

Alternate translation: “who is proud and who raises himself above other people” or “who is proud and thinks that he is better than other people” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### who is proud & who is arrogant

Someone who is arrogant speaks and acts as if he is better than other people. These two phrases have similar meanings and are used together to emphasize that Yahweh will punish them. (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**) (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**)

### he will be brought down

“every proud person will be brought down.” If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “Yahweh will humble him” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 2:13

### against all the cedars of Lebanon & against all the oaks of Bashan

The “day of Yahweh of Hosts” will be against the cedars and oaks. This could mean: (1) these trees are a metaphor for the proud people whom God will judge or (2) God will actually destroy these mighty trees. (See: **Metaphor (p. 1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)



## Isaiah 2:14

### against

In 2:14-16 Isaiah lists things that God will destroy. This could mean: (1) these refer to prideful people that God will humble or (2) God will actually destroy all these things in the list.

### mountains & hills

These words are metaphors for the pride of the Israelites. They also appear in [Isaiah 2:2](#). (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### that are lifted up

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “that are very high” (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

## Isaiah 2:15

### high tower & impregnable wall

These refer to things people would build around their cities so they could defend themselves against their enemies. They are a metaphor for the Israelites' pride and belief that they had no need for Yahweh and could stand against any punishment Yahweh would mete out to them for their sins. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### impregnable wall

Alternate translation: "wall that nothing can break down or go through"

## **Isaiah 2:16**

### **ships of Tarshish & beautiful sailing vessels**

These refer to large boats that people used to travel far on the sea and bring back goods to the cities.

### **ships of Tarshish**

Alternate translation: "ships on which they go to Tarshish"

## Isaiah 2:17

### The pride of man will be brought low

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “He will bring low every proud man” or “He will humiliate every proud man” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### the haughtiness of men will fall

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **haughtiness**, you can express the same idea with an adjective. Alternate translation: “those people who are haughty will stop being haughty” (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**)

### Yahweh alone will be exalted

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. See how you translated this in [Isaiah 2:11](#). Alternate translation: “people will praise only Yahweh” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## **Isaiah 2:18**

### **The idols will completely pass away**

Alternate translation: "All idols will disappear" or "There will be no more idols"

## Isaiah 2:19

### Men will go & from the terror

The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: "Men will go ... to hide from the terror" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### the caves of the rocks

"the caves in the rocks." These are large rocks, not small stones that can be held in the hand.

### from the terror of Yahweh, and from the glory of his majesty

See how you translated this in [Isaiah 2:10](#).

### from the terror of Yahweh

because they are very afraid of Yahweh

### the glory of his majesty

Here the word "glory" describes "majesty." Alternate translation: "the beauty he has as king" (See: **Hendiadys (p.1413)**) (See: **Hendiadys (p.1413)**)

### when he rises to terrify the earth

Alternate translation: "when Yahweh takes action and causes the people of the earth to be terribly afraid of him"

## Isaiah 2:20

### to the moles and bats

Moles are small animals that dig and live underground. Bats are small flying animals that sometimes live in caves.  
Alternate translation: "to the animals" (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1490)**) (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1490)**)

## **Isaiah 2:21**

### **the crevices in the rocks & the clefts of the ragged rocks**

If your language does not have two different words for “crevice” and “cleft,” the space that appears between the two parts of a rock when it splits, you can combine these two phrases into one.

### **from the terror of Yahweh**

because they are very afraid of Yahweh. See how you translated this in [Isaiah 2:19](#).

### **the glory of his majesty**

“the great beauty and power he has as king” or “his royal majesty.” See how you translated this in [Isaiah 2:10](#).

### **when he rises to terrify the earth**

“when Yahweh takes action and causes the people of the earth to be terribly afraid of him.” See how you translated this in [Isaiah 2:19](#).



## Isaiah 2:22

### whose life-breath is in his nostrils

This describes how man is human and weak by emphasizing that he needs to breath to live. Alternate translation: “who is weak and will die” or “who needs the breath in his nose to live” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### nostrils

the holes in the nose through which people breathe

### for what does he amount to?

Isaiah uses a question to remind the people of something they should already know. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this question as a statement. Alternate translation: “for man amounts to nothing!” or “for man is not worth anything!” (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

## Isaiah 3

### Isaiah 3 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

This chapter is a continuation of the material in the previous chapter. Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 3:1-26, which is a vision Isaiah receives. These are the words of Yahweh.

#### Judgment

This chapter is structured as a judgment against the Jews. God is acting as a judge reading the list of convictions against them and then he reads the judgment. (See: **judge, judgment (p.1518)**)

#### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Exile

While the previous part of the prophecy in chapter 2 discussed the last days, this part of the prophecy predicts the exile of Judah to Babylon. (See: [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/prophet\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/lastday\]\]](#))

## Isaiah 3:1

### See

The word “see” here adds emphasis to what follows. It can also be translated as “Listen” or “Indeed.”

### support and staff

Both of these words refer to a walking stick, on which someone leans for support. This idea here stands for the things that people need the most in order to live: food and water. Alternate translation: “everything that supports you” or “everything that you depend on” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 3:2

### **the mighty man & the warrior & the judge & the prophet & the one who practices divination & the elder**

This is a list of categories of people that others depend on. Since they do not refer to particular individuals, they can all be translated with plural nouns as in the UST. Alternate translation: “the mighty men ... the warriors ... the judges ... the prophets ... the ones who practices divination ... the elders” (See: **Generic Noun Phrases (p.1409)**) (See: **Generic Noun Phrases (p.1409)**)

### **the one who practices divination**

This is a person who claims that he can tell the future by looking at things like animal parts and leaves. See how you translated similar words in [Isaiah 2:6](#).

## Isaiah 3:3

### the captain of fifty & the respected citizen & the counselor & the expert craftsman & the skillful enchanter

This is a list of categories of people that others depend on. Since they do not refer to particular individuals, they can all be translated with plural nouns as in the UST. Alternate translation: “the captains of fifty ... the respected citizens ... the counselors ... the expert craftsmen ... the skillful enchanters” (See: **Generic Noun Phrases (p.1409)**) (See: **Generic Noun Phrases (p.1409)**)

### the captain of fifty

This could mean: (1) the word “fifty” represents the exact amount of soldiers that the captain led. Alternate translation: “the captains of 50 soldiers” or (2) the word translated as “fifty” does not represent an exact number, but is the name of a small military unit. Alternate translation: “the captain of a small military unit” (See: **Numbers (p.1454)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1454)**)

### fifty

“50” (See: **Numbers (p.1454)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1454)**)

## Isaiah 3:4

### **I will place mere youths as their leaders, and the young will rule over them**

These phrases mean basically the same thing. This could mean: (1) "I will place young people as their leaders, and those young people will rule over them" or (2) "youths" is a metaphor for simple and foolish men. Alternate translation: "I will place over them leaders who are immature, like young people, and those bad leaders will rule over them" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### **I will place**

Here the word "I" refers to Yahweh. This can also be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "Yahweh says, 'I will place'" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

## Isaiah 3:5

### **The people will be oppressed, every one by another, and every one by his neighbor**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Everyone will be cruel to others and will mistreat his neighbor" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### **the degraded**

Alternate translation: "the people who are without honor" or "the people whom no one respects"

### **the honorable**

Alternate translation: "the people with honor" or "the people whom everyone respects"

## Isaiah 3:6

### let this ruin be in your hands

Here “hands” represents authority. Alternate translation: “take charge of this ruin” or “rule over this ruin” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### this ruin

This could mean: (1) many or most of the buildings in the city of Jerusalem were destroyed or (2) the people in Jerusalem have no more prosperity or leadership. Alternate translation: “this city, which is now ruined” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)



## Isaiah 3:7

### I will not be a healer

Solving the people's troubles is spoken of as if it were healing them. Alternate translation: "No, I cannot fix this problem" or "No, I cannot help you" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 3:8

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

The prophet begins to comment on this situation.

### Jerusalem has stumbled, and Judah has fallen

Disobeying God is spoken of as if it were stumbling and falling. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### the eyes of his glory

Here “the eyes” stands for God himself, who is glorious. Alternate translation: “him who is glorious” or “Yahweh who is glorious” (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

## Isaiah 3:9

### The look on their faces witnesses against them

Expressions of arrogance on people's faces are spoken of as if the expressions were persons who could testify against the proud people. Alternate translation: "The prideful looks on their faces show that they oppose Yahweh" (See: **Personification (p.1464)**) (See: **Personification (p.1464)**)

### they tell of their sin like Sodom; they do not hide it

Here the people of Judah are said to be like the people of Sodom, because they openly boasted about their sins. Alternate translation: "like the people of Sodom, they talk about their sins and let everyone know about them" (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

### For they have completed a catastrophe for themselves

The catastrophe is still coming, but the people have finished doing what will cause it to come. The catastrophe's causes are spoken of here as if they were the catastrophe itself. Alternate translation: "For they have done everything that will cause a catastrophe to happen" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 3:10

### Tell the righteous person that it will be well

Alternate translation: "Tell the one who is doing what is right that I will make things good for him"

### the righteous person

This refers to righteous people in general. Alternate translation: "righteous people" (See: **Generic Noun Phrases (p.1409)**) (See: **Generic Noun Phrases (p.1409)**)

### for they will eat the fruit of their deeds

Deeds are spoken of as if they were trees giving fruit that can be eaten. The fruit stands for the reward for doing good deeds. Alternate translation: "for they will receive their reward for their good deeds" or "for they will receive their reward for the good things they have done" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### they will eat the fruit of their deeds

The Hebrew text has these plural pronouns here, but they refer to any righteous person. Translators can choose to translate them as singular: "he will eat the fruit of his deeds."

## Isaiah 3:11

### for the recompense of his hands will be done to him

Here “hands” stands for the deeds that the person has done. Alternate translation: “for what the wicked person has done to others will be done to him” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 3:12

### My people & My people

This could mean: (1) Isaiah is talking and “My” refers to Isaiah, or (2) Yahweh is talking and “My” refers to Yahweh.

### children are their oppressors

This could mean: (1) “young people have become their leaders and they oppress the people” or (2) “their leaders are immature like children and oppress the people.” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### women rule over them

This could mean: (1) “women rule over the people” or (2) “their leaders are weak like women.”

### those who guide you lead you astray and confuse the direction of your path

It was common in the Ancient Middle East to speak of a nation's leaders as if they were shepherds. As shepherds lead the sheep along good paths to safety, leaders should teach the people the truth and help them do what is right. Judah's leaders were not doing this. Alternate translation: “your leaders are like bad shepherds who lead you away from good paths and do not show you where to go” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 3:13

### Yahweh stands up for an accusation; he is standing to accuse the people

Isaiah speaks of Yahweh's decision to harm the people as if Yahweh were bringing a legal accusation in a courtroom against the people of Israel. The second part of this line means the same thing as the first part, but it says it a little more completely. Alternate translation: "It is as though Yahweh had taken his place in a courtroom and were ready to accuse the people" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 3:14

### will come with judgment

Judgment is spoken of as if it were an object that one could bring to another person. Alternate translation: “will announce his judgment” or “will declare his judgment” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### You have ruined the vineyard

Here “you” refers to the elders and rulers. Yahweh is speaking of his people as if they were a vineyard. Like someone who fails to care for a vineyard so that the vines give no more grapes, the elders and leaders are discouraging the Israelites from serving God. Alternate translation: “My people are like a vineyard, and you have ruined it” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-you\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Forms of You (p.1408)**)

### the plunder from the poor is in your houses

Alternate translation: “the things you have taken from the poor are in your houses”

### the poor

This nominal adjective can be stated as an adjective. Alternate translation: “those who are poor” (See: **Nominal Adjectives (p.1452)**) (See: **Nominal Adjectives (p.1452)**)



## Isaiah 3:15

### Why do you crush my people and grind the faces of the poor?

Yahweh asks this question in order to accuse the leaders of the people. This accusation can be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "I am angry with you evil men because you are crushing my people and grinding the faces of the poor!" (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### crush my people

Making people suffer is spoken of as if it were crushing them with a very heavy weight. Alternate translation: "cruelly harm my people" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### grind the faces of the poor

Making people suffer is spoken of as if it were rubbing their faces into the ground. Alternate translation: "harm the poor and make them suffer" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### This is the declaration of the Lord Yahweh of hosts

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. Alternate translation: "this is what the Lord Yahweh of hosts has declared" or "this is what I, the Lord Yahweh of hosts, have declared" (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1406)**) (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1406)**)

## **Isaiah 3:16**

### **the daughters of Zion**

Zion, meaning here the city of Jerusalem, is spoken of as if it were a woman with her daughters. Alternate translation: "the women of Zion" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### **with their necks extended**

Alternate translation: "in an arrogant way"

### **with flirting eyes**

Looking at men in a way that makes the men think the women want sexual relations.

### **walking with tiny steps as they go**

This is how they would walk to attract men, possibly because the bracelets on their ankles were connected by chains decorated with bells so they could not take normal steps.

## **Isaiah 3:17**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## **Isaiah 3:18**

### **the Lord will remove**

Here what the Lord causes others to do is spoken of as the Lord doing it himself. Alternate translation: “the Lord will cause others to remove” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### **ankle jewelry**

a decoration that women wear on the ankle, just above the foot

### **head bands**

a decoration that women wear over the head and hair

### **crescent ornaments**

moon-shaped ornaments that people wear in the belief that they will protect the person from evil

## **Isaiah 3:19**

### **ear pendants**

jewelry that hangs from the ear or over the ear

### **bracelets**

a decoration that women wear on the arm near the hands

### **veils**

a very thin material used to cover a woman's head and face

## **Isaiah 3:20**

### **headscarves**

long, thin pieces of cloth that women tie around the head or hair

### **ankle chains**

These are decorations that women wear near the feet. Often the chains hang down to make a gentle noise.

### **sashes**

a piece of cloth that people wear around the waist or across the chest

### **perfume boxes**

a small box or bag containing perfume that women wore on chains or strings around their necks so they smelled good

### **lucky charms**

jewelry that people wear in the belief that it will bring good luck

## **Isaiah 3:21**

### **rings**

a decoration worn around the finger

### **nose jewels**

a decoration worn in or through the nose

## **Isaiah 3:22**

### **festive robes**

a long, loose garment with decorations that was worn over other clothes for everyone to see

### **mantles**

a cloth worn over the shoulders on the outside of the clothes

### **veils**

See how you translated this in [Isaiah 3:19](#).

### **handbags**

a bag to used to carry small things



## **Isaiah 3:23**

### **hand mirrors**

a small surface, held in one's hand and used to see oneself

### **fine linen**

a soft cloth worn by rich people

### **head pieces**

a cloth or small hat worn over the hair

### **wraps**

a decorative cloth that a woman would wrap around herself to make her beautiful

## Isaiah 3:24

### sash

a piece of cloth that people wear around the waist or across the chest. See how you translated this in [Isaiah 3:20](#).

### a rope

This may refer to a rope that enemies would tie on the people of Judah when they captured them. Or it might mean that Jerusalem's women would have nothing to wear but rough clothing secured with ropes.

### well-arranged hair, baldness

Alternate translation: "pretty hair, their heads will be bald"

## Isaiah 3:25

### Your men will fall by the sword, and your strong men will fall in war

Falling represents being killed, and the sword represents battle. Alternate translation: "Your men will be killed in battle, and your strong men will be killed in war" or "Enemies will kill your soldiers in battle" (See: **Metonymy (p. 1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p. 1449)**)

## Isaiah 3:26

### Jerusalem's gates will lament and mourn

Here the city gates represent the people who sit at the public places near the city gates. Alternate translation: "The people of Jerusalem will sit at the city gates and cry and mourn" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### she will be alone and sit upon the ground

Isaiah speaks of the people of Jerusalem, whom no one will save from their enemies, as if they were the city itself and as if they were a woman who sits on the ground because all her friends have deserted her. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-personification\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#)) (See: **Personification (p.1464)**)

## Isaiah 4

### Isaiah 4 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### More women than men

This chapter describes a time when there will be many more women than men in Judah. This is because so many of Judah's fighting men will have died before the exile. Those who come through this difficult time will be a holy remnant. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-explicit\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/holy\]\]](#) and **remnant (p.1527)**)

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Branch of Yahweh

Scholars are divided over the possible meaning of this metaphor. Some believe it is a reference to the Messiah, while others believe it is a reference to the faithful remnant. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/christ\]\]](#) and **faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy (p.1505)**)

## Isaiah 4:1

### let us take your name

This phrase means "let us marry you." (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

## Isaiah 4:2

### the branch of Yahweh will be beautiful

This could mean: (1) “branch” is a synecdoche that represents the crops Yahweh will cause to grow in the land of Israel. Alternate translation: “Yahweh will cause the crops in Israel to be beautiful” or (2) “branch” is a metaphor that refers to the Messiah. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-synecdoche\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### will be beautiful and glorious

Alternate translation: “will be full of beauty and glory”

### the fruit of the land will be tasty and delightful for those survivors in Israel

“Fruit” sometimes simply represents food produced in the land, and sometimes it represents spiritual blessings. This could mean: (1) God will cause the land to produce good food again. Alternate translation: “the people who are still in Israel will enjoy the best food from the land” or (2) the future Messiah will bring spiritual blessings to the people in the land. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 4:3

### the one who is left in Zion and the one who remains in Jerusalem

Both of these statements mean the same thing. Here “the one who” does not refer to a specific person but to people in general who are still alive in Jerusalem. Alternate translation: “everyone who remains in Jerusalem” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-genericnoun\]\]](#)) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### will be called holy

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “the Lord will call them holy” or “will belong to the Lord” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### everyone who is written down as living in Jerusalem

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “everyone whose name is on the list of the people who live in Jerusalem” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)



## Isaiah 4:4

### when the Lord will have washed away the filth of the daughters of Zion

This expression speaks of sin as if it were physical dirt. Alternate translation: “after the Lord removes the sins of the daughters of Zion as someone washes away filth” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### the daughters of Zion

This could mean: (1) the women of Jerusalem or (2) the people of Jerusalem.

### will have cleansed the blood stains from Jerusalem’s midst

“Blood stains” here represents violence and murder. Alternate translation: “will have taken away those in Jerusalem who harm innocent people” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### by means of the spirit of judgment and the spirit of flaming fire

This is how God would remove the sin from Jerusalem. Here “spirit” probably represents the activity of judging and burning. Alternate translation: “by judgment and flaming fire” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### spirit of judgment

This could mean: (1) Yahweh will punish the people or (2) Yahweh will declare the people guilty.

### the spirit of flaming fire

This could mean: (1) this is a metaphor that means Yahweh will remove sinners from Zion like a fire removes impurities or (2) “flaming fire” is a metonym that represents the destruction in general of all the sinners. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 4:5

### **a canopy over all the glory**

This could mean: (1) a canopy for protecting the glorious city, or (2) a canopy consisting of God's glory that will protect the city. If the first meaning is followed, then it may further mean that the city is glorious because Yahweh is present in it.

### **canopy**

This is a cloth that is hung over something to cover it for protection.

## **Isaiah 4:6**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## Isaiah 5

### Isaiah 5 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in this chapter.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Woe

This chapter presents a series of woes, or judgments against those who are spoken against. Most of these judgements are due to the lack of justice in Judah. (See: [\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/woe\]\]](#) and [\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/judge\]\]](#) and **just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification (p.1520)**)

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Allegory

This chapter begins as an allegory. An allegory is a story with a symbolic meaning. This allegory is meant to teach the Jews that they sinned against Yahweh and that there was nothing more he could have done for them. (See: [\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/spirit\]\]](#) and [\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/sin\]\]](#))

### Animals being present where people once lived

Verse 17 ("Then the sheep will feed as in their own pasture, and in the ruins of the rich people, lambs will graze") is an example of the Old Testament's prophets' habit of describing complete ruin and desolation in terms of a picture of animals--usually wild animals, but here sheep and lambs--living in or feeding in those places. Whether the picture is of flocks or wild animals, the purpose is to say that the human habitation has gone back to wild nature, and that this has happened because of God's punishment on the people.

## Isaiah 5:1

### General Information:

## General Information:

Isaiah tells a parable about a farmer and his vineyard. The farmer represents God and the vineyard represents the people of Judah, the southern kingdom of the Israelites. (See: **Parables (p.1459)**) (See: **Parables (p.1459)**)

### my well beloved

Alternate translation: "my dear friend"

### on a very fertile hill

Alternate translation: "on a hill where very good crops could grow"

## Isaiah 5:2

### He spaded it

“He prepared the soil.” This expression refers to using a tool to dig into the ground to prepare it for planting.

### He built a tower in the middle of it

“He made a tall building in the middle of the vineyard to watch over it.” Someone would stand at the top of the tower to watch the vineyard and make sure that no animals or people went into it. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### built a winepress

“dug a pit to squeeze out the grape juice.” A winepress is a low place carved out of rock in the ground where workers step on the grapes to crush them with their feet, in order to remove the grape juice.

### wild grapes

Alternate translation: “worthless grapes” or “bad tasting grapes”

## Isaiah 5:3

### General Information:

## General Information:

In Isaiah's parable of the vineyard, the owner of the vineyard, who represents God, speaks to the people of Jerusalem and Judah about his vineyard. (See: **Parables (p.1459)**) (See: **Parables (p.1459)**)

### inhabitant of Jerusalem and man of Judah

These expressions refer in general to all people living in Jerusalem and Judah, so they can be translated with plural nouns. Alternate translation: "all of you who live in Jerusalem and Judah" (See: **Generic Noun Phrases (p.1409)**) (See: **Generic Noun Phrases (p.1409)**)

### Jerusalem & Judah

"Judah" was the name of the southern kingdom of Israelites, and Jerusalem was the capital city.

### judge between me and my vineyard

The idea of a space separating two things is often used to express the idea of choosing one or the other of those things. Alternate translation: "decide who has acted right, I or my vineyard" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 5:4

**What more could have been done for my vineyard, that I have not done for it?**

The owner uses this question to make a statement about his vineyard. This rhetorical questions can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "I have done all that I could do for my vineyard!" (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

**When I looked for it to produce grapes, why did it produce wild grapes?**

The owner uses a question to say that his vineyard should have produced good grapes. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this question as a statement. Alternate translation: "I wanted it to make good grapes, but it only produced worthless grapes" (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)



## Isaiah 5:5

### remove the hedge

“take away the border of bushes.” A hedge is a row of bushes or small trees that have been planted in order to protect a garden or some other kind of area. Here “hedge” probably refers to the thorn bushes that were planted to grow on the stone wall surrounding the vineyard.

### I will turn it into a pasture

“I will allow animals to go there and eat.” This is a grassy place where animals feed.

### it will be trampled down

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “animals will trample it down” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 5:6

### I will lay it waste

Alternate translation: "I will destroy it"

### it will not be pruned nor hoed

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "no one will prune it or hoe it" or "no one will cut off the branches that are not needed, and no one will take care of the soil" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### briers and thorns will spring up

Briers and thorns are often used as symbols of ruined cities and land. (See: **Symbolic Language (p.1484)**) (See: **Symbolic Language (p.1484)**)

## Isaiah 5:7

### General Information:

## General Information:

Isaiah explains the parable of the vineyard.

### For the vineyard of Yahweh of hosts is the house of Israel

Isaiah states that the vineyard in the parable represents the people of Israel. Alternate translation: “For the vineyard of Yahweh of hosts represents the house of Israel” or “The people of Israel are like the vineyard of Yahweh, Lord of the angel armies” (See: **Parables (p.1459)**) (See: **Parables (p.1459)**)

### the house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house. In this case it refers to the kingdom of Israel. Alternate translation: “Israel” or “the kingdom of Israel” or “the people of Israel” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### the man of Judah his pleasant planting

The people of Judah are spoken of as if they are a vine that Yahweh planted. This can be stated as a simile. Alternate translation: “the people of Judah are like a vine that Yahweh planted for Yahweh’s pleasure” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-simile\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### the man of Judah

Here “man” represents all the people of Judah. Alternate translation: “the people of Judah” (See: **Generic Noun Phrases (p.1409)**) (See: **Generic Noun Phrases (p.1409)**)

### he waited for justice, but instead, there was killing

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **justice**, you can express the same idea with the verb “do what is fair.” If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **killing**, you can express the same idea with “killed one another.” Alternate translation: “Yahweh waited for the people to do what is fair, but instead they killed one another” (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**)

### for righteousness

The phrase “he waited” is understood from earlier in the verse. It can be repeated to make the meaning clear. Alternate translation: “He waited for righteousness” or “He waited for them to do what is right” (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**) (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**)

## instead, a shout for help

The words “there was” are understood from earlier in the verse. They can be repeated to make the meaning clear. The reason people shouted out for help can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “instead, there was a shout for help” or “instead, those who were weak shouted out for someone to help them because others were attacking them” (See: [\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]](#) and [\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-explicit\]](#)) (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**)

## a shout

This expression probably stands for many shouts. (See: **Generic Noun Phrases (p.1409)**) (See: **Generic Noun Phrases (p.1409)**)

## Isaiah 5:8

### General Information:

## General Information:

Isaiah announces God's judgment.

### **to those who join house to house, who join field to field**

"to those who take more and more houses, and who take more and more fields." Isaiah assumes that his audience knows that the law forbids someone from taking land from a family permanently. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

## Isaiah 5:9

### Yahweh of hosts

See how you translated this in [Isaiah 1:9](#).

### without any inhabitant

Alternate translation: "without anyone living in it"

## Isaiah 5:10

### a ten-yoke vineyard

The size of the vineyard is represented by the number of pairs of oxen that could plow it in one day. Each pair of oxen would be connected by a yoke. Alternate translation: “a vineyard that is large enough for ten pairs of oxen to plow it” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### one bath

“one bath of wine” or “22 liters of wine” (See: **Biblical Volume (p.1386)**) (See: **Biblical Volume (p.1386)**)

### one homer of seed will yield only an ephah

“220 liters of seed will produce only 22 liters of grain.” One homer equals ten ephahs. (See: **Biblical Volume (p.1386)**) (See: **Biblical Volume (p.1386)**)

## Isaiah 5:11

### those who rise up early in the morning & who linger late into the night

This refers to people who do nothing all day but drink alcoholic drinks. (See: **Merism (p.1440)**) (See: **Merism (p.1440)**)

### until wine inflames them

Here the power of wine to make its drinkers drunk is spoken of as if it were inflaming them, that is, setting them on fire. Alternate translation: "until they are drunk with wine" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)



## Isaiah 5:12

### **harp, lute, tambourine, flute, and wine**

These musical instruments and the wine imply that the people enjoying these things are celebrating very much.

### **tambourine**

A musical instrument with a head like a drum that can be beaten with the hand. It probably had pieces of metal around the side that sounded when the player shook it. The tambourine was small enough for the player to hold it and shake it with one hand. (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1490)**) (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1490)**)

### **considered**

thought seriously about

### **the doings of his hands**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **doings**, you can express the same idea with the verb “done” or “created.” Alternate translation: “what he has done” or “what he has created” (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**)

### **the doings of his hands**

Here the metonym “hands” represents the person who has done something. Alternate translation: “what Yahweh has done” (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

## Isaiah 5:13

### General Information:

## General Information:

These verses tell what will happen to the people because they have disobeyed God.

### my people have gone into captivity

In prophecy things that will happen in the future are often referred to as if they had already happened. This emphasizes that the prophecy will certainly come true. Alternate translation: “enemies from other countries will take my people, Israel, as slaves” (See: **Predictive Past (p.1469)**) (See: **Predictive Past (p.1469)**)

### for lack of understanding

What they do not understand can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “because they do not understand Yahweh or his law” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

## Isaiah 5:14

### **Sheol has made its appetite greater and has opened its mouth very wide**

This phrase speaks of Sheol, which stands here for the grave, to an animal that is ready to eat other animals. It implies that many, many people will die. Alternate translation: “death is like a hungry animal that has opened its mouth wide to eat up many people” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### **their elite, the people, their leaders, and the revelers and those who are happy among them, descend into Sheol**

The prophet speaks of the future as if it were happening now. Alternate translation: “Many people of Israel, their important people and common people, their leaders and those who enjoy wild parties, will go into Sheol” (See: **Predictive Past (p.1469)**) (See: **Predictive Past (p.1469)**)

## Isaiah 5:15

### Man will be forced to bend down, and mankind will be humbled

The phrases used together mean the same thing and are used together for emphasis. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. See how you translated similar words in [Isaiah 2:9](#). Alternate translation: "God will make every person bow down and be humble" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### Man will be forced to bend down, and mankind will be humbled

Future events are spoken of as if they have already happened. (See: **Predictive Past (p.1469)**) (See: **Predictive Past (p.1469)**)

### Man will be forced to bend down

Bending down often symbolizes being humiliated. (See: **Symbolic Action (p.1482)**) (See: **Symbolic Action (p.1482)**)

### the eyes of the lofty will be cast down

Looking down is often a sign of being ashamed. See how you translated similar words in [Isaiah 2:11](#). Alternate translation: "the eyes of proud people will look down in shame" or "people who were proud are now ashamed" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### the lofty

Here proud, arrogant people are spoken of as if they are high above other people. Alternate translation: "proud" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 5:16

### Yahweh of hosts will be exalted in his justice

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “People will praise Yahweh of hosts because he is just” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### Yahweh of hosts

See how you translated this in [Isaiah 1:9](#).

### will be exalted

Being honored is spoken of as if it were being lifted high. Alternate translation: “will be greatly honored” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 5:17

### the sheep will feed as in their own pasture

Yahweh will destroy the city of Jerusalem, which was called a “vineyard” in [Isaiah 5:1](#). It will become good for nothing except for sheep to eat grass there.

### graze

eat grass

### in the ruins, lambs will graze as foreigners

That is, the lambs will graze there. The land will be worthless for any other use. (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

## Isaiah 5:18

### **Woe to those who pull along iniquity with useless cords and who pull along sin as if it were with a cart rope**

These phrases mean basically the same thing. They speak of people who continue to sin on purpose as if they were using all their strength to pull a heavy cart along. God will punish them for their sin. Alternate translation: "Woe to those who work hard to sin as a person who drags a cart by a rope" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

## Isaiah 5:19

### those who say

This refers to those who continue to sin (verse 18) and then mockingly challenge God to stop them. Alternate translation: “those mockers who say” (See: **Irony (p.1435)**) (See: **Irony (p.1435)**)

### let the plans of the Holy One of Israel come

God’s plans are spoken of as if they were objects that could come by themselves. Alternate translation: “let the Holy One of Israel accomplish his plans” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### the Holy One of Israel

Translate “the Holy One” as in [Isaiah 5:16](#).



## Isaiah 5:20

**who represent darkness as light, and light as darkness & bitter as sweet, and sweet as bitter**

Those who do these things are the same as those “who call evil good, and good evil.” These things are opposites and people know the difference between them, but some people lie and say that bad things are good. Alternate translation: “They are like people who call darkness light and light darkness. They are like people who call bitter things sweet and sweet things bitter” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## **Isaiah 5:21**

### **to those who are wise in their own eyes**

Here the metonym "eyes" refers to their thoughts. Alternate translation: "to those who consider themselves to be wise" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### **prudent in their own understanding**

Alternate translation: "think they understand everything"

## **Isaiah 5:22**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## **Isaiah 5:23**

### **who acquit the wicked for payment**

This passage is speaking about corrupt judges in courts of law.

### **acquit the wicked**

Alternate translation: "declare guilty people innocent"

### **deprive the innocent of his rights**

Alternate translation: "do not treat innocent people fairly"

## Isaiah 5:24

### tongue of fire

Alternate translation: “flame of fire” or “flame”

### as the tongue of fire devours stubble, and as the dry grass goes down in flame

These phrases mean basically the same thing. God will punish the people described in [Isaiah 5:18-23](#). Alternate translation: “as a fire burns up stubble and grass” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-simile\]\]](#)) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### stubble

The dry pieces of plants that are left in the ground after the stalks have been cut.

### their root will rot, and their blossom will blow away like dust

Isaiah speaks of these people as if they were a dying plant. Alternate translation: “they will die like a plant whose roots have rotted and whose blossom has dried up and blown away in the wind” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 5:25

### the anger of Yahweh is kindled

Isaiah speaks of Yahweh's anger as if it were a fire. Alternate translation: "Yahweh is very angry" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### He has reached out with his hand against them and has punished them

The prophet speaks of the future as if it had already happened. He does this to insist that the prophecy certainly will come about. Alternate translation: "he will punish them with his powerful hand" (See: **Predictive Past (p.1469)**) (See: **Predictive Past (p.1469)**)

### has reached out with his hand against them

Here "hand" refers to God's power and control. Alternate translation: "has shown his power against them" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### corpses

dead bodies

### their corpses are like garbage in the streets

The dead bodies are allowed to lie in the streets as if they were garbage. This implies that many will die but that no one will be there to bury them. The word "garbage" can also be translated as "refuse" or "manure." (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

### In all these things, his anger does not subside; instead, his hand

Alternate translation: "Even though all these things have happened, he is still angry, and his hand"

### his hand is still stretched out

Here "hand" represents God's power and control. Isaiah speaks as if Yahweh were a person about to hit another person with his fist. This is a metaphor for Yahweh punishing Israel. Alternate translation: "he will still be ready to punish them" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 5:26

### He will lift up a signal flag for far away nations and will whistle for those at the end of the earth

Isaiah says the same thing in two different ways. God causing the armies of nations that are far away from Judah to come and attack is spoken of as if he would raise a flag and whistle to call them to Judah Alternate translation: "He will call for the armies of nations that are far away from Judah and tell them to come" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### whistle

a loud, high pitched noise a person makes with their mouth to call a person or animal that is far away

### they will come

Alternate translation: "the enemy army will come"

### speedily and promptly

These words mean basically the same thing and emphasize how quickly they will come. Alternate translation: "very quickly" (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**) (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**)

## **Isaiah 5:27**

### **tire & stumble & slumbers & sleeps**

These four words progress from being tired from work to being unable to walk well, to being unable to stay awake, to full sleep, so all four should appear in the translation.

### **Nor are their belts loose**

The soldiers kept their clothes tight so it would easier to move and fight.

### **the thongs of their sandals**

Alternate translation: "the straps of their sandals"



## Isaiah 5:28

### their horses' hooves are like flint

"their hooves are like hard stone." Isaiah compares the hard part of a horse's foot to flint, which is a hard stone that can cause sparks when struck. This could mean: (1) Isaiah compares their hooves to flint so to describe the frightening image of their feet causing sparks as they run or (2) Isaiah compares their hooves to flint to emphasize how strong their hooves are which enables the horse to do whatever their master want them to do. (See: **Simile (p. 1479)**) (See: **Simile (p. 1479)**)

### their chariot wheels like storms

Isaiah compares the chariot wheels to storms in order to imply that they will destroy everything in their path. Alternate translation: "the wheels of the chariots will spin like a windstorm" (See: **Simile (p. 1479)**) (See: **Simile (p. 1479)**)

### chariot wheels

These wheels often had sharp blades attached to them that would cut to pieces anyone the chariot passed close to.

## Isaiah 5:29

### young lions

A young age is a metonym for strength. Alternate translation: “the strongest lions” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### They will growl and seize the prey

Isaiah compares the enemy killing the people of Judah to a lion killing a weaker animal. This could mean: (1) lions make a sound not as loud as a roar just before they strike, or (2) the writer is using two words to mean the same thing. (See: [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-doublet\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### prey

animals that another animal wants to catch and kill

### with none to rescue

Alternate translation: “and no one will be able to save them”

## Isaiah 5:30

### will roar & sea roars

The word “roar” here is translated “growl” in verse 29. Use your language’s word for the sound of waves in a storm or heavy rain or some other frightening natural sound.

### even the light will be made dark by the clouds

Here darkness represents suffering and disaster. This metaphor can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the dark clouds will completely block the light of the sun” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 6

### Isaiah 6 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 6:3-4,7, 9-13.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Heaven

This vision described in this chapter is probably a scene in heaven. (See: **heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly (p.1512)**)

##### Isaiah's call

This chapter record Isaiah's call to prophetic ministry. It recognizes the holiness of God and Isaiah recognizes his need for holiness. (See: [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/call\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/prophet\]\]](#) and **holy, holiness, unholy, sacred (p.1514)**)

#### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

##### Inevitability

The way Yahweh speaks in this chapter shows the inevitability of the punishment of Yahweh against the people of Judah. The punishment must now come. It is too late for repentance. (See: **repent, repentance (p.1528)**)

## Isaiah 6:1

### he was high and elevated

The words “high” and “elevated” emphasize that the throne was very high and above everything around it. The height of the throne represents how great and powerful the Lord is. (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**) (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**)

### filled the temple

“filled the palace.” The word used for temple here is often used to refer to the palace of kings.

## Isaiah 6:2

### Above him were the seraphim

The word “seraphim” is the plural of seraph. This means the Lord was seated on the throne and the seraphim were standing or flying near the Lord ready to serve him.

### seraphim

This word suggests that the creatures might have a fiery appearance or resemble snakes. Because we do not know exactly what “seraphim” means, you could translate this as “winged creatures” or “winged living things.” Or, you can borrow the word and use it in your language. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-unknown\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-transliterate\]\]](#)) (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1490)**)

### each one had six wings

Alternate translation: “each seraph had six wings” or “each creature had six wings”

### with two each covered his face, and with two he covered his feet, and with two he flew

The words “wings” and “seraph” are understood. Alternate translation: “with two wings each seraph covered his face, and with two wings he covered his feet, and with two wings he flew” (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**) (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**)

## **Isaiah 6:3**

### **Each one called to another and said**

Alternate translation: "The seraphim called out to one another and said" or "The winged creatures proclaimed to one another"

### **Holy, holy, holy, is Yahweh of hosts**

Repeating the word "holy" three times indicates God is completely holy. Alternate translation: "Yahweh of hosts is holy beyond all else" or "Yahweh of hosts is completely holy"

### **The whole earth is full of his glory**

This speaks of the earth as if it were a container and glory were the contents in the container. Alternate translation: "Everything on the earth is evidence of God's glory" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 6:4

**The foundations of the thresholds shook at the voices of those who were crying out**

Alternate translation: "When the seraphim called out, their voices shook the doorways and their foundations"

**the house was filled with smoke**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "smoke filled the temple" or "smoke filled the palace" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)



## Isaiah 6:5

### Woe is me! For I am doomed

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “I am in great trouble! Terrible things will happen to me” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### of unclean lips

Here “lips” represent what a person speaks. And, people saying things that are unacceptable to God is spoken of as if their lips were physically unclean. (See: [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### Yahweh, Yahweh of hosts

Yahweh, the ruler of the angel armies”

### my eyes have seen

Here “eyes” represents the whole person. Alternate translation: “I have seen” (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

## Isaiah 6:6

### seraphim

This word suggests that the creatures might have a fiery appearance or resemble snakes. Because we do not know exactly what “seraphim” means, you could translate these as “creatures” or “living things” or “beings.” Or you can borrow the word and use it in your language. See how you translated this word in [Isaiah 6:2](#). (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-unknown\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-transliterate\]\]](#)) (See: **Translate Unknowns (p. 1490)**)

### tongs

a tool used for grabbing or holding objects

## Isaiah 6:7

### **your guilt has been taken away, and your sin atoned for**

These two phrases say basically the same thing. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Yahweh has taken away your guilt and has forgiven your sins" (See: [[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism]] and [[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive]]) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### **your guilt has been taken away**

Yahweh no longer considering a person to be guilty is spoken of as if "guilt" were an object that someone could take away from someone else. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 6:8

### the voice of the Lord say

Here “voice” represents the Lord himself. Alternate translation: “the Lord say” (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### Whom shall I send

It is implied that Yahweh will send someone to speak his message to the people of Israel. Alternate translation: “Whom shall I send to be a messenger to my people” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### who will go for us

It seems “us” refers to Yahweh and the members of his heavenly council to whom he is speaking. (See: **Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’ (p.1404)**) (See: **Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’ (p.1404)**)

## Isaiah 6:9

### this people

Alternate translation: "the people of Israel"

### Listen, but do not understand; see, but do not perceive

This could mean: (1) the imperatives "do not understand" and "do not perceive" express what God is causing to happen. Alternate translation: "You will listen, but Yahweh will not let you understand; you will look carefully, but Yahweh will not allow you to understand" or (2) the imperatives "Listen" and "see" express the idea of "if." Alternate translation: "Even if you listen you will not understand; even if you look carefully, you will not understand" (See: **Imperatives — Other Uses (p.1429)**) (See: **Imperatives — Other Uses (p.1429)**)

### Listen, but do not understand; see, but do not perceive

You can state clearly the understood information. Alternate translation: "Listen to Yahweh's message, but do not understand what it means; look at what Yahweh is doing, but do not realize what it means" (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**) (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**)

## Isaiah 6:10

### Make the heart of this people insensitive

Here “heart” represents a person’s mind. A person who does not think clearly and is unable to understand and care about what is happening is spoken of as if his heart were insensitive. Alternate translation: “Make these people unable to understand” or “Make the minds of these people dull” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### Make the heart of this people

It may be more natural to translate “heart” and “this” as plurals. Alternate translation: “Make the hearts of these people”

### Make the heart & insensitive

This command means that Yahweh will use Isaiah’s message to cause the people to understand even less and to make them less sensitive to what Yahweh is doing.

### their ears dull, and blind their eyes

“make it so that they cannot hear, and make it so that they cannot see.” Isaiah making people to not understand Yahweh’s message or what he is doing is spoken of as if Isaiah were making them deaf and blind. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### they might see with their eyes, hear with their ears

People being able to understand Yahweh’s message and what he is doing is spoken of as if the people were able physically to see and hear. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### understand with their heart

Here “heart” represents as person’s mind. Truly understanding something and caring about what is happening is spoken of as if the people were to understand with their hearts. (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### then turn

Repenting and starting to obey Yahweh is spoken of as if the people were physically to turn towards him. Alternate translation: “follow me again” or “then start trusting in me again” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### be healed

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “I would heal them” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 6:11

**Until cities crash into ruins and are without inhabitants, and the houses are without people**

Alternate translation: "Until all the cities and houses are ruined and no one lives there"

**the land falls into a desolate waste**

Here "falls into" is an idiom that means to become something worse. Alternate translation: "the land becomes a desolate waste" (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

## Isaiah 6:12

**until Yahweh has sent the people far away, and the solitude of the land is great**

Here Yahweh speaks about himself in the third person. Alternate translation: “until I, Yahweh, have sent all the people far away from their land, so that no one is left” (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1406)**) (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1406)**)



## Isaiah 6:13

### it will again be destroyed

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “armies will again destroy the land of Israel” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### as a terebinth or an oak is cut down and whose trunk remains, the holy seed is in its stump

This simile means that even after Yahweh destroys Israel, he will still set apart people from among the Israelites to serve him. (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

### terebinth

a kind of oak tree (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1490)**) (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1490)**)

### trunk & stump

A trunk is the thick main stem of a tree. A stump is the part of a tree that remains in the ground after the tree is cut down.

### the holy seed

The people who will serve Yahweh after armies destroy Israel are spoken of as if they were set apart as a holy seed. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 7

### Isaiah 7 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 7:7-9, 18-25.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### “Young woman”

Some translations choose to translate this as “virgin” and believe it is a reference to the Messiah being born of a virgin woman. This is only one possible translation, therefore most translations have avoided forcing this specific connotation into the meaning of the term. (See: **Christ, Messiah (p.1497)**)

#### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

##### Israel

In this chapter, Israel is a reference to the northern kingdom of Israel and not the nation as a whole. They are also called Ephraim in this chapter after its most prominent tribe.

## Isaiah 7:1

### During the days of Ahaz & king of Judah

“When Ahaz ... was king of Judah” This was when the events happened. (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

### Rezin & Pekah & Remaliah

men’s names (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

### Rezin & and Pekah & went up

The author speaks as if the kings were the armies they led. Alternate translation: “Rezin ... and Pekah ... led their armies up” (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### to war against it

The author speaks as if the city itself were the people who live in it. Alternate translation: “to war against the people of Jerusalem” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 7:2

### It was reported to the house of David

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “the house of David heard the report” or “someone reported to the house of David” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### the house of David

The word “house” is a metonym for the family living in the house. Alternate translation: “King Ahaz and his counselors” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### that Aram was allied with Ephraim

Here “Aram” and “Ephraim” refer to their kings. Here “Ephraim” represents the whole northern kingdom of Israel. Alternate translation: “that Rezin, the king of Aram was helping Pekah, the king of Israel” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-synecdoche\]\]](#)) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### His heart trembled, and the heart of his people, as the trees of the forest shake in the wind

The trembling of their hearts at this news is compared to the way trees shake when the wind blows through them. Alternate translation: “Ahaz and his people were very afraid” (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

## Isaiah 7:3

### General Information:

## General Information:

Isaiah writes about what happened to him as if it had happened to someone else.

### Shear-Jashub

Translators may also add a footnote that says, "The name Shear-Jashub means 'a remnant will return.'" The meaning may have given hope to Ahaz. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

### at the end of the conduit of the upper pool

Alternate translation: "where the water flows out of the tunnel and enters the upper pool"

### conduit

man-made ditch or tunnel through which water flows

### road

If your language has a word for a road or path that people have made smooth by filling in the low places and lowering the high places, you can use it here.

### Launderer's Field

This could mean: (1) this is the proper name by which the people called the field or (2) this is the common noun that the people used to talk about the field, "the launderer's field" or "the field where men wash wool" or "the field where women wash clothes." (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

### Launderer's Field

A launderer is either: (1) a man who washes wool that someone has cut from the sheep, "Wool Washer Field," or (2) a woman who washes dirty clothes, "Clothes Washer Field." (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

## Isaiah 7:4

### Tell him

Alternate translation: "Tell Ahaz"

**do not be afraid or intimidated by these two smoldering firebrands, by the fierce anger of Rezin and Aram, and of Pekah son of Remaliah**

God compares Rezin and Pekah to burning sticks whose fire has gone out and are making smoke now. God is emphasizing that they are not real threats to Judah. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "do not let Rezin and Pekah make you afraid; their fierce anger is like a burning stick whose fire has gone out and there is only smoke" (See: [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### afraid or intimidated

The words "afraid" and "intimidated" mean the same thing and can be translated as one word. Alternate translation: "afraid" (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**) (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**)

## Isaiah 7:5

### Aram, Ephraim, and the son of Remaliah

The words "Aram" and "Ephraim" refer to the kings of these lands. Also, "Ephraim" represents the northern kingdom of Israel. Alternate translation: "Rezin the king of Aram and Pekah the son of Remaliah, king of Israel" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-synecdoche\]\]](#)) (See: **Metonymy (p. 1449)**)

### Remaliah

This is the name of a man. Translate his name as in [Isaiah 7:1](#).

### have planned evil against you

Here "you" is singular and refers to Ahaz. (See: **Forms of You (p.1408)**) (See: **Forms of You (p.1408)**)

## Isaiah 7:6

### son of Tabeel

It is unknown who this man is. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)



## **Isaiah 7:7**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## Isaiah 7:8

### the head of Damascus is Rezin

Here “head” is a metonym for the most important part. It is implied that Rezin is only a man, and therefore cannot stop Yahweh’s plan. This can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: “the king of Damascus is Rezin, who is only a man” (See: [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-explicit\]\]](#)) (See: **Metonymy (p. 1449)**)

### sixty-five years

“65 years” (See: **Numbers (p.1454)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1454)**)

### Ephraim will be shattered and will no longer be a people

Here “Ephraim” refers to all of the northern kingdom of Israel. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “an army will destroy Ephraim, and there will no longer be a people of Israel” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 7:9

### the head of Samaria is Remaliah's son

This means Pekah is the king of Samaria and all of Israel. Alternate translation: "the king of Samaria is Pekah, who is a weak man" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### If you do not remain firm in faith, surely you will not remain secure

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "If you continue to believe in me, you will certainly remain safe" (See: **Double Negatives (p.1394)**) (See: **Double Negatives (p.1394)**)

### If you do not remain

Alternate translation: "Unless you remain"

## **Isaiah 7:10**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## Isaiah 7:11

### ask for it in the depths or in the height above

Yahweh uses the word “depths” and “height” to mean Ahaz could ask him for anything. (See: **Merism (p.1440)**) (See: **Merism (p.1440)**)

### depths & height

The abstract nouns “depths” and “height” can be translated with prepositions. “places far below you ... places far above you” (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**)

## **Isaiah 7:12**

### **will not ask**

Alternate translation: "will not ask Yahweh for a sign"

## Isaiah 7:13

### house of David

The word “house” is a metonym for the family living in the house. See how you translated this in [Isaiah 7:2](#).

Alternate translation: “King Ahaz, you and your counselors” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### **Is it not enough for you people to test the patience of people? Must you also test the patience of my God?**

These questions emphasize that the king has sinned greatly. Alternate translation: “You test the patience of people! Now you even test the patience of my God!” (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

## **Isaiah 7:14**

### **the young woman will conceive**

Some ancient versions and some contemporary versions translate, “the virgin will conceive,” while others translate “the young woman will conceive.”

### **his name Immanuel**

Translators may add a footnote that says: “The name Immanuel means ‘God with us.’” (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)



## Isaiah 7:15

### He will eat curds and honey when he knows to refuse the evil and choose the good

This could mean: (1) "By the time that child is old enough to eat curds and honey, he will be able to reject what is evil and choose what is good." This emphasizes that the child will be very young when he knows to choose what is right instead of wrong or (2) "By the time the child is old enough to reject what is evil and choose what is good, he will be eating curds and honey." The people of Judah considered a child to be responsible for doing what is right when he was 12 years old. This emphasizes that within twelve years the people will be able to eat much curds and honey because most of the people of Israel will be killed or taken as captives. (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### curds

milk that people have treated to make it into a soft solid

### refuse the evil and choose the good

Here "the evil" and "the good" refer to evil and good things in general. Alternate translation: "refuse to do evil deeds and choose to do good deeds" (See: **Nominal Adjectives (p.1452)**) (See: **Nominal Adjectives (p.1452)**)

## Isaiah 7:16

### refuse the evil and choose the good

Here “the evil” and “the good” refer to evil and good things in general. See how you translated this in [Isaiah 7:15](#).  
Alternate translation: “refuse to do evil deeds and choose to do good deeds” (See: **Nominal Adjectives (p.1452)**)  
(See: **Nominal Adjectives (p.1452)**)

### you dread

“you fear.” Here “you” is singular and refers to Ahaz. (See: **Forms of You (p.1408)**) (See: **Forms of You (p.1408)**)

## **Isaiah 7:17**

### **your people**

This refers to the people of Judah.

## Isaiah 7:18

### At that time

before the child knows to refuse the evil and choose the good ([Isaiah 7:15](#))

### Yahweh will whistle for

Alternate translation: "Yahweh will call" or "Yahweh will summon"

### for a fly from the distant streams of Egypt, and for a bee from the land of Assyria

Here the armies of Egypt and Assyria are spoken of as if they are insects that will invade the land of Israel. This can be stated as a simile. Alternate translation: "for the armies of Egypt and Assyria, and their soldiers will be everywhere like flies and bees" (See: [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-simile\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## **Isaiah 7:19**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## Isaiah 7:20

### the Lord will shave with a razor that was hired beyond the Euphrates River—the king of Assyria

The word “razor” is a metaphor for the king of Assyria and his army, and Yahweh speaks of the king as if the king were a man who would do Yahweh’s work and then receive money from Yahweh. Alternate translation: “the Lord will call the king of Assyria from beyond the Euphrates River to work for him to shave you” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### that was hired

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “that he bought” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### the head & the hair of the legs & also & the beard

It was bad to have someone shave the top of the head; it was worse to have someone shave “the hair of the legs”; it was worst of all to have someone shave the beard.

### the head & the hair of the legs & the beard

Isaiah does not say whose head, hair, and beard the Lord is going to shave, but Ahaz and the reader would understand that this is a man; the man is a metaphor for the people living in the land of Judah. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### the head

Here “the head” represents the hair that grows on it. Alternate translation: “the hair on the head” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### the hair of the legs

This could mean: (1) this is a polite way to speak of the hair on the lower body or (2) this speaks of the hair on the legs. (See: **Euphemism (p.1402)**) (See: **Euphemism (p.1402)**)

### it will also sweep

If your language requires a person to be the subject of “will ... sweep,” you can say, “the Lord will also sweep.” Alternate translation: “the razor will also sweep”

## **Isaiah 7:21**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## Isaiah 7:22

### because of the abundance of milk which they shall give

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **abundance**, you can express the same idea with a clause. Alternate translation: “because they will give so much milk” (See: **Abstract Nouns (p. 1372)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**)



## Isaiah 7:23

### there were a thousand vines & briers and thorns

“there were 1,000 vines.” That is, when Isaiah wrote, there were vineyards, in some of which were 1,000 vines or more each. He says that these vineyards will become full of briers and thorns. (See: **Numbers (p.1454)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1454)**)

### a thousand silver shekels

“1,000 silver shekels.” A shekel is a silver coin worth 4 days wage. Alternate translation: “1,000 silver coins” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-numbers\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-bmoney\]\]](#)) (See: **Numbers (p.1454)**)

### briers and thorns

The words “briers” and “thorns” both refer to useless, thorny plants. It is not necessary to translate both words. Alternate translation: “thorn bushes” or “brier bushes” (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**) (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**)

## Isaiah 7:24

### because all the land will be briers and thorns

Why the hunters come to these lands can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “because there will be nothing in these lands but briers, thorns, and wild animals” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

## Isaiah 7:25

### **They will stay away from all the hills that were cultivated with the hoe**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "People will stay away from the hills where they once prepared the soil to plant crops" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 8

### Isaiah 8 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 8:6-18, 21-22.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Trust in Yahweh

Israel will not trust in Yahweh. Instead, they will trust in their own power, their Gentile allies and the power of false gods. They will be punished because the power of Yahweh is greater than all of these. (See: [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/trust\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/falsegod\]\]](#))

## **Isaiah 8:1**

### **Yahweh said to me**

Here the word “me” refers to Isaiah.

## **Isaiah 8:2**

### **I will summon faithful witnesses to attest for me**

This could mean: (1) Yahweh is speaking: "I will call honest men to be witnesses" or (2) Isaiah is speaking: "I called honest men to be witnesses" or (3) Yahweh is commanding Isaiah: "Call honest men to be witnesses."

## Isaiah 8:3

### I went to the prophetess

It can be stated explicitly that Isaiah is married to the prophetess. Alternate translation: "I slept with my wife, the prophetess" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-euphemism\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-explicit\]\]](#)) (See:

**Euphemism (p.1402))**

## Isaiah 8:4

**the riches of Damascus and the plunder of Samaria will be carried away by the king of Assyria**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "the king of Assyria will carry away all the treasures of Damascus and Samaria" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)



## **Isaiah 8:5**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## Isaiah 8:6

### Because this people has refused the gentle waters of Shiloah

The words “gentle waters” are a metaphor for the law of the Lord. Alternate translation: “Because this people has rejected Yahweh’s law, which is like the gentle waters of Shiloah” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-names\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### this people

If your language needs a plural here, you can translate this phrase and the following verbs as “these people have refused ... are happy.” Alternate translation: “this people group”

### is happy over Rezin and Remaliah’s son

The full meaning can be made explicit. See how you translated these men’s names in [Isaiah 7:1](#). Alternate translation: “is happy that the armies of Assyria have defeated Rezin, king of Aram, and Pekah, Remaliah’s son, king of Israel” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

## **Isaiah 8:7**

### **therefore the Lord is**

Yahweh speaks of himself as if he were someone else to remind the people of who he is. Alternate translation: "therefore I, the Lord, am" (See: **Pronouns (p.1471)**) (See: **Pronouns (p.1471)**)

### **bring up on them**

The verb is "bring up"; the adverb is "on them."

### **on them**

Alternate translation: "on the people of Judah"

### **the waters of the River, mighty and many, the king of Assyria and all his glory**

The river symbolizes the army of Assyria. Alternate translation: "the army from Assyria, which is powerful like a mighty river" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### **the River**

the Euphrates River in Assyria

## Isaiah 8:8

### The River will sweep onward into Judah, flooding and passing on, until it reaches to your neck

The army of Assyria is like a flood of water. Alternate translation: "More and more soldiers will come like a river rising up to your neck" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### The River

This refers to the Euphrates River in Assyria. This is a metonym for the Assyrian soldiers, who will come from their homes by the Euphrates River ([Isaiah 8:7](#)). (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### Its outstretched wings will fill

This could mean: (1) as "the River" in the metaphor rises, its "wings" flow over and cover what had been dry land or (2) Isaiah changes metaphors and now speaks of Yahweh as a bird who is protecting the land, "But his outstretched wings will cover." (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### Immanuel

Translators may add a footnote that says: "The name Immanuel means 'God with us.'" See how you translated this in [Isaiah 7:14](#).

## Isaiah 8:9

### You peoples will be broken to pieces

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "I will break your armies to pieces" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### Listen, all you distant countries

Isaiah speaks as if people in other countries can hear him. Alternate translation: "Listen, all you people in far away places" (See: **Apostrophe (p.1377)**) (See: **Apostrophe (p.1377)**)

### arm yourselves for war and be broken in pieces; arm yourselves and be broken in pieces

This is basically the same thing, stated twice for emphasis. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "you can prepare yourselves for battle, but I will defeat you" (See: [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

## Isaiah 8:10

### **Form a plan, but it will not be carried out; issue the command, but it will not be carried out**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "You can prepare to attack Judah, but you will not succeed" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### **it will not be carried out & it will not be carried out**

To "carry out" a plan or command is to do what the person who makes the plan or command wants the hearer to do. These clauses can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "you will not be able to do what you plan to do ... your soldiers will not be able to do what their commanders tell them to do" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 8:11

### **Yahweh spoke to me, with his strong hand upon me**

Here “his strong hand upon me” is an idiom that refers to Yahweh’s power. Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke to me in a very powerful way” (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

### **warned me not to walk in the way of this people.**

This is an indirect quote that ends in 8:17. Alternate translation: “warned me and said, ‘Do not act like this people.’” (See: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1389)**) (See: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1389)**)

## Isaiah 8:12

### Do not call conspiracy anything that this people calls conspiracy

The people imagine there are conspiracies, and it makes them anxious. Alternate translation: "Do not worry like this people who think someone is always trying to harm them" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)



## Isaiah 8:13

**It is Yahweh of hosts whom you will honor as holy; he is the one you must fear, and he is the one you must dread**

If you translate this as a direct quote, you can also translate it with Yahweh speaking in the first person: "But you will consider me, Yahweh of Hosts, as holy. And you will fear and be in awe of me" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-quotations\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns\]\]](#)) (See: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1389)**)

## Isaiah 8:14

### He will become a sanctuary

The word “sanctuary” is a metaphor for Yahweh keeping his people safe and protecting them. Alternate translation: “He will protect them when they go to him” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### he will be a trap and a snare to the people of Jerusalem

The words “trap” and “snare” mean almost the same thing and emphasize that when Yahweh decides to punish the people of Jerusalem they will not be able to escape. Alternate translation: “he will trap the people of Jerusalem so they cannot escape him” (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**) (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**)

### trap

a device that catches a bird in a net or basket

### snare

a trap that catches and holds an animal's leg or nose

## Isaiah 8:15

### **Many will stumble over it and fall and be broken, and be ensnared and captured**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Many people will stumble over the stone, and when they fall they will not get up. And many people will step into the trap, and they will not be able to get out" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### **ensnared and captured**

These two words mean basically the same thing and emphasize that they will be caught in the trap. (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**) (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**)

## Isaiah 8:16

### Bind up my testimony, seal the official record

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. Alternate translation: "Close up tightly the scroll with this message written on it" (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### my testimony & my disciples

It is unclear to whom the word "my" refers. It could be Isaiah or Yahweh. It is best to leave the pronouns ambiguous if your language will allow it.

## Isaiah 8:17

### I will wait for Yahweh

Here "I" refers to Isaiah.

### who hides his face from the house of Jacob

Yahweh's "face" is a metonym for his blessing or favor. Alternate translation: "who has taken away his blessing from the house of Jacob" or "who no longer looks with favor on the house of Jacob" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### house of Jacob

people of Israel

## Isaiah 8:18

### **I and the sons whom Yahweh has given me are for signs and for wonders in Israel**

“I and the sons Yahweh has given me are like signs to warn the people of Israel.” The sons are Shear-Jashub and Maher-shalal-hash-baz, whose names are a message to the people of Israel. (See: [Isaiah 7:3](#) and [Isaiah 8:1](#))

## Isaiah 8:19

### General Information:

### General Information:

Isaiah is speaking.

**They will say to you, “Consult with those who speak with the dead and with spirits,” the ones who chirp and mutter incantations. But should a people not consult their God? Should they consult the dead on behalf of the living?**

Other This could mean: (1) “They will say to you, ‘Consult with the mediums and spiritists, those who chirp and mutter incantations. Should a people not consult their gods? They should consult the dead on behalf of the living for teaching and for testimony.’” or (2) “When they say to you, ‘Consult with the mediums and spiritists, those who chirp and mutter incantations,’ should a people not consult their God? Should they consult the dead on behalf of the living? To the law and to the testimony!”

### They will say to you

The word “they” refers to those who do not trust Yahweh. The word “you” is plural and refers to those who trust Yahweh. (See: **Forms of You (p.1408)**) (See: **Forms of You (p.1408)**)

### the ones who chirp and mutter incantations

The words “chirp” and “mutter” refer to the sounds mediums and spiritists made when trying to speak to dead people. Alternate translation: “they people who whisper and mutter their magic words to try and speak to dead people”

### chirp

make sounds like birds

**But should a people not consult their God? Should they consult the dead on behalf of the living?**

These questions are to show that people should consult God instead of foolishly trying to talk to dead people. Alternate translation: “But people should ask Yahweh to guide them. They should not seek answers from those who have died.” (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

## Isaiah 8:20

### To the law and to the testimony

This could mean: (1) "Pay attention to God's instructions and teaching" or (2) "Then you must remember the teaching and testimony I gave." ([Isaiah 8:16](#)).

#### the law

This is the same word translated "official record" in [Isaiah 8:16](#).

#### the testimony

See how you translated this in [Isaiah 8:16](#).

### If they do not say such things

Alternate translation: "If they do not speak of the law and the testimony"

### it is because they have no light of dawn

Isaiah speaks of people who do not know God as if they were people walking in darkness without any light.

Alternate translation: "it is because they are like a person lost in the dark" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)



## **Isaiah 8:21**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## Isaiah 8:22

### oppressive gloom

Alternate translation: "terrible sadness"

### They will be driven into a land of darkness

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Yahweh will drive them out into complete darkness" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 9

### Isaiah 9 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

This chapter begins with a prophecy that is a continuation of the prophecy concluding the previous chapter. Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 9:1-21. (See: **prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess (p.1525)**)

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Messiah

The prophecy in 9:1-7 is about the coming Messiah. Parts of this prophecy were fulfilled when he first came to earth. Other parts are to be fulfilled when he will return in glory to earth. (See: [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/christ\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/fulfill\]\]](#))

#### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

##### Fulfillment of prophecies

Some of the prophecies in this chapter were fulfilled in Isaiah's lifetime while others are fulfilled in the distant future. Some scholars believe that there can be multiple fulfillments of each of these prophecies, while others see only one complete fulfillment.

## Isaiah 9:1

### The gloom will be dispelled from her who was in anguish

Isaiah speaks of people who are spiritually lost as if they were walking around in total darkness. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “Yahweh will remove the darkness from her who was in anguish” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### The gloom

This word means “partial or total darkness.” Translate as you translated “gloom” in [Isaiah 8:22](#).

### her who was in anguish

“her who was suffering great pain and sadness.” This is probably a metaphor for the people of Judah. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### In an earlier time he humiliated the land of Zebulun and the land of Naphtali

“Land” refers to the people who live in an area. Alternate translation: “In the past, the Lord humbled those living in Zebulun and Naphtali” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### but in the later time he will make it glorious, the way to the sea, beyond the Jordan, Galilee of the nations

Here “it” refers to Galilee which represents the people who live there. Alternate translation: “but in the future, the Lord will honor the people of Galilee of the nations, which is on the road between the Mediterranean Sea and the Jordan River” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### Galilee of the nations

Here “nations” represents the people from other nations that live in Galilee. Alternate translation: “Galilee, where many foreigners live” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 9:2

### walked in darkness & lived in the land of the shadow of death

Isaiah speaks of the people living sinful lives and suffering because of it as if they had been walking in a dark or living in a land of shadow of death. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### a great light & light has shone

Here “light” represents hope and deliverance. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### the land of the shadow of death

The phrase “shadow of death” is an idiom that means absolute darkness. Alternate translation: “the land of deepest darkness” (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

## Isaiah 9:3

### **You have multiplied the nation; you have increased their joy**

The word “you” refers to Yahweh. The word “their” refers to the people of Israel, but Isaiah includes himself as part of Israel. Alternate translation: “Lord, you will greatly increase our people and our joy” (See: **Forms of You (p.1408)**) (See: **Forms of You (p.1408)**)

### **They rejoice before you like the joy at harvest time, as men rejoice when they divide the plunder**

The joy that Yahweh will give Israel is described as the same kind of joy people have when they bring in a harvest or divide valuable plunder. Alternate translation: “They will rejoice before you as people rejoice when they gather their crops or when a battle is over and soldiers divide what they took” (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

## Isaiah 9:4

### For the yoke of his burden & you have shattered as on the day of Midian

Isaiah speaks of the Israelites, who are the Assyrians' slaves, as if they were an ox wearing a yoke. This will happen in the future, but he speaks as if it has already happened. Alternate translation: "For as on the day of Midian you will set the people of Israel free from being slaves to their oppressors like a person removes a yoke from the shoulders of an animal" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-pastforfuture\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### For the yoke of his burden & his shoulder & his oppressor

Isaiah speaks of the people of Israel as if they were one man. Alternate translation: "For the yoke of their burden ... their shoulders ... their oppressor" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### the beam across his shoulder

The beam is the part of the yoke that goes over the shoulders of the ox.

### beam

Another possible meaning is "staff," a long piece of wood that a person uses to beat the oxen so they will work and a symbol of one person's power to rule other people.

### the rod of his oppressor

Isaiah speaks of the power the oppressor has over the people of Judah as if it were the piece of wood used by a person to beat oxen so they will work. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### as on the day of Midian

The word "day" is an idiom that can refer to an event that takes more than one day to happen. Alternate translation: "as when you defeated the Midianites" (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

## Isaiah 9:5

**every boot treading in the tumult and the garments rolled in blood will be burned**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "you will burn the boots of the soldiers and their clothes, which are covered with blood" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

**burned, fuel for the fire**

This can be made more explicit by translating it as a new sentence. Alternate translation: "burned. You will make the boots and the garments fuel for the fire" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)



## Isaiah 9:6

### For to us a child has been born, to us a son has been given

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. The word “us” refers to both the speaker and the hearer and so is inclusive. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “For the Lord will give to us a child” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-exclusive\]\]](#) and **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### the rule will be on his shoulder

His authority to rule is spoken of as if it were the robe that is a symbol of his authority. Alternate translation: “he will wear his royal robe on his shoulder” or “he will have authority to rule as king.” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Counselor

one who advises kings

## Isaiah 9:7

### **Of the increase of his government and of peace there will be no end**

Alternate translation: "As time passes he will rule over more and more people and enable them to live more and more peacefully"

### **rules on the throne of David**

Sitting on the "throne of David" is a metonym for having the right to rule; only David's descendants could be king over Israel. Alternate translation: "has the right to rule as David's descendant" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### **his kingdom, to establish it and sustain it with justice and with righteousness**

This can be translated as a new sentence. Alternate translation: "his kingdom. He will establish and protect his kingdom, and he will do what is fair and just"

### **Yahweh of hosts**

See how you translated this in [Isaiah 1:9](#).

## Isaiah 9:8

### The Lord sent a word against Jacob, and it fell on Israel

“Send a word” means to speak. Alternate translation: “The Lord has spoken against the people of Israel” (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

### Jacob & Israel

These names refer to the people of the northern kingdom of Israel.

## Isaiah 9:9

### Ephraim & Samaria

These names all refer to the people of the northern kingdom of Israel.

### All the people will know, even Ephraim and the inhabitants of Samaria

What they will know can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “All the people will know that the Lord has judged them, even those in Ephraim and Samaria” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

## Isaiah 9:10

**The bricks have fallen, but we will rebuild with chiseled stone; the sycamores have been cut down, but we will put cedars in their place**

The full meaning can be made explicit. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "We will replace the common bricks of our destroyed cities with expensive cut stone, and we will plant great cedar trees where ordinary sycamore trees grew" (See: [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-explicit\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

## Isaiah 9:11

### Therefore Yahweh will raise up against him Rezin, his adversary

Here “Rezin” represents himself and his army. Alternate translation: “Therefore, Yahweh will bring Rezin and his army against the people of Israel” (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### Rezin

This is the name of a man. See how you translated Rezin in [Isaiah 7:1](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

### will stir up his enemies

The phrase “stir up” is an idiom that means to incite them to attack. Alternate translation: “Yahweh will cause Israel’s enemies to attack” (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

## Isaiah 9:12

### They will devour Israel with open mouth

“Devour” is how wild animals eat their prey. Alternate translation: “Like a wild beast eating its prey, the army of the enemy will destroy the people of Israel” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### In all these things, his anger does not subside; instead, his hand

“Even though all these things have happened, he is still angry, and his hand.” See how you translated this in [Isaiah 5:25](#).

### his hand is still stretched out

Isaiah speaks as if Yahweh were a person about to hit another person with his fist. This is a metaphor for Yahweh punishing Israel. See how you translated this in [Isaiah 5:25](#). Alternate translation: “he will still be ready to punish them” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 9:13

### Yahweh of hosts

See how you translated this in [Isaiah 1:9](#).



## Isaiah 9:14

### head and tail

Isaiah explains this metaphor in verse 15. The “head,” the part of an animal a person would want to be, is “the leader and the noble man,” and the “tail,” the dirty part of the animal, is “the prophet who teaches lies.” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### palm branch and reed

The “palm branch” grows high on the tree and is a metaphor for people who are important and rule others. The “reed” grows in shallow water and is a metaphor for people who are poor and unimportant and are ruled by others. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## **Isaiah 9:15**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## Isaiah 9:16

### Those who lead this people lead them astray

The leaders causing people to disobey is spoken of as if the leaders led them on the wrong path. Alternate translation: "The leaders of Israel have caused the people to disobey God" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### those who are led by them are swallowed up

This is a metaphor that can be stated in active form. This could mean: (1) Alternate translation: "those that they lead become confused" or (2) Alternate translation: "Yahweh destroys those that they lead" (See: [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 9:17

### every mouth speaks foolish things

The word “mouth” refers to the person. Alternate translation: “every person speaks foolish things” (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### In all these things, his anger does not subside; instead, his hand

“Even though all these things have happened, he is still angry, and his hand.” See how you translated this in [Isaiah 5:25](#).

### his hand is still stretched out

Isaiah speaks as if Yahweh were a person about to hit another person with his fist. This is a metaphor for Yahweh punishing Israel. See how you translated this in [Isaiah 5:25](#). Alternate translation: “he will still be ready to punish them” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 9:18

### **Wickedness burns like a fire; it devours the briers and thorns; it even burns the thickets of the forest**

The people's evil deeds are spoken of as if they were a very destructive fire. This fire burns even the briers and thorns, plants that grow in places where people no longer live, and "the thickets of the forest" where no one has ever lived, because it has already destroyed the places where people were living. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### **briers & thorns**

The words "briers" and "thorns" both refer to useless, thorny plants; they can be translated using one word. See how you translated these words in [Isaiah 7:23](#). Alternate translation: "thorn bushes" (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**) (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**)

## Isaiah 9:19

### Through the fury of Yahweh of hosts the land is scorched

Translate “Yahweh of hosts” as in [Isaiah 1:9](#). If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “Like fire that scorches the land, the Lord’s intense anger will destroy the people of Israel” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### No man spares his brother

To “spare” someone means to save them from harm. Alternate translation: “No one does anything to help his own brother escape” (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

## Isaiah 9:20

### They will grab food on the right hand & on the left hand

This expression means that the people will grab food wherever they can find it. (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### Each will even eat the flesh of his own arm

This could mean: (1) people will be so hungry that they will want to eat or will actually eat their own arms or (2) the word "arm" is a metaphor for the person's neighbor. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 9:21

### In all these things, his anger does not subside; instead, his hand

“Even though all these things have happened, he is still angry, and his hand.” See how you translated this in [Isaiah 5:25](#).

### his hand is still stretched out

Isaiah speaks as if Yahweh were a person about to hit another person with his fist. This is a metaphor for Yahweh punishing Israel. See how you translated this in [Isaiah 5:25](#). Alternate translation: “he will still be ready to punish them” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)



## Isaiah 10

### Isaiah 10 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

This chapter begins with a prophecy that is a continuation of the prophecy beginning in 8:21. Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 10:1-11, 13-14, 15-19, 27-34. (See: **prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess (p.1525)**)

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Yahweh's sovereignty

Yahweh has so much power and authority that he controls all of the nations. He even controls the nations who do not worship him. He uses Assyria to punish the kingdom of Israel.

#### Important figures of speech in this chapter

##### Rhetorical Questions

There are many rhetorical questions in this chapter. Yahweh uses rhetorical questions to make statements about Israel's sin. The Assyrians use rhetorical questions in order to boast in their pride. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-rquestion\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/sin\]\]](#))

## Isaiah 10:1

### to those who enact unjust laws and write unfair decrees

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. Alternate translation: “to those who make laws and decrees that are not fair to everyone” (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

## Isaiah 10:2

### They deprive the needy of justice, rob the poor of my people of their rights

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. Alternate translation: "They are unjust to the poor and needy among my people" (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### the needy

Alternate translation: "poor people"

### plunder widows

Alternate translation: "take everything from women whose husbands have died"

### make the fatherless their prey

Isaiah compares orphans to animals that other animals hunt and eat. This emphasizes that orphans are powerless and judges can easily harm them. Alternate translation: "harm children who do not have parents like an animal that goes after its prey" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### prey

Translated "prey" as in [Isaiah 5:29](#).

## Isaiah 10:3

### What will you do on judgment day & away?

Isaiah uses a question to scold those in Judah who harm the poor and weak people. Alternate translation: "You will be able to do nothing on judgment day ... away!" (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### judgment day

Alternate translation: "the day when Yahweh comes to judge you" or "the day when Yahweh punishes you"

### To whom will you flee for help, and where will you leave your wealth?

Isaiah uses a question to scold those in Judah who harm the poor and weak people. Alternate translation: "You have nowhere to run for help, and you will have nowhere to hide your riches!" (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

## **Isaiah 10:4**

### **Nothing remains, and you crouch**

This could mean: (1) "None of your wealth remains as you crouch" or (2) "You can do nothing else but crouch."

### **you crouch among the prisoners or fall among the killed**

Alternate translation: "your enemies will either take you as a prisoner or will kill you"

### **In all these things, his anger does not subside**

"Even though all these things have happened, he is still angry." See how you translated this in [Isaiah 5:25](#).

### **his hand is still stretched out**

Isaiah speaks as if Yahweh were a person about to hit another person with his fist. This is a metaphor for Yahweh punishing Israel. See how you translated this in [Isaiah 5:25](#). Alternate translation: "he will still be ready to punish them" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 10:5

### Woe

This word marks the beginning of God's announcement about a severe punishment against Assyria.

### the Assyrian

This refers to the king of Assyria.

### the club of my anger, the rod by whom I wield my fury

Both of these phrases mean basically the same thing. Yahweh compares the king of Assyria to a weapon a person holds in his hand and hits other people with. It emphasizes that the king of Assyria and his army are a tool that Yahweh uses to punish Israel. Alternate translation: "who will be like a weapon in my hands that I will use to show my anger" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

## Isaiah 10:6

### I send him & I order him

The word “him” here also refers to the king of Assyria. But it does not mean God is only sending the king; he is sending with him the army of Assyria. Alternate translation: “I send the army of Assyria ... I order them” (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### against an arrogant nation and against the people who bear my overflowing wrath

Alternate translation: “to attack a nation full of proud people who have made me very angry”

### who bear my overflowing wrath

Yahweh speaks of his wrath as if it were more liquid than a container could hold; “the people” are trying to carry this container, but it is heavy, and Yahweh keeps pouring liquid in even after it starts to spill out. Alternate translation: “at whom I continue to be angry even after I have punished them” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### to take the spoil

Alternate translation: “to take everything they have”

### to take the prey

to take the people like prey. See how you translated “prey” in [Isaiah 5:29](#).

### trample them like mud

This could mean: (1) Yahweh compares the army of Assyria attacking Israel to people stomping through mud who do not care what happens to the mud. Alternate translation: “trample them until they become like mud” or (2) the people are stomping on other people so they are lying in the mud and unable to rise. This is a metaphor for completely defeating them. Alternate translation: “completely defeat them” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-simile\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

## Isaiah 10:7

### **But this is not what he intends, nor does he think this way**

The meaning of “this” and “this way” can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “But the king of Assyria does not intend to do what I tell him, nor does he think that I am using him as my weapon” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### **It is in his heart to destroy and eliminate many nations**

The words “destroy” and “eliminate” mean basically the same thing. They are used for emphasis. Alternate translation: “He wants to completely destroy many nations” (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**) (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**)



## Isaiah 10:8

### Are not all my princes kings?

The king of Assyria uses a question to emphasize what he believes everyone should already know. Alternate translation: "I have made captains of my army kings over lands I have conquered!" (See: **Rhetorical Question (p. 1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p. 1475)**)

## Isaiah 10:9

### **Is not Kalno like Carchemish? Is not Hamath like Arpad? Is not Samaria like Damascus?**

The king of Assyria uses these questions for emphasis. Alternate translation: “Kalno is no different from Carchemish. Hamath is no different from Arpad. Samaria is no different from Damascus. I have conquered them all!” (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### **Kalno & Carchemish & Hamath & Arpad**

These are all names of cities. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

## Isaiah 10:10

### As my hand has overcome

“Hand” here is a reference to military strength. Alternate translation: “As my powerful army has defeated” or “As I have conquered” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### my

This refers to the king of Assyria.

### whose carved figures were greater

During this time people believed that the greatness of an idol showed how powerful the kingdom that had built it was. The king of Assyria is saying that because the idols in Jerusalem are not as great as the idols of the kingdoms he has defeated, Jerusalem would be less able to defeat him than they were.

## Isaiah 10:11

### just as I did to Samaria and her worthless idols

The word "Samaria" refers to the people who lived there, and "her" refers to the city of Samaria. Cities and nations were often spoken of as if they were women. Alternate translation: "just as I did to the people of Samaria and their worthless idols" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### will I not also do the same to Jerusalem and to her idols?

The king of Assyria used this question to emphasize the certainty that he will conquer the people of Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "I will certainly do the same to Jerusalem and her idols!" (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

## **Isaiah 10:12**

**When the Lord has finished his work on Mount Zion and on Jerusalem, I will punish**

Yahweh speaks of himself as if he were someone else. "When I, the Lord, have finished my work on Mount Zion and on Jerusalem, I will punish"

**his work on & and on**

his work of punishing. "punishing ... and punishing"

**I will punish the speech of the arrogant heart of the king of Assyria and his prideful looks**

Alternate translation: "I will punish the king of Assyria for the arrogant things he said and the look of pride on his face"

## Isaiah 10:13

### For he says

Alternate translation: "For the king of Assyria says"

### I have removed & I have stolen

Here the word "I" refers to the king of Assyria. He was the leader of the Assyrian army and took credit for what the army did at his command. Alternate translation: "my army has removed ... They have stolen" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### like a bull

"as strong as a bull." Some ancient texts read, "like a mighty man." (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

### I have brought down the inhabitants

This could mean: (1) the king of Assyria has shamed the people of the countries he conquered or (2) he has removed the kings of the nations so they no longer rule. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### I have brought

Here the word "I" refers to the king of Assyria. He was the leader of the Assyrian army and took credit for what the army did at his command. Alternate translation: "I and my army have brought" or "we have brought" (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

## Isaiah 10:14

### General Information:

## General Information:

Yahweh is still quoting the king of Assyria ([Isaiah 10:13](#)).

### My hand has seized

The hand is a metonym for either the king's power or his army. Alternate translation: "In my power I have seized" or "My army has seized" (See: [Metonymy \(p.1449\)](#)) (See: [Metonymy \(p.1449\)](#))

### My hand has seized, as from a nest, the wealth of nations

The king of Assyria compares taking the treasures from the nations to a person taking eggs out of a bird's nest. This emphasizes how easy it was for him and his army to conquer these other kingdoms. Alternate translation: "My army has stolen the wealth from the nations just as easily as a man takes eggs from a nest" (See: [Simile \(p.1479\)](#)) (See: [Simile \(p.1479\)](#))

### as one gathers abandoned eggs, I gathered all the earth

The king of Assyria speaks of taking over nations as if he was gathering eggs. Alternate translation: "just as a person takes eggs from a nest when the bird is not there to protect them, my army has taken the treasures of every nation" (See: [Simile \(p.1479\)](#)) (See: [Simile \(p.1479\)](#))

### None fluttered their wings or opened their mouth or chirped

This compares the nations to a bird who sits quietly while her eggs are taken. This emphasizes that the nations did nothing while the army of Assyria took all of their possessions. Alternate translation: "And like a bird that does not make a sound or flap her wings when someone steals her eggs, the nations did nothing as we took their treasure" (See: [Simile \(p.1479\)](#)) (See: [Simile \(p.1479\)](#))

## Isaiah 10:15

### **Will the ax boast about itself against the one who wields it? Will the saw praise itself more than the one who cuts with it?**

The speaker uses these questions to mock the king of Assyria. Alternate translation: "An ax cannot boast that it is better than the one who holds it. And a saw does not get more glory than the one who cuts with it." (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### **the saw**

a sharp tool used for cutting wood

### **It is as if a rod could lift up those who raise it, or as if a wooden club could lift up a person**

These phrases mean basically the same thing and are used to strengthen the meaning of the two questions before it. This can be translated as a new sentence. Alternate translation: "And neither can a rod or staff lift the person who picks it up" (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)



## Isaiah 10:16

### Therefore the Lord Yahweh of hosts will send emaciation among his elite warriors

It is unclear whether Yahweh or Isaiah is speaking. If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **emaciation**, you can express the same idea with the verb “make weak.” Alternate translation: “Therefore I, Lord Yahweh of hosts, will make the king’s strongest soldiers weak” (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**)

### under his glory there will be kindled a burning like fire

Yahweh compares his punishment to a fire. This emphasizes that his punishment will completely destroy all the splendor and greatness of the kingdom of Assyria. Alternate translation: “I will destroy his greatness as if I were starting a fire to burn everything he is proud of” (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

## Isaiah 10:17

### The light of Israel will become a fire

The phrase “light of Israel” refers to Yahweh. It is unclear whether Yahweh or Isaiah is speaking. Alternate translation: “I, Yahweh, the light of Israel, will become like a fire, able to destroy everyone that does not honor me” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### his Holy One a flame

“I, Yahweh, the Holy one of Israel, will become like a flame.” See how you translated “Holy One” in [Isaiah 1:4](#).

### it will burn and devour his thorns and briers

“The fire will burn and devour the king of Assyria’s thorns and briers.” The speaker compares the king of Assyria’s army to thorns and briers. This emphasizes how easily God will destroy them. Alternate translation: “I will destroy the Assyrians like a fire burning thorns and briers” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### thorns & briers

The words “briers” and “thorns” both refer to useless, thorny plants; they can be translated using one expression. See how you translated these words in [Isaiah 7:23](#). Alternate translation: “thorn bushes” (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**) (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**)

## Isaiah 10:18

### Yahweh will consume the glory of his forest and of his fruitful land

This could mean: (1) "Yahweh will destroy the great forests and farmlands in the nation of Assyria" or (2) "Yahweh will destroy the army of Assyria as a fire burns up great forests and farmlands." (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### both soul and body

This could mean: (1) this emphasizes that God will completely destroy the forests and farmlands. Alternate translation: "completely" or (2) this means God will completely destroy the people of Assyria. The phrase "soul and body" refers to the spiritual part and the physical part of a person. (See: **Merism (p.1440)**) (See: **Merism (p.1440)**)

### it will be like when a sick man's life wastes away

This compares either the forests and farmlands of Assyria or the army of Assyria to a sick man as he lies in bed dying. This emphasizes how something so great can become weak and dying. Alternate translation: "they will be like a sick man who grows weak and dies" (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

## **Isaiah 10:19**

**The remnant of the trees of his forest will be so few**

Alternate translation: "What remains of the trees in the king's forest will be so few"

## Isaiah 10:20

### On that day

This refers to the time when God does the things that are described in [Isaiah 10:16-19](#). Alternate translation: “At that time” (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

### that has escaped

The meaning can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “that has escaped from the army of Assyria” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### will no longer rely on the one who defeated them

Alternate translation: “will no longer rely on the king of Assyria, who harmed them”

### Holy One

See how you translated this in [Isaiah 1:4](#).

## **Isaiah 10:21**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## Isaiah 10:22

### your people, Israel, are

Here, **your** is singular. Possible meanings are: (1) God is speaking to Isaiah and “your” refers to Isaiah. Alternate translation: “your people Israel are” or (2) Isaiah or God is speaking to the nation of Israel and “your” refers to the nation. Alternate translation: “your people, O Israel, are” (See: **Forms of You (p.1408)**) (See: **Forms of You (p.1408)**)

### are like the sand of the seashore

This emphasizes that there were a great number of people of Israel. Alternate translation: “are too many to count, like the sand on the seashore” (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

### Destruction is decreed

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “Yahweh has decreed that he will destroy most of those who live in Israel” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-explicit\]\]](#)) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### as overflowing righteousness demands

This can be translated as a new sentence. Alternate translation: “This must be done for the sake of perfect righteousness” or “Yahweh must do this because he is completely righteous”

## Isaiah 10:23

### carry out the destruction determined throughout the land

This can be translated in active form. This could mean: (1) Alternate translation: “destroy everything in the land just as he has determined to do” or (2) Alternate translation: “destroy the people in the land just as he has determined to do.” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### determined

Alternate translation: “decided”



## Isaiah 10:24

### the Assyrian

Isaiah speaks of the king of Assyria and his army as if he were one man. Alternate translation: “the king of Assyria and his army” (See: **Personification (p.1464)**) (See: **Personification (p.1464)**)

### He will strike you with the rod and raise his staff against you

The words “rod” and “staff” refer to pieces of wood that people use as clubs to beat animals and other people. Isaiah speaks of the way the Assyrians will rule over the Israelites as if the Assyrians were beating the Israelites with clubs. Alternate translation: “He will rule over you and make slaves of you” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### He will strike

The word “He” refers to “the Assyrian” which represents the king of Assyria and his army. Alternate translation: “He and his army will strike” (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### as the Egyptians did

The full meaning can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “as the Egyptians ruled over your ancestors and made them slaves” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

## Isaiah 10:25

### my anger will lead to his destruction

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **destruction**, you can express the same idea with a verbal form. Alternate translation: "I will destroy him because I am angry with him" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**)

## Isaiah 10:26

### Yahweh of hosts

See how you translated this in [Isaiah 1:9](#).

### will wield a whip against them

“will beat the Assyrians with a whip.” God will not really use a whip. This refers to God’s power to punish the Assyrians severely. Alternate translation: “will punish the Assyrians severely as if with a whip” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### as when he defeated Midian at the rock of Oreb

This refers to when God helped a man named Gideon defeat the army of Midian. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

### He will raise his rod over the sea and lift it up as he did in Egypt

This speaks of God rescuing the people from the Assyrians as if they were the Egyptian army. This refers to when God caused the water of the Red Sea to split so the people of Israel could escape from the Egyptian army and so that the Egyptian army would drown in it. Alternate translation: “He will help you escape from the army of Assyria as he helped your ancestors escape the army of Egypt” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 10:27

### his burden is lifted from your shoulder and his yoke from off your neck

“Yahweh will lift the burden that Assyria has put on your shoulder, and he will remove the yoke that they have put on your neck.” These two phrases mean basically the same thing. The words “burden” and “yoke” refer to slavery. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “Yahweh will remove the Assyrians who oppress you and will stop them from making you their slaves” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#) and **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### the yoke will be destroyed because of fatness

This expression suggests that the neck of the animal that is wearing the yoke will become too fat to fit the yoke any longer. This is a metaphor for Israel becoming so strong that the Assyrians can no longer rule them. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “your neck will become so fat that it will break the yoke” or “you will become so strong that you will no longer be the Assyrians’ slaves” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 10:28

### has come & has passed & has stored

Isaiah speaks of these future events as though they have already happened. (See: **Predictive Past (p.1469)**) (See: **Predictive Past (p.1469)**)

### Aiath & Migron & Michmash

These are all cities and villages near Jerusalem that the army of Assyria went through and caused trouble in. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

## Isaiah 10:29

### have crossed & lodge & trembles & has fled

Isaiah speaks of these future events as though they have already happened. (See: **Predictive Past (p.1469)**) (See: **Predictive Past (p.1469)**)

### Geba & Ramah & Gibeah

These are all cities and villages near Jerusalem that the army of Assyria went through and caused trouble in. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

### Ramah trembles and Gibeah of Saul has fled

Here “Ramah” and “Gibeah of Saul” refer to the people who lived in those cities. Alternate translation: “The people of Ramah tremble and the people of Gibeah of Saul have fled” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 10:30

### daughter of Gallim

The word “daughter” here refers to the people who live in the city. Alternate translation: “Gallim” or “people of Gallim” (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

### Gallim & Laishah & Anathoth

These are names of more cities and villages near Jerusalem that the Assyrian army traveled through causing fear among the people. All of these refer to the people who live in these places. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-names\]\]](#)) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 10:31

### Madmenah & Gebim

These are names of more cities and villages near Jerusalem that the Assyrian army traveled through causing fear among the people. All of these refer to the people who live in these places. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-names\]\]](#)) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)



## Isaiah 10:32

### Nob

This is the name of a village or city near Jerusalem that the Assyrian army traveled through causing fear among the people. It refers to the people who live in this place. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-names\]\]](#)) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### he will halt at Nob and shake his fist

Here “he” and “his” refer to the king of Assyria and his soldiers. People would shake their fists at people whom they were threatening. Alternate translation: “the army of Assyria will stop at Nob and threaten” (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

### the mountain of the daughter of Zion, the hill of Jerusalem

The words “mount” and “hill” are metonyms for the people who live on them. The words “mount of the daughter of Zion” mean almost the same thing as the words “hill of Jerusalem.” See how they are translated in [Isaiah 2:14](#). Alternate translation: “the people of Mount Zion and the people living on the hill in Jerusalem” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-doublet\]\]](#)) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 10:33

### Behold

This can be translated as “Look” or “Listen” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you.”

### Yahweh of hosts

See how you translated this in [Isaiah 1:9](#).

### will lop off the boughs & the lofty will be brought low

Isaiah speaks of the army of Assyria as if it were the tall trees in Lebanon. God will destroy the army like people cutting down the mighty trees of Lebanon. This emphasizes that though the army is strong, God has the power to destroy it. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### will lop off the boughs

“will cut off the big branches of the trees.” In order to make it clear that this refers to the army of Assyria, it can be translated as a simile: He will destroy the army of Assyria like strong men cutting off the big branches of trees. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### with a terrifying crash

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **crash**, you can express the same idea with the verb “make a noise.” Alternate translation: “and the branches will crash down on the ground and make a terrifying noise” or “and the branches will fall to the ground with a very loud noise” (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**)

### the tallest trees will be cut down

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “he will cut down the tallest trees” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### the tallest trees

This is a metaphor for “the strongest soldiers.” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### the lofty will be brought low

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “he will bring down the lofty people” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### lofty

proud

## Isaiah 10:34

### He will chop down the thickets & and Lebanon in his majesty will fall

Isaiah speaks of the army of Assyria as if it were the tall trees in Lebanon. God will destroy the army like people cutting down the mighty trees of Lebanon. This emphasizes that though the army is strong, God has the power to destroy it. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### the thickets of the forest

“the dense shrubs in the forest.” This is possibly a metaphor for those people who are not well known. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### Lebanon in his majesty will fall

“the forests of Lebanon will no longer be so grand.” This is possibly a metaphor for the Assyrian army. Alternate translation: “Yahweh will defeat the army of Assyria, as mighty as it is” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

# Isaiah 11

## Isaiah 11 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in this chapter.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Messiah

The prophecies of this chapter focus on the coming Messiah. Some of these prophecies concern the first coming of Jesus, while some reference a future day of restoration. The author transitions between these time periods without telling his reader. (See: [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/prophet\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/christ\]\]](#) and **restore, restoration (p.1530)**)

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Ambiguity

It is uncertain what period of time these prophecies refer to or who will fulfill them. The translator should allow this uncertainty and ambiguity to remain. (See: **fulfill, fulfilled, carried out (p.1507)**)

## Isaiah 11:1

### **A shoot will sprout from the stump of Jesse & a branch out of his roots will bear fruit**

Isaiah speaks of Jesse and his descendants as if they were a tree that had been cut down. Both of these phrases tell about a descendant of Jesse who would be king. Alternate translation: "As a shoot sprouts out of a tree stump, so a descendant of Jesse will become king over what remains of Israel" (See: [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### **the stump of Jesse**

A stump is what remains of a tree after it is chopped down. The "stump of Jesse" represents what was left of the kingdom that Jesse's son David was once king of. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 11:2

### The Spirit of Yahweh will rest upon him

Resting upon him represents being with him and helping him. The word “him” refers to the one who would become king. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### the Spirit of wisdom & the Spirit of instruction & the Spirit of knowledge & the fear of Yahweh

Here the word “Spirit” refers to an ability or quality that the Spirit of Yahweh would give him. Alternate translation: “and he will cause him to have wisdom and understanding, instruction and might, knowledge and the fear of Yahweh” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 11:3

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

Isaiah continues to describe the king.

### he will not judge by what his eyes see

The phrase “what his eyes see” refers to seeing things that are not important for judging a person rightly. Alternate translation: “he will not judge a person simply by seeing what the person looks like” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### nor decide by what his ears hear

“and he will not decide by what his ears hear.” The phrase “what his ears hear” refers to hearing what people say about someone. Alternate translation: “and he will not judge a person simply by hearing what others say about him” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

## Isaiah 11:4

### the poor & the humble & the wicked

These phrases refer to people who have these qualities. Alternate translation: “poor people ... humble people ... wicked people” (See: **Nominal Adjectives (p.1452)**) (See: **Nominal Adjectives (p.1452)**)

### He will strike the earth with the rod of his mouth & with the breath of his lips he will slay the wicked

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### He will strike the earth with the rod of his mouth

The word “earth” here represents the people on earth. Striking them with the rod of his mouth represents judging them, and that judgement will lead to punishment. Alternate translation: “He will judge the people of the earth, and they will be punished” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### with the breath of his lips he will slay the wicked

The “breath of his lips” represents him judging them. Alternate translation: “he will judge wicked people, and they will be killed” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)



## Isaiah 11:5

### the belt of his waist & the belt around his hips

This could mean: (1) the belt is used to secure one's clothes so he can work, or (2) the belt is an undergarment, or (3) the belt is a sash that a king wears to show his authority.

### Righteousness will be the belt of his waist

Wearing righteousness like a belt represents being righteous. This could mean: (1) the king's righteousness will enable him to rule. Alternate translation: "His righteousness will be a like a belt around his waist" or (2) the king's righteousness would show his authority to rule. Alternate translation: "He will rule righteously" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### faithfulness the belt around his hips

The words "will be" are understood in this phrase. Alternate translation: "faithfulness will be the belt around his hips" (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**) (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**)

### faithfulness the belt around his hips

Wearing faithfulness like a belt represents being faithful. This could mean: (1) the king's faithfulness will enable him to rule, or (2) the king's faithfulness will show his authority to rule. Alternate translation: "his faithfulness will be a like a belt around his hips" or "he will rule faithfully" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 11:6

### General Information:

## General Information:

Isaiah describes what the world will be like when the king rules. There will be complete peace in the world. This is shown by the peace that there will be even among animals. Animals that normally kill other animals will not kill them, and they will all be safe together.

### The wolf & the leopard & the young lion

These phrases refer to these animals in general, not to a specific wolf or leopard. These are all strong animals that attack and eat other animals. Alternate translation: "Wolves ... leopards ... young lions" (See: **Generic Noun Phrases (p.1409)**) (See: **Generic Noun Phrases (p.1409)**)

### the lamb & the young goat & the calf & the fattened calf

The phrases refer to these animals in general, not to a specific lamb or goat. These are all animals that eat grass and straw. Other animals sometimes attack and eat them. Alternate translation: "lambs ... young goats ... calves ... fattened calves ... Cows ... oxen" (See: **Generic Noun Phrases (p.1409)**) (See: **Generic Noun Phrases (p.1409)**)

### leopard

a large cat with yellow fur and black spots that kills and eats other animals (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1490)**) (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1490)**)

### the calf, the young lion and the fattened calf, together

The phrase "will be" is understood. Alternate translation: "the calf, the lion, and the fattened calf will be together" (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**) (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**)

### A little child will lead them

A child will take care of them and lead them to good places to drink water and eat grass or hay.

## Isaiah 11:7

### the bear & The lion

These phrases refer to these animals in general, not to a specific wolf or leopard. These are all strong animals that attack and eat other animals. Alternate translation: “Wolves ... leopards ... young lions ... bears ... Lions” (See: **Generic Noun Phrases (p.1409)**) (See: **Generic Noun Phrases (p.1409)**)

### The cow & the ox

The phrases refer to these animals in general, not to a specific lamb or goat. These are all animals that eat grass and straw. Other animals sometimes attack and eat them. Alternate translation: “lambs ... young goats ... calves ... fattened calves ... Cows ... oxen” (See: **Generic Noun Phrases (p.1409)**) (See: **Generic Noun Phrases (p.1409)**)

### bear

a very large animal with thick hair and sharp claws that kills and eats other animals (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1490)**) (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1490)**)

### will graze together

Alternate translation: “will eat grass together”

### their young

This refers to the animals’ offspring shortly after they are born.

## Isaiah 11:8

### A baby will play over the hole of the snake

It can be stated clearly that the baby will be safe because the snake will not bite it. Alternate translation: “Babies will play safely over the hole of the snake” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### the snake & the serpent's den

These phrases refer to poisonous snakes in general. Alternate translation: “snakes ... serpents' dens” (See: **Generic Noun Phrases (p.1409)**) (See: **Generic Noun Phrases (p.1409)**)

### the weaned child

a child who no longer drinks its mother's milk

**Isaiah 11:9****on all my holy mountain**

The “holy mountain” is Mount Zion, in Jerusalem. Alternate translation: “on all of Yahweh’s holy mountain”

**the earth will be full of knowledge of Yahweh**

The phrase “knowledge of Yahweh” represents people who know Yahweh. Alternate translation: “the earth will be full of those who know Yahweh” or “those who know Yahweh will cover the earth” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

**as the waters cover the sea**

This phrase is used to show how full the earth will be of people who know Yahweh. You may want to help your readers to understand that it does this by using words that are similar to the words in the previous phrase. Alternate translation: “as the seas are full of water” (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

## Isaiah 11:10

### the root of Jesse

This refers to Jesse's and King David's descendant who would become the king that was told about in [Isaiah 1:1](#).

Alternate translation: "Jesse's descendant king" or "the king descended from Jesse" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### will stand as a banner for the peoples

A banner is a flag that a king would raise as a sign for people to see it and come to him. Alternate translation: "will be like a sign for the peoples" or "will attract the peoples to come to him" (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

### The nations

Alternate translation: "The people of the nations"

## **Isaiah 11:11**

**the Lord will again extend his hand to recover the remnant of his people**

The hand is a reference to God's power. Alternate translation: "the Lord will again use his power to bring back the remnant of his people" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## **Pathros & Elam & Hamath**

These are names of places. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

## Isaiah 11:12

### He will set up a banner for the nations

This could mean: (1) "The Lord will set up the king as a banner for the nations" or (2) "The king will set up a banner for the nations" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### a banner for the nations

Alternate translation: "a flag for the nations to see" or "a flag to call the nations to himself"

### the dispersed of Judah

Alternate translation: "the people of Judah who had been scattered around the world"

### from the four corners of the earth

The earth is pictured as if it has four corners, and those corners are its most distant places. This refers to everywhere on earth where those people might be. Alternate translation: "from even the most distant places of the earth" or "from all over the earth" (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)



## Isaiah 11:13

### He will turn aside the envy of Ephraim

Ephraim here refers to the descendants of the northern kingdom of Israel. The noun “envy” can be expressed as an adjective. Alternate translation: “He will stop the people of Ephraim from being envious” (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**)

### Judah will no longer be hostile to Ephraim

Judah here refers to the descendants of the southern kingdom. This phrase can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “he will stop the people of Judah from being hostile” or “he will stop the people of Judah from hating” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 11:14

### they will swoop down on the Philistine hills

The people of Israel and Judah are pictured as if they were birds that fly down quickly to attack a person or animal.  
Alternate translation: "they will go quickly to the Philistine hills to attack the people there" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)  
(See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## **Isaiah 11:15**

### **the gulf of the Sea of Egypt**

A “gulf” is a large area of water that land partly surrounds.

### **With his scorching wind he will wave his hand over the Euphrates River**

Waving his hand over something represents his power to change it. Alternate translation: “By his power he will cause a scorching wind to blow on the Euphrates River” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### **his scorching wind**

This is a strong or hot wind that causes some of the water in rivers to dry up.

### **so it can be crossed over in sandals**

Alternate translation: “so that people can cross over it even while wearing their sandals”

## **Isaiah 11:16**

### **There will be a highway**

A highway is a large road that many people can travel on. "Yahweh will make a road"

### **in their coming up from the land of Egypt**

Alternate translation: "when they came up from the land of Egypt"

## Isaiah 12

### Isaiah 12 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### “That day”

The time of this day is unclear. It may be a time in the near future for Isaiah, or a time in the distant future for him. In the latter case, it would reference the last days. (See: **last day, last days, latter days (p.1522)**)

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Tense

Extra care must be taken in translating the tense of this chapter. The author talks about the future, but frequently changes to speak in the present tense. Some languages will have difficulty speaking in this way.

## Isaiah 12:1

### On that day

It can be stated clearly what time is being referred to. Alternate translation: "At that time" or "When the king rules" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### your wrath has turned away

God's wrath is spoken of as if it were a person that could turn away and leave. It means that God has stopped being angry. Alternate translation: "You are no longer angry with me" (See: **Personification (p.1464)**) (See: **Personification (p.1464)**)

## Isaiah 12:2

### God is my salvation

God causing someone's salvation is spoken of as if God were that salvation. If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **salvation**, you can express the same idea with the noun "savior" or the verb "save." Alternate translation: "God causes my salvation" or "God is my savior" or "God is the one who saves me" (See: [[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor]] and [[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-abstractnouns]]) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### Yahweh is my strength

God causing someone to be strong is spoken of as if Yahweh were their strength. Alternate translation: "Yahweh makes me strong" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### song

The word "song" here represents what a person sings about. Alternate translation: "the one I joyfully sing about" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### He has become my salvation

Alternate translation: "He has saved me"

## Isaiah 12:3

### With joy you will draw water from the wells of salvation

Isaiah speaks of people being saved as if they were getting salvation the way people get water out of well.

Alternate translation: "you will rejoice when he saves you, as people rejoice when they draw water from a well"

(See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)



## Isaiah 12:4

### call upon his name

Here “his name” refers to Yahweh. Calling on him represents either praising him or asking him for help. Alternate translation: “praise him loudly” or “call to him to help you” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### declare his deeds among the peoples

The noun “deeds” can be expressed with the phrase “what he has done.” Alternate translation: “Tell the peoples about the great things he has done” (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**)

### proclaim that his name is exalted

Here “his name” refers to Yahweh. Alternate translation: “proclaim that he is exalted” or “proclaim that he is great” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## **Isaiah 12:5**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## **Isaiah 12:6**

### **for great in your midst is the Holy One of Israel**

Alternate translation: "because the Holy One of Israel, who lives among you, is mighty" or "because the Holy One of Israel is mighty and he lives among you"

## Isaiah 13

### Isaiah 13 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in this chapter.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Prophecies

It is unclear who is addressed by these prophecies. At times, it appears to be the people of Judah, while at other times it seems to reference the last days. This ambiguity should remain in translation. (See: [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/prophet\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/lastday\]\]](#))

## Isaiah 13:1

### about Babylon

The name of the city stands for the people of Babylon. Alternate translation: “about the people of Babylon” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### Amoz

Amoz was the father of Isaiah. See how you translated this in [Isaiah 1:1](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

## Isaiah 13:2

### cry aloud to them

The word “them” refers to soldiers from another country.

### the gates of the nobles

This could mean: (1) “the gates of Babylon where the nobles live” or (2) “the gates of the nobles’ large houses” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### the nobles

Alternate translation: “the respected people” or “the rulers”

## Isaiah 13:3

### my holy ones

Alternate translation: "the ones I have set apart for myself" or "the army that I have set apart for myself"

### I have called my mighty men to execute my anger

Executing God's anger represents punishing people because of God's anger. Alternate translation: "I have called my mighty soldiers to punish the people of Babylon because they have made me angry" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### even my proudly exulting ones

"even those who proudly exult." Why they proudly exult can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "even my people who proudly exult because of the great things I do" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

## Isaiah 13:4

### The noise of a multitude in the mountains, as of many people

The words “there is” are understood. The phrases “multitude” and “many people” mean the same thing. Alternate translation: “There is the noise of many people in the mountains” or “There is the noise of a great crowd of people in the mountains” (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**) (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**)

### The noise of a tumult of the kingdoms like many nations gathered together

The words “there is” are understood. The words “kingdoms” and “nations” here refer to the same thing. Alternate translation: “There is the noisy commotion of many kingdoms gathered together” (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**) (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**)

### is mustering

Alternate translation: “is gathering”



## Isaiah 13:5

### from way over the horizon

Alternate translation: "from places far beyond the horizon" or "from very distant places"

### his instruments of judgment

The soldiers that God is sending to attack Babylon are spoken of as if they were weapons. "Judgment" represents punishment because God has judged Babylon. Alternate translation: "the army that he will use to punish Babylon" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 13:6

### Howl

cry out loud. The word is usually used of an animal making a sound because it is in pain.

### the day of Yahweh is near

Something that is about to happen soon is spoken of as if it is coming near. Alternate translation: “the day of Yahweh will happen soon” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### it comes with destruction from the Almighty

The word “it” refers to the day of Yahweh. “It comes with destruction” means that destruction will happen on that day. “Destruction from the Almighty” means that the Almighty will destroy them. Alternate translation: “on that day, the Almighty God will destroy them” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-abstractnouns\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 13:7

### all hands hang limp

This shows that all the people are very weak and unable to do anything.

### every heart melts

People being terribly afraid is spoken of as if their hearts melt. Alternate translation: “everyone is terribly afraid”  
(See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 13:8

### pain and agony will seize them

People suddenly feeling terrible pain and sorrow is spoken of as if the pains and sorrows were people who grab them. Alternate translation: “they will suddenly feel terrible pain and agony” (See: **Personification (p.1464)**) (See: **Personification (p.1464)**)

### like a woman in labor

Being in labor represents giving birth to a baby. Alternate translation: “like a woman giving birth to a baby” or “like the pain of a woman who is giving birth to a baby” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### their faces will be aflame

Their faces being hot and red is spoken of as if they were burning. Possible reasons for their faces being hot are: (1) the people are very afraid or (2) the people feel ashamed or (3) the people cry. Alternate translation: “their faces will be hot and red” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 13:9

### the day of Yahweh comes with cruel wrath and overflowing anger

The day coming with wrath and anger means that there will be wrath and anger on that day. The abstract nouns “wrath” and “anger” can be expressed with the adjectives “furious” and “angry.” Alternate translation: “on the day of Yahweh, he will be furious and extremely angry” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-explicit\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### overflowing anger

Anger here is spoken of as if the one who is angry is a container filled with anger. Overflowing anger means that he is extremely angry. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### to make the land a desolation

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **desolation**, you can express the same idea with the verb “ruin.” Alternate translation: “to ruin the land” (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**)

## Isaiah 13:10

### The stars of heaven and the constellations

Alternate translation: "The stars in the sky"

### will not give their light

Giving light represents "shining." Alternate translation: "will not shine" (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

### The sun will be darkened

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Yahweh will darken the sun" or "The sun will be dark" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 13:11

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues to talk about what he will do on the day of Yahweh.

### the world

This refers to people. Alternate translation: “the people of the world” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### the wicked & the proud & the ruthless

These phrases refer to people who have these qualities. Alternate translation: “wicked people ... proud people ... ruthless people” (See: **Nominal Adjectives (p.1452)**) (See: **Nominal Adjectives (p.1452)**)

### the ruthless

Alternate translation: “cruel people”

### will bring down the arrogance of the ruthless

Being low often represents being humble. Bringing down people’s arrogance represents making them humble. Alternate translation: “will humble the ruthless” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 13:12

### I will make men more rare than fine gold

Why there will be so few people can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "I will cause so many people to die that living people will be more rare than fine gold" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### men more rare than fine gold & mankind harder to find than the pure gold of Ophir

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### pure gold of Ophir

Ophir was the name of a place where there was pure gold. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)



## **Isaiah 13:13**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## Isaiah 13:14

### Like a hunted gazelle or like a sheep with no shepherd

Yahweh speaks of the defenseless people of Israel as if they were a gazelle or a sheep that was being chased by hunters or wild animals. Alternate translation: "Like gazelles that run away swiftly when people hunt them, and like sheep that have no shepherd run away from wild animals" (See: [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/translate-unknown\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-simile\]\]](#)) (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1490)**)

### gazelle

an animal that is similar to a deer. People hunt them, and wild animals sometimes attack and kill them. (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1490)**) (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1490)**)

### like a sheep with no shepherd

Sheep that have no shepherd have no one to protect them from wild animals that attack and kill them.

## Isaiah 13:15

**Every one who is found will be killed & every one who is captured will die by the sword**

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "The enemy will kill with the sword everyone they find" (See: [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#)) and [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

## Isaiah 13:16

### Their infants also will be dashed in pieces

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “The enemy will also dash their infants to pieces” or “The enemy will beat their infants until they die” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### before their eyes

Here the people are represented by their “eyes” to emphasize what they see. It can be stated clearly that the parents are unable to help their infants. Alternate translation: “in front of them” or “while their parents helplessly watch” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-explicit\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-synecdoche\]\]](#)) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### Their houses will be plundered

This means that everything valuable will be stolen from their houses. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “The enemy will plunder the people’s houses” or “The enemy will steal everything valuable from the people’s houses” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### their wives raped

This means that the enemies will attack the women and force them to have sex with them. The words “will be” are understood. This can also be expressed with an active form. Alternate translation: “their wives will be raped” or “their enemies will rape their wives” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**)

## Isaiah 13:17

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues speaking.

### **I am about to stir up the Medes to attack them**

Making people want to do something is spoken of as stirring them up. Alternate translation: "I am about to make the Medes want to attack them" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 13:18

### Their bows will strike down

Here “their bows” is a metonym for the soldiers who use the bows. Alternate translation: “Their soldiers will use bows and arrows to kill” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 13:19

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues speaking.

### the most admired of kingdoms

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “the kingdom that people most admire” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### Then Babylon & will be overthrown by God

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “Then God will destroy Babylon, the most admired of kingdoms, the splendor of Chaldean pride, as he destroyed Sodom and Gomorrah” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### the splendor of Chaldean pride

The abstract nouns “splendor” and “pride” can be translated with adjectives. The word “splendor” refers to the beautiful appearance of Babylon. Alternate translation: “the beautiful city that the Chaldeans are so proud of” (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**)

## Isaiah 13:20

### It will not be inhabited or lived in

The two verbs mean basically the same thing. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “No one will live in it” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-doublet\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Doublet (p. 1397)**)

### from generation to generation

The phrase “generation to generation” refers to all generations of people who will live in the future. Alternate translation: “for ever” or “ever again” (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

### The Arab

This refers to Arab people in general, not one person. Alternate translation: “Arabs” or “Arab people” (See: **Generic Noun Phrases (p.1409)**) (See: **Generic Noun Phrases (p.1409)**)



## Isaiah 13:21

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues speaking about what will happen to Babylon.

### will lie there

Alternate translation: "will lie in Babylon"

### Their houses

Alternate translation: "The people's houses"

### owls

Owls are wild birds that hunt at night. (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1490)**) (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1490)**)

### ostriches

Ostriches are large wild birds that run fast and cannot fly. (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1490)**) (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1490)**)

## Isaiah 13:22

### Hyenas

Hyenas are large wild animals that look like dogs and eat dead animals. Their loud cry sounds like a person laughing. (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1490)**) (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1490)**)

### jackals in the beautiful palaces

The words “will cry” are understood. Alternate translation: “jackals will cry in the beautiful palaces” (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**) (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**)

### jackals

wild dogs (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1490)**) (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1490)**)

### Her time is near, and her days will not be delayed

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. “Her time” and “her days” both refer to the time that God has chosen for Babylon to be destroyed. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “The time that all of this will happen to the people of Babylon is near, and nothing will stop it” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

## Isaiah 14

### Isaiah 14 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 14:4-27, 29-32.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Satan

It is believed that this chapter references Satan. It describes Satan as a star fallen from heaven. There are five important statements beginning with the words "I will" which appear to show the essence of Satan's sin. (See: [\[\[rc://tw/dict/bible/kt/satan\]\]](#), [\[\[rc://tw/dict/bible/kt/heaven\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc://tw/dict/bible/kt/sin\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-explicit\]\]](#))

#### Babylon

This is the name of the kingdom that conquered Judah, but it is also the name representing Satan's kingdom in prophecies. They were not yet a world power when these words were spoken. It should be translated as "Babylon," but translators should be aware of its dual meaning.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Israel

The use of Israel in this chapter is in reference to the nation or people group of Israel. It is this Israel who will be restored and not the kingdom of Israel. (See: **restore, restoration (p.1530)**)

## Isaiah 14:1

### Yahweh will have compassion on Jacob

Here “Jacob” refers to the descendants of Jacob. Alternate translation: “Yahweh will have mercy on the descendants of Jacob” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### attach themselves to the house of Jacob

The house of Jacob refers to the descendants of Jacob, the Israelites. Alternate translation: “unite with the descendants of Jacob” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## **Isaiah 14:2**

### **The nations will bring them to their own place**

Alternate translation: "The nations will bring the descendants of Jacob back to the land of Israel"

### **the house of Israel**

This refers to the Israelites, the descendants of Israel. Alternate translation: "the descendants of Israel" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### **They will take captive those who had captured them**

Alternate translation: "The Israelite soldiers will take as captives those who had captured Israelites"

## Isaiah 14:3

### from your suffering and anguish

The word “your” is singular, but it refers to the people of Israel. Also, “suffering” and “anguish” mean basically the same thing and are used together for emphasis. Alternate translation: “from the things that have caused you to suffer greatly” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-you\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-doublet\]\]](#)) (See: **Forms of You (p.1408)**)

## Isaiah 14:4

### How the oppressor has come to an end

“The oppressor has come to an end.” This is an exclamation.

### the proud fury ended

The words “how and “has” are understood. Alternate translation: “how the proud fury has ended” or “his pride and fury have ended” (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**) (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**)

### the proud fury ended

The “proud fury” refers to the king of Babylon being proud and treating other nations cruelly. Alternate translation: “his cruelty has ended” or “he can no longer oppress people” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 14:5

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

This is part of the taunt song that the Israelites will sing to the king of Babylon.

### **Yahweh has broken the staff of the wicked**

The staff of the wicked probably refers to a stick that wicked people would hit other people with. Breaking that stick represents destroying their power to treat people cruelly. Alternate translation: "Yahweh has destroyed the power of the wicked" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### **the scepter of those rulers**

A scepter represents a ruler's power to rule. Breaking the scepter represents destroying the ruler's power. Alternate translation: "Yahweh has destroyed the power of the wicked rulers" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)



## **Isaiah 14:6**

### **that struck the peoples**

“who struck the peoples.” Wicked people struck the peoples with their staff.

### **with unceasing blows**

Alternate translation: “without stopping” or “again and again”

### **that ruled the nations**

Alternate translation: “who conquered other nations”

### **with an attack that was unrestrained**

Alternate translation: “attacking them without stopping”

## Isaiah 14:7

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

This is part of the taunt song that the Israelites will sing to the king of Babylon.

### The whole earth

This refers to everyone on earth. Alternate translation: "everyone on earth" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 14:8

### Even the cypress trees rejoice over you with the cedars of Lebanon

Isaiah speaks of the trees as if they were people who could rejoice. This emphasizes that it is such a great thing that God has stopped the king of Babylon that even nature would rejoice if it could. Alternate translation: "It will be as if even the cyprus trees and the cedars of Lebanon rejoice over you" (See: **Personification (p.1464)**) (See: **Personification (p.1464)**)

### rejoice over you

Why they rejoice can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "rejoice that God has made you powerless" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### Since you are laid low

Being laid low represents being made powerless and unimportant. Alternate translation: "Since you have become powerless" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 14:9

### Sheol below is eager to meet you

Sheol is spoken of as if it were a person who is eager to meet his guests. This implies that the king dies. Alternate translation: "Sheol is like a host eager to meet you" (See: **Personification (p.1464)**) (See: **Personification (p.1464)**)

### It arouses the dead for you, all the kings of the earth

"it wakes up the dead for you, all the kings of the earth." Sheol is spoken of as if it were a person that could wake up those who are in it. Alternate translation: "All the dead kings of the earth in Sheol wake up to greet you" (See: **Personification (p.1464)**) (See: **Personification (p.1464)**)

## **Isaiah 14:10**

### **Connecting Statement:**

## **Connecting Statement:**

This is part of the taunt song that the Israelites will sing to the king of Babylon. Here they sing about what the dead kings in Sheol will say to him.

### **They all will speak and say to you**

The word “they” refers to the dead kings in Sheol, and the word “you” refers to the king of Babylon.

## Isaiah 14:11

### Your pomp has been brought down to Sheol

The dead kings will speak of the king of Babylon having no more splendor as if his splendor had gone down to Sheol. Alternate translation: "Your splendor ended when God sent you here to Sheol" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### with the sound of your string instruments

People would make music on string instruments to honor the king. The dead kings will speak of people no longer honoring the king of Babylon with music as if the music went to Sheol. Alternate translation: "along with the sound of people playing music to honor you" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### Maggots are spread under you

The maggots under his dead body are spoken of as if they were a mat or bed. Alternate translation: "You lie on a bed of maggots" or "You lie on many maggots" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### worms cover you

The worms all over his body are spoken of as if they were covering him like a blanket. Alternate translation: "Worms cover you like a blanket" or "There are worms all over your body" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 14:12

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

This is part of the taunt song that the Israelites will sing to the king of Babylon.

### How you are fallen from heaven, daystar, son of the morning

The daystar is a bright star that rises just before morning. The people of Israel will refer to the king of Babylon in terms of this star in order to imply that he once was great, but now he was not. Alternate translation: "You were like the bright morning star, but you have fallen from the sky" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### How you are cut down to the ground

The people of Israel will speak of the king of Babylon as if he were a tree that was cut down. Alternate translation: "You are defeated like a tree that someone has cut down to the ground" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 14:13

### I will sit on the mount of assembly

This alludes to the myth that many people in the Ancient Near East knew, that the Canaanite gods met in council on the top of a mountain in the northern part of Syria. Sitting on the mountain represents ruling with the gods. Alternate translation: "I will rule on the mountain where the gods assemble" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### in the far reaches of the north

The mountain in the north was apparently called Zaphon. Some modern versions say "far away on the sides of Zaphon." Alternate translation: "in the most northern places"



## Isaiah 14:14

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## Isaiah 14:15

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

This is part of the taunt song that the Israelites will sing to the king of Babylon.

### Yet you are now brought down to Sheol

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "But now God has sent you down to Sheol" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 14:16

### Is this the man

The people will use this question either to mock the king of Babylon, or to express their shock at what has happened to him. Alternate translation: “Surely, this is not the man” (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### who made the earth tremble

This could mean: (1) the earth trembled as the king’s army marched to conquer people, or (2) this refers to the people of the earth trembling in fear of him. (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### shook kingdoms

This could mean: (1) this is a metaphor for “conquered kingdoms” or (2) this is metonymy for “terrified the people of kingdoms.” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## **Isaiah 14:17**

**who made the world like a wilderness**

Alternate translation: "who made the places where people lived into a wilderness"

## Isaiah 14:18

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

This is the end of the taunt song that the Israelites will sing to the king of Babylon.

### **all of them lie down in honor**

This means that their bodies were buried in an honorable way. Alternate translation: “all the kings who have died are buried in an honorable way” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

## Isaiah 14:19

### But you are cast out of your grave

Being thrown out of the grave represents not being buried. Alternate translation: “But you are not buried. Your body is left on the ground” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### like a branch thrown away

A branch thrown away represents something worthless. Alternate translation: “like a worthless branch that is tossed aside” (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

### The dead cover you like a garment

This represents many dead bodies being on top of his body. Alternate translation: “The bodies of dead people completely cover your body” or “The bodies of dead soldiers are piled on top of your body” (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

### those pierced by the sword

This describes “the dead” spoken of at the beginning of this sentence. Being pierced by the sword represents being killed in battle. Alternate translation: “those who were killed in battle” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### who go down to the stones of the pit

The pit refers either to hell, or to a large hole in the ground where many dead bodies are simply dumped.

## Isaiah 14:20

### You will not join them in burial

The word “them” refers to the other kings who died and were buried properly. Joining them in burial represents being buried as they were. Alternate translation: “you will never be buried as other kings were buried” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### The offspring of evildoers will never be mentioned again

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “no one will ever speak again about the descendants of evildoers” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 14:21

### Prepare your slaughter for his children

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **slaughter**, you can express the same idea with the verb “kill.” Alternate translation: “Get ready to kill the children of the king of Babylon” (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**)

### for the iniquity of their ancestors

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **iniquity**, you can express the same idea with the verb “sinned greatly.” Alternate translation: “because their forefathers have sinned greatly” (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**)

### so they will not rise up

Here “rise up” represents either becoming powerful or attacking. Alternate translation: “so they will not become powerful” or “so they will not attack” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### possess the earth

This represents taking control of the people on the earth, in this case by conquering them. Alternate translation: “take control of the peoples on the earth” or “conquer the peoples on the earth” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### fill the whole world with cities

This represents causing the world to have many cities on it. Alternate translation: “build cities all over the world” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)



## Isaiah 14:22

### this is the declaration of Yahweh of hosts

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. Alternate translation: “this is what Yahweh of hosts has declared” or “this is what I, Yahweh of hosts, have declared” (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1406)**) (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1406)**)

### Yahweh of hosts

See how you translated this in [Isaiah 1:9](#).

## Isaiah 14:23

### I will also make her

The word “her” refers to the city of Babylon. Cities were often spoken of as if they were women. Alternate translation: “I will also make it” (See: **Personification (p.1464)**) (See: **Personification (p.1464)**)

### a possession of owls

This represents wild animals living in the city because there are no people there. Alternate translation: “a place where owls live” or “a place where wild animals live” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### into pools of water

Causing there to be swamps or ponds of stagnant water where the city was is spoken of as making the city into those things. Alternate translation: “into a place where there are stagnant ponds” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 14:24

### Yahweh of hosts

See how you translated this in [Isaiah 1:9](#).

**as I have intended, so it will come about; and as I have purposed, so it will be**

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. Alternate translation: “the things that I have planned will surely happen” (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

## Isaiah 14:25

### I will break the Assyrian in my land

Breaking represents defeating. Alternate translation: "I will defeat the Assyrian in my land" or "I will cause the Assyrian in my land to be defeated" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### the Assyrian

This represents the Assyrian king and his army. Alternate translation: "the king of Assyria and his army" or "the Assyrian army" (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### trample him underfoot

This represents completely defeating him. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### Then his yoke will be lifted from off them and his burden from off their shoulder

This can be expressed with an active verb. Alternate translation: "Then I will lift his yoke from them and his burden from their shoulder" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### Then his yoke will be lifted from off them and his burden from off their shoulder

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. Lifting the yoke and burden represents setting people free from slavery. Alternate translation: "Then I will set the Israelites free from slavery to Assyria like removing a heavy burden from their shoulder" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### his yoke & his burden

The word "his" refers to Assyria.

### from off them & from off their shoulder

The words "them" and "their" refer to the people of Israel.

## Isaiah 14:26

### General Information:

## General Information:

This may be Isaiah speaking or it may be Yahweh speaking.

### **This is the plan that is intended for the whole earth**

The idea of “is intended” can be expressed with an active verb. Alternate translation: “This is the plan that God intends for the whole earth” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### **this is the hand that is raised over all the nations**

God being ready to punish the nations is spoken of as if he raised his hand in order to hit them. The word “hand” may also represent his power. Alternate translation: “this is Yahweh’s power to punish all the nations” or “this is how Yahweh will punish the nations” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 14:27

### who will stop him?

This question emphasizes that no one can stop Yahweh. Alternate translation: “there is no one who can stop him.” (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### Yahweh of hosts

See how you translated this in [Isaiah 1:9](#).

### His hand is raised

This represents Yahweh being ready to punish the nations. Alternate translation: “He is ready to punish them” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### who will turn it back?

This question is used to say that no one can turn back God’s hand. Turning back his hand represents stopping him from punishing the nations. Alternate translation: “no one can turn it back.” or “no one can stop him from punishing them.” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-rquestion\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

## **Isaiah 14:28**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## Isaiah 14:29

### the rod that struck you is broken

The rod that struck Philistia represents a king who sent his army to attack them. Being broken represents either being dead or being defeated. Alternate translation: “the king that sent his army against you is dead” or “the army that attacked you is defeated” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### For out of the serpent’s root will grow out an adder & his offspring will be a fiery flying serpent

These two phrases are both the image of a serpent’s offspring being even more harmful than the serpent. They represent a king’s successor being more powerful and cruel than the first king. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### an adder

a kind of poisonous snake

### a fiery flying serpent

Here the word “fiery” probably refers to the serpent’s poisonous bite, and the word “flying” refers to its quick movements. Alternate translation: “a quickly moving poisonous snake” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)



## Isaiah 14:30

### The firstborn of the poor

This represents the poorest people. Alternate translation: "The poorest people" or "The poorest of my people" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### I will kill your root with famine that will put to death all your survivors

Here "your root" refers to the people of Philistia. Alternate translation: "I will kill your people with famine that will put to death all your survivors" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 14:31

### Howl, gate; cry, city

Here “gate” and “city” represent the people at the city gates and in the cities. “Howl, you people at the city gates; cry, you people in the cities” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### you will melt away

Melting away represents becoming weak because of fear. Alternate translation: “you will grow weak with fear” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### For out of the north comes a cloud of smoke

This implies that a large army is coming from the north. Alternate translation: “For from the north comes a large army with a cloud of smoke” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### a cloud of smoke

This could mean: (1) this represents a cloud of dust that the army stirs up as they travel on dry dirt roads. Alternate translation: “a cloud of dust” or (2) there is a lot of smoke because of all the things that the army destroys and burns. Alternate translation: “much smoke” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### there is no straggler in his ranks

Alternate translation: “no one in his ranks walks slowly behind the others”

## Isaiah 14:32

### How will they respond to the messengers of that nation?

The author uses this question to introduce his instruction about how the Israelites should speak to the messengers. Alternate translation: "This is how we will answer the messengers of Philistia." (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### Yahweh has founded Zion

Alternate translation: "Yahweh started Zion"

### in her

Alternate translation: "in Jerusalem" or "there"

### the afflicted of his people

Alternate translation: "those of his people who have been afflicted"

## Isaiah 15

### Isaiah 15 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in this chapter.

This chapter shifts from discussing Judah to the nation of Moab. Moab is punished by Yahweh, even though he is not a god they worship. (See: **God (p.1508)**)

## Isaiah 15:1

### General Information:

## General Information:

Often in prophecy events that will happen in future are described as happening now or in the past. This emphasizes that the event will certainly happen. (See: **Predictive Past (p.1469)**) (See: **Predictive Past (p.1469)**)

### A declaration

Alternate translation: “This is what Yahweh declares” or “This is a message from Yahweh”

### Ar & Kir

These are names of cities and towns in Moab. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

### Ar of Moab is laid waste and destroyed

The words “laid waste” and “destroyed” mean the same thing and emphasize that the city was completely ruined. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “Enemy armies will completely destroy Ar of Moab” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-doublet\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**)

## Isaiah 15:2

### Dibon & Nebo & Medeba

These are names of cities and towns in Moab. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

### went up to the heights to weep

Here “up to the heights” refers to a temple or altar that was built on high ground like a hill or mountain side.  
Alternate translation: “went up to the temple on the hilltop to weep” (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

### Moab laments over Nebo and over Medeba

These place names refer to the people who live there. Alternate translation: “the people of Moab will weep because of what happened to the cities of Nebo and Medeba” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### All their heads are shaved bare and all their beards are cut off

They do this to show their extreme sadness. AT” “They will all shave their heads and cut off their beards and grieve” (See: **Symbolic Action (p.1482)**) (See: **Symbolic Action (p.1482)**)

## Isaiah 15:3

### they wear sackcloth

They do this to show their extreme sadness. Alternate translation: "they wear sackcloth and mourn" (See: **Symbolic Action (p.1482)**) (See: **Symbolic Action (p.1482)**)

## Isaiah 15:4

### Heshbon & Elealeh & Jahaz

These are names of cities and towns. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

### Heshbon and Elealeh call out

These city names represent the people of these cities. “The people of Heshbon and Elealeh call out” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### they tremble within themselves

Physical trembling is a symptom of fear and represents fear. Alternate translation: “they will be completely filled with fear” or “they tremble with fear” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)



## Isaiah 15:5

### My heart cries out for Moab

Here God is represented by his “heart” which emphasizes his emotions. God speaks of his great sadness as if his heart cried out. Alternate translation: “I am extremely sad about what is happening to Moab” (See: [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-synecdoche\]\]](#) or [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### her fugitives flee

“the fugitives from Moab will flee.” A fugitive is a person who runs away so that his enemy will not capture him.

### Zoar & Eglath Shelishiyah & Luhith & Horonaim

These are names of cities and towns. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

### over their destruction

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **destruction**, you can express the same idea with the verb “destroyed.” Alternate translation: “because their city is destroyed” (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**)

## Isaiah 15:6

### Nimrim

This is the name of a city or town. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

## **Isaiah 15:7**

### **The abundance**

Alternate translation: "Everything"

### **brook of the poplars**

This may refer to the river at the southern border of Moab.

## Isaiah 15:8

### The cry has gone around the territory of Moab

People's crying out and others hearing it is spoken of as if the cry had gone out. Alternate translation: "People all over the territory of Moab cry out" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### the wailing as far as Eglaim and Beer Elim

The words "has gone" are understood. People's wailing and others hearing it is spoken of as if the wailing had gone as far away as these two places. Alternate translation: "the wailing has gone as far as Eglaim and Beer Elim" or "people even as far away as Eglaim and Beer Elim wail"

### Eglaim & Beer Elim

These are names of cities and towns. Dimon was the principal city of the country of Moab. Several modern versions have "Dibon" instead of "Dimon." (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

## Isaiah 15:9

### Dimon

This is the name of a city or town. Dimon was the principal city of the country of Moab. Several modern versions have “Dibon” instead of “Dimon.” (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

### but I will bring even more upon Dimon

Here “I” refers to Yahweh. Also, “Dimon” refers to the people who live there. Alternate translation: “but I will cause even more trouble for the people of Dimon” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 16

### Isaiah 16 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

This chapter is a continuation of the previous chapter and is a prophecy against the nation of Moab. (See: **prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess (p.1525)**)

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 16:1-12.

## Isaiah 16:1

### Send rams to the ruler of the land

The Moabites will send rams to the king of Judah so that he might protect them from the enemy army. (See: **Symbolic Action (p.1482)**) (See: **Symbolic Action (p.1482)**)

### Selah

This is the name of a city. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

### the daughter of Zion

The “daughter” of a city means the people of the city. See how you translated this in [Isaiah 1:8](#). Alternate translation: “the people of Zion” or “the people who live in Zion” (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

## Isaiah 16:2

### **As wandering birds, as a scattered nest, so the women of Moab are at the fords of the Arnon River**

All the people of Moab, which includes the women, are forced to flee from their homes. Alternate translation: "Like birds without a home, the women of Moab will flee across the river to another land" (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

### **As wandering birds, as a scattered nest**

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**) (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**)



## Isaiah 16:3

### provide some shade like night in the middle of the day

The heat of the middle of the day represents the Moabites' suffering from their enemies, and shade represents protection from their enemies. Comparing the shade to night shows that they want strong protection. Alternate translation: "protect us completely from our enemies as a large shadow protects people from the hot sun" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-simile\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 16:4

### Let them live among you, the refugees from Moab

“Allow the refugees from Moab to live with you.” Here “you” refers to the people of Judah.

### be a hiding place for them from the destroyer

Providing a hiding place is spoken of as being a hiding place. Alternate translation: “give them a place to hide from those who are trying to destroy them” or “hide them from those who want to destroy them” (See: **Metaphor (p. 1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 16:5

### A throne will be established in covenant faithfulness

Here “throne” refers to the power to rule as king. If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **faithfulness**, you can express the same idea with a verbal form such as “faithful.” If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “Yahweh will be faithful to the covenant and he will appoint a king” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-abstractnouns\]\]](#) and **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### one from David’s tent will faithfully sit there

Here “David’s tent” represents David’s family, including his descendants. Sitting on the throne represents ruling. Alternate translation: “a descendant of David will rule faithfully” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### as he seeks justice

Seeking justice represents wanting to do what is just. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## **Isaiah 16:6**

### **We have heard of Moab's pride, his arrogance, his boasting, and his anger**

The words "Moab's" and "his" refer to the people of Moab. Alternate translation: "We have heard that the people of Moab are proud and arrogant, boastful and angry" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### **We have heard**

Possible meanings are that: (1) Isaiah is speaking and "We" refers to him and the people of Judah, or (2) God is speaking and "We" refers to God.

### **But his boastings are empty words**

Alternate translation: "But what they say about themselves means nothing" or "But what they boast about is not true"

## Isaiah 16:7

### So Moab wails for Moab—they all wail

“Moab” represents the people of Moab. “So all the people of Moab will cry out loud over what has happened to their cities” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### for the raisin cakes of Kir Hareseth

Alternate translation: “because there are no raisin cakes in Kir Hareseth”

### raisin cakes

The Hebrew word used here means either “raisin cakes” or “men.”

### Kir Hareseth

“Kir Hareseth” is the name of a city. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

## Isaiah 16:8

### Heshbon

Translate the name of this city as you did in [Isaiah 15:4](#).

### Sibmah & Jazer

These are names of cities. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

## The rulers of the nations have trampled the choice vines

The land of Moab was known for its vineyards. Here God describes the land of Moab as one large vineyard. This emphasizes that the rulers, which refers to the armies, completely destroyed everything in Moab. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 16:9

### Indeed I will weep

In 16:9-10 the word “I” refers to Yahweh.

### I will water you with my tears

God speaks of his deep sorrow for these places as if he would cry much and his many tears would fall on them.  
Alternate translation: “I will cry much for you” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### Jazer & Sibmah

Translate the names of these cities as you did in [Isaiah 16:8](#).

### Heshbon & Elealeh

Translate the names of these cities as you did in [Isaiah 15:4](#).

### For on your fields of summer fruits and harvest I have ended the shouts of joy

The “shouts of joy” represent people shouting for joy about the harvest of their fruit trees. Alternate translation: “Because of what I will do, you will no longer shout for joy when you harvest your fields of summer fruit” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 16:10

### I have put an end to the shouts of the one who treads

Here “the shouts” refers to the joy of the people who tread the grapes to produce the wine. Alternate translation: “therefore the people who tread the grapes do not shout with joy” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)



## Isaiah 16:11

### So my heart sighs like a harp for Moab

The phrase “my heart” represents Yahweh and his sad feelings. He compares his sigh to the sound of a sad song played on a harp. Alternate translation: “So I sigh like a sad song on a harp” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-synecdoche\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-simile\]\]](#)) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### Moab

This refer to the people of Moab. (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### my inward being for Kir Hareseth

The phrase “my inward being” represents Yahweh. The word “sighs” is understood from the previous phrase. See how you translated Kir Hareseth in [Isaiah 16:7](#). Alternate translation: “my inward being sighs for Kir Hareseth” or “I am very sad for the people of Kir Hareseth” (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**) (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**)

### Kir Hareseth

This is a metonym for the people of the city. Alternate translation: “the people of Kir Hareseth” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## **Isaiah 16:12**

### **Moab & himself & his**

All of these words refer to the people of Moab. (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### **his prayers will accomplish nothing**

Alternate translation: "his prayers will not be answered"

## **Isaiah 16:13**

### **This is the word**

“This is the message.” This refers to all he said in 15:1-16:12.

### **concerning Moab**

The word “Moab” refers to the people of Moab. (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## **Isaiah 16:14**

**the glory of Moab will disappear**

Alternate translation: "The country of Moab will no longer be glorious"

## Isaiah 17

### Isaiah 17 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in this chapter.

The ULT sets the lines in 17:1-6, 9-14 farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text because they are part of a long quotation.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Damascus

This chapter prophesies destruction against the people of Damascus. Damascus was the capital of Aram. The people of Damascus worship gods other than Yahweh and have fought Yahweh's people. (See: [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/prophet\]\]](#), [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/falsegod\]\]](#) and **people of God (p.1523)**)

#### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

##### Ephraim

This chapter prophesied destruction against the kingdom of Israel. They are also called Ephraim in this chapter. Both the northern kingdom of Israel and Aram were conquered at about the same time in history.

## Isaiah 17:1

### about Damascus

Damascus is the name of a city. See how you translated this in [Isaiah 7:8](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)  
(See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

## Isaiah 17:2

### The cities of Aroer will be abandoned

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. "All the people will abandon the cities of Aroer" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-names\]\]](#)) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### no one will frighten them

The word "them" refers to the sheep.

## Isaiah 17:3

### Fortified cities will disappear from Ephraim

Ephraim was the largest tribe in Israel. Here it represents the entire northern kingdom of Israel. Alternate translation: “Strong cities will disappear from Israel” (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### will disappear

This does not mean that they will vanish, but that the cities will be destroyed.

### the kingdom from Damascus

The words “will disappear” are understood from the previous phrase. Damascus was where the king of Aram ruled from. The kingdom disappearing represents the king no longer having royal power. Alternate translation: “the kingdom will disappear from Damascus” or “there will be no royal power in Damascus” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#)) (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**)

### this is the declaration of Yahweh of hosts

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. Translate as in [Isaiah 14:22](#). Alternate translation: “this is what Yahweh of hosts has declared” or “this is what I, Yahweh of hosts, have declared” (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1406)**) (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1406)**)



## Isaiah 17:4

### It will come about

This phrase is used here to mark an important event that will happen. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

### the glory of Jacob will become thin, and the fatness of his flesh will become lean

Here “Jacob” refers to the kingdom of Israel. Israel would no longer be glorious. Rather it would be weak and poor. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 17:5

### **It will be as when a harvester gathers the standing grain & in the Valley of Rephaim**

There will be nothing left in the land after God punishes the people of Israel. (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

### **the Valley of Rephaim**

This is a valley where people normally grew and harvested much food. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

## Isaiah 17:6

### Gleanings will be left

The word “Gleanings” here represents the people who will still live in Israel. Alternate translation: “But there will be a few people left in Israel” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### as when the olive tree is shaken

People harvested olive trees by shaking them so that the olives would fall out. Alternate translation: “like the few olives that remain on the olive trees after people harvest them” (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

### four or five

The word “olives” is understood from the phrase before this. Alternate translation: “four or five olives” (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**) (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**)

### this is the declaration of Yahweh, the God of Israel

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. Alternate translation: “this is what Yahweh, the God of Israel, has declared” or “this is what I, Yahweh, the God of Israel, have declared” (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1406)**) (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1406)**)

## Isaiah 17:7

### men will look toward their Maker & will look to the Holy One of Israel

Looking toward God here represents hoping that he will help them. Alternate translation: “men will hope that their Maker, the Holy One of Israel, will help them” (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

### men will look

The word “men” represents people in general. Alternate translation: “people will look” (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### their eyes will look

Here “eyes” represents the people who look. Alternate translation: “they will look” or “the people will look” (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### Holy One of Israel

See how you translated this in [Isaiah 1:4](#).

## Isaiah 17:8

### They will not look to the altars

Looking to the altars represents worshiping idols with the hope that the idols will help them. Alternate translation: “They will not worship idols at their altars” or “The people of Israel will not go to their altars and ask their idols to help them” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### the work of their hands

Here the people are represented by their “hands” to emphasize that they made the altars or idols. Alternate translation: “that they made with their hands” or “which they themselves built” (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### what their fingers have made & the Asherah poles or the sun images

The second phrase identifies the things that the people made. Speaking of the fingers here emphasizes that the people made them, so these things are not real gods. Alternate translation: “the Asherah poles or the sun images, which they themselves made” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 17:9

### that were forsaken because of the people of Israel

It can be made explicit who left these lands. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “that the Hivites and Amorites left after the people of Israel came” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-explicit\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

## **Isaiah 17:10**

### **For you have forgotten**

Here “you” refers to the people of Israel. The word “forgotten” does not mean they have no memory of God. It means they no longer obey him. Alternate translation: “For you no longer obey”

### **the God of your salvation**

Alternate translation: “the God who saves you”

### **have ignored the rock of your strength**

This compares God to a large rock which people could climb on to get away from their enemies or hide behind. Alternate translation: “have ignored God, who is like a rock that protects you” or “have ignored the one who protects you” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## **Isaiah 17:11**

### **the harvest will fail**

Alternate translation: "there will not be much fruit for you to harvest"



## Isaiah 17:12

### **The uproar of many peoples, that roar like the roaring of the seas**

An uproar is a very loud noise. Alternate translation: "The sound of many people, that is very loud like the seas" (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

### **the rushing of nations, that rush like the rushing of mighty waters**

The enemy armies appear to be a powerful force that no one can stop. Alternate translation: "the nations come rushing in like the mighty waters" (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

### **the rushing of nations**

The word "nations" refers to the armies of those nations. Alternate translation: "the rushing of the enemy armies" (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

## Isaiah 17:13

### **before the wind like chaff on the mountains & like weeds whirling before a storm**

These two phrases mean the same thing. The enemy armies seem powerful but God will easily stop them and send them away. Alternate translation: “like chaff on the mountains that the wind blows away ... like weeds that whirl and blow away as a storm approaches” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-simile\]\]](#)) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

## Isaiah 17:14

### This is the portion of those

What happens to them is spoken of as if it is a portion that they inherit. Alternate translation: "This is what happens to those" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### loot us & rob us

The word "us" refers to Isaiah and the people of Judah.

## Isaiah 18

### Isaiah 18 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in this chapter.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Cush

This chapter records prophecies against the nation of Cush. They are being punished by Yahweh. (See: **prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess (p.1525)**)

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Metaphors

This chapter uses many metaphors to describe the destruction coming to the people of Cush. (See: **Metaphor (p. 1442)**)

## Isaiah 18:1

### Woe to the land of the rustling of wings, which is along the rivers of Cush

Here, the phrase **the rustling of wings** could mean (1) the boats that have sails are spoken of as having wings. Alternate translation: "Woe to those who live in the land beyond the rivers of Cush, whose many ships look like insects on the water" or (2) the rustling of wings refers to the noise of insects that have wings, perhaps locusts. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 18:2

### by the sea

The Nile River was very wide, and people in Egypt and Cush referred to it as “the sea.” Alternate translation: “on the great river” or “along the Nile River” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### vessels of papyrus

Papyrus is a tall plant that grows along the side of the Nile River. People bound together papyrus bundles to make boats. Alternate translation: “papyrus boats” or “boats made of reeds” or (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1490)**) (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1490)**)

### a nation tall and smooth & a people feared far and near & a nation strong and trampling down, whose land the rivers divide

These phrases all describe the people of one nation.

#### a nation tall and smooth

The word “nation” here refers to the people of that nation. Alternate translation: “a nation whose people are tall and have smooth skin” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

#### a people feared far and near

The words “far” and “near” are used together to mean “everywhere.” Alternate translation: “a people who are feared everywhere” or “a people that everyone in the earth fears” (See: **Merism (p.1440)**) (See: **Merism (p.1440)**)

#### a nation strong and trampling down

Trampling down represents conquering other nations. Alternate translation: “a nation that is strong and conquers other nations” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

#### the rivers divide

This probably refers to many rivers that flow through the nation so they divide it into different parts.

## Isaiah 18:3

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

Verse 3 tells what the messengers in [Isaiah 18:2](#) must say to the people of the world.

### All you inhabitants of the world & you who live on the earth

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. Alternate translation: "All you people on the earth" (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### when a signal is lifted up on the mountains, look; and when the trumpet is blown, listen

The signal and trumpet were to call people to battle. The commands to look and listen are commands to pay attention and prepare for battle. Alternate translation: "pay attention when the signal is lifted up on the mountains and the trumpet is blown"

### when a signal is lifted up on the mountains, look

The signal was a flag used to call people to battle. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "pay attention when you see the battle flag on the mountains" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-explicit\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### when the trumpet is blown, listen

The trumpets were used to call people to battle. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "pay attention when you hear the sound of the battle trumpets" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-explicit\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

## Isaiah 18:4

### General Information:

### General Information:

God uses a parable about a farmer in a vineyard in order to describe how he will punish a certain nation. That nation is either Ethiopia or Ethiopia's enemy.

### This is what Yahweh said to me

"Yahweh said to me." Here the word "me" refers to Isaiah.

### I will quietly observe from my home

What God will observe can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "I will quietly observe that nation from my home" or "From my home, I will quietly watch what the people of that nation do" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### like the simmering heat in sunshine, like a cloud of mist in the heat of harvest

These phrases show how quietly God will watch the nation. (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)



## Isaiah 18:5

### Before the harvest

This is a harvest of grapes. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "Before the grape harvest" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### when the blossoming is over

It can be stated clearly that this refers to blossoms on grape vines. Alternate translation: "when flowers have finished growing on the grape vines" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### he will cut off the sprigs with pruning hooks

Yahweh will cut off the branches before the grapes can ripen. Alternate translation: "Yahweh will cut off the branches with knives before their produce fruit" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### pruning hooks

A pruning hook is a knife that people use to cut branches off of vines or other plants.

### he will cut down and take away the spreading branches

Yahweh will throw away the branches in judgment.

## Isaiah 18:6

### They will be left together

God seems to change from telling the parable to speaking more directly about the nation. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "Those who are killed will be left together" or "Like branches that are cut off and thrown away, the bodies of those who are killed will be left on the ground" (See: **Parables (p.1459)**) (See: **Parables (p.1459)**)

### The birds will summer on them

"The birds will eat them during the summer." The word "birds" refers to birds that eat the flesh of dead bodies.

### all the animals of the earth

Alternate translation: "all kinds of wild animals"

### will winter on them

Alternate translation: "will eat them in the winter"

## Isaiah 18:7

**a people tall and smooth & a people feared far and near & a nation strong and trampling down, whose land the rivers divide**

These phrases all describe the people of one nation. See how you translated these phrases in [Isaiah 18:2](#).

**a people tall and smooth**

Alternate translation: "a people who are tall and have smooth skin"

**a people feared far and near**

The words "far" and "near" are used together to mean "everywhere." Alternate translation: "a people who are feared everywhere" or "a people that everyone in the earth fears" (See: **Merism (p.1440)**) (See: **Merism (p.1440)**)

**a nation strong and trampling down**

Trampling down represents conquering other nations. Alternate translation: "a nation that is strong and conquers other nations" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

**to the place of the name of Yahweh of hosts, to Mount Zion**

The word "name" refers to Yahweh. Alternate translation: "to Mount Zion, where Yahweh of hosts dwells" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 19

### Isaiah 19 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 19:1-18.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Egypt

This chapter prophesied destruction against the nation of Egypt. Their destruction will come from internal division instead of being conquered by another nation. (See: **prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess (p.1525)**)

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Imagery

Some of the imagery used in this chapter may be connected to the worship of specific false gods. One important god the people of Canaan worshiped was Baal, the god of rain or storms. One of the important gods the Egyptians worshiped was Ra, the god of the sun. (See: **god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry (p.1510)**)

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### “In that day”

This changes the reference from the time when Assyria comes to dominate the world and looks to a more distant future day.

## Isaiah 19:1

### See

Alternate translation: “Look” or “Listen” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you”

### Yahweh rides on a swift cloud

Yahweh seems to be pictured here as riding on a cloud as if he was riding in a chariot. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)  
(See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### the idols of Egypt quake before him

The idols are described as having feelings of fear as Yahweh approaches. Alternate translation: “the idols of Egypt tremble in fear before Yahweh” (See: **Personification (p.1464)**) (See: **Personification (p.1464)**)

### the hearts of the Egyptians melt within themselves

The heart melting represents losing their courage. Alternate translation: “the Egyptians have no more courage”  
(See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 19:2

### a man against his neighbor

The words “will fight” are understood from the previous phrase. Alternate translation: “a man will fight against his neighbor” (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**) (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**)

### city will be against city

The word “city” represents the people of the city. Alternate translation: “people of one city will fight against people of another city” or “people from different cities will fight against one another” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### kingdom against kingdom

The words “will be” or “will fight” are understood from the previous phrases. Alternate translation: “kingdom will be against kingdom” or “kingdom will fight against kingdom” (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**) (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**)

### kingdom against kingdom

The word “kingdom” refers to a smaller kingdom within Egypt. It may also be called a province. It represents the people of that kingdom or province. Alternate translation: “the people of one province will be against the people of another province” or “people from different provinces will fight against one another” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 19:3

### **The spirit of Egypt will be weakened from within. I will destroy his advice**

The nation of Egypt is spoken of here as if it was a person. (See: **Personification (p.1464)**) (See: **Personification (p.1464)**)

### **The spirit of Egypt will be weakened from within**

This can be expressed in active form. Alternate translation: "I will weaken the spirit of Egypt from within" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### **I will destroy his advice, though they sought the advice of & spiritualists**

Alternate translation: "They sought the advice of ... spiritualists, but that will do them no good. It will not stop me from destroying his advice"

### **I will destroy his advice**

This could mean: (1) Yahweh will cause the advice that he gives to be ineffective or (2) Yahweh will cause him to be unable to give any advice. If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **advice**, you can express the same idea with the verb "advise." Alternate translation: "I will confuse those who advise the king" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**)

### **mediums & spiritualists**

These are people who claim to speak with those who have died.

## Isaiah 19:4

### I will give the Egyptians into the hand of a harsh master

Here “hand” refers to power or control. Alternate translation: “I will give the Egyptians over to the control of a harsh master” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### this is the declaration of the Lord Yahweh of hosts

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. Translate as in [Isaiah 3:15](#).

Alternate translation: “this is what the Lord Yahweh of hosts has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh of hosts, have declared” (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1406)**) (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1406)**)



## Isaiah 19:5

**The waters of the sea will dry up, and the river will dry up and become empty**

Egyptians referred to the Nile River as “the sea.” These two phrases mean basically the same thing. Alternate translation: “The Nile River will completely dry up” (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

## **Isaiah 19:6**

### **become foul**

Alternate translation: “become foul-smelling” or “stink”

### **will dwindle**

Alternate translation: “become smaller and smaller”

### **the reeds and flags will wither away**

Here, **reeds** and **flags** refer to two similar kinds of water plants. Alternate translation: “the plants along the river will die and decay”

## **Isaiah 19:7**

**every sown field beside the Nile**

Alternate translation: “the fields near the Nile where people have planted crops”

## Isaiah 19:8

**The fishermen will wail and mourn, and all who cast a hook into the Nile will mourn, and those who spread nets on the waters will grieve**

These three phrases mean basically the same thing. If necessary, the reason they will grieve can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "The fishermen who catch fish with hooks or nets will cry in despair because the fish in the Nile have died" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-explicit\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#)) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### **cast a hook into the Nile**

In order to catch fish, some people put a little food on a hook, tie the hook to a string, and throw the hook into the water. When a fish tries to eat the food, its mouth gets stuck on the hook, and the person pulls the fish out of the water. (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1490)**) (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1490)**)

### **cast**

throw

### **spread nets on the waters**

In order to catch fish, some people toss a net on the water. When fish get caught in it, they pull the net with the fish out of the water. (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1490)**) (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1490)**)

## Isaiah 19:9

### The workers in combed flax

Alternate translation: "Those who work with combed flax"

### combed flax

Flax is a plant that grows along the Nile River. People comb its fibers in order to separate them, and use them to make thread for linen cloth. (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1490)**) (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1490)**)

### will turn pale

Alternate translation: "will be ashamed"

## **Isaiah 19:10**

### **The cloth workers of Egypt**

Alternate translation: "The people of Egypt who make cloth"

### **will be crushed**

Being crushed represents being discouraged. Alternate translation: "will be discouraged" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### **work for hire**

Alternate translation: "work for pay"

### **will be grieved within themselves**

Alternate translation: "will feel very sad"

## Isaiah 19:11

**The princes of Zoan are completely foolish. The advice of the wisest advisors of Pharaoh has become senseless**

These two phrases are similar in meaning. Either the princes of Zoan are also the wisest advisors or Pharaoh, or they are another group of people that also are shown to be foolish. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

## Zoan

This is a city in northern Egypt. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

## How can you say to Pharaoh & kings?

Isaiah uses a question to mock those in Egypt who claim to be wise. Alternate translation: "You foolishly say to Pharaoh ... kings." (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

## Isaiah 19:12

### Where then are your wise men?

Isaiah uses a question to mock the wise men. The word “your” refers to Pharaoh. Alternate translation: “You do not have any wise men.” or “Your wise men are fools.” (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### Let them tell you and make known what Yahweh of hosts plans concerning Egypt

Isaiah is implying that wise men should be able to understand God’s plans, but Isaiah does not really believe they are wise. Alternate translation: “If they were really wise, they would be able to tell you what Yahweh of hosts plans concerning Egypt” (See: **Irony (p.1435)**) (See: **Irony (p.1435)**)



## Isaiah 19:13

### they have made Egypt go astray, who are the cornerstones of her tribes

The princes of Zoan and Memphis are spoken of as if they are the cornerstones of buildings because they are an important part of the community. Alternate translation: “the leaders have made Egypt go astray” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### princes of Zoan

Zoan is a city in northern Egypt. See how you translated this in [Isaiah 19:11](#).

### Memphis

This is a city in the northern part of Egypt. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

### made Egypt go astray

The word “Egypt” represents the people of Egypt. Going astray represents doing what is wrong. Alternate translation: “made the people of Egypt go astray” or “made the people of Egypt do what is wrong” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 19:14

### Yahweh has mixed a spirit of distortion into her midst

Isaiah speaks of Yahweh's judgment as if Egypt was a cup of wine. He speaks of Yahweh causing the leaders' thoughts to be distorted as if their distorted thoughts were a liquid that Yahweh mixed in with the wine. Alternate translation: "Yahweh has judged them by distorting their thoughts" or "Yahweh has judged Egypt by distorting its leaders' thoughts, as intoxicating drinks confuse people's thoughts" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### distortion

Alternate translation: "perverseness" or "confusion"

### into her midst

Here "her" refers to Egypt. Nations are sometimes spoken of as if they were women. Alternate translation: "within Egypt" (See: **Personification (p.1464)**) (See: **Personification (p.1464)**)

### they have led Egypt astray

Here, "they" refers to the leaders described in the previous verses. The word "Egypt" represents the people of Egypt. Alternate translation: "the princes have led the people of Egypt astray" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### have led Egypt astray

Leading people astray represents influencing them to do what is wrong. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### like a drunk staggering in his vomit

Isaiah speaks of the people of Egypt doing what is wrong as if they were made to wander about like a drunken person. (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

## Isaiah 19:15

### whether head or tail

The “head,” the part of an animal a person would want to be, represents the leader. The “tail” is the opposite and represents people who follow. Alternate translation: “whether leader or follower” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### palm branch or reed

The “palm branch” grows high on the tree and represents people who are wealthy and important. The “reed” grows in shallow water and represents people who are poor and unimportant. See how you translated similar phrases in [Isaiah 9:14](#). Alternate translation: “whether they are important or unimportant” or “whether rich or poor” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 19:16

### Egyptians will be like women

This emphasizes that the people of Egypt will be afraid and helpless when God punishes them. (See: **Simile (p. 1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

### because of the upraised hand of Yahweh of hosts that he raises over them

Here “hand” refers to God’s power, and raising the hand against them represents punishing them. Alternate translation: “because Yahweh of hosts has raised his powerful hand to punish them” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 19:17

### **The land of Judah will become a cause of staggering to Egypt**

The “land of Judah” and “Egypt” refer to the people in those places. The Egyptians will stagger because they are afraid. Alternate translation: “The people of Judah will cause the Egyptians to stagger” or “The people of Judah will cause the Egyptians to be terribly afraid” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### **Whenever anyone reminds them of her, they will be afraid**

Here, “them” and “they” refer to the Egyptians and “her” refers to the people of Judah. Alternate translation: “Whenever anyone reminds the Egyptians of the people of Judah, the Egyptians will be afraid”

## Isaiah 19:18

### there will be five cities in the land of Egypt that speak

This refers to the people of those cities. Alternate translation: “the people in five Egyptian cities will speak” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### the language of Canaan

This refers to Hebrew, the language of the people of God living in the land of Canaan. Here Canaan represents the people who live there. Alternate translation: “the language of the people of Canaan” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### swear allegiance

Alternate translation: “promise to be loyal”

### One of these will be called

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. “People will call one of these cities” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### called The City of the Sun

It is not clear whether the Hebrew word translated “Sun” here means “sun” or “destruction.” It is also not clear what the name tells us about the city. Alternate translation: “the city called Sun City” or “the city called Destruction City” (See: **Textual Variants (p.1488)**) (See: **Textual Variants (p.1488)**)

## Isaiah 19:19

### a stone pillar at the border to Yahweh

The phrase “the border” refers to the border of Egypt. Alternate translation: “a stone pillar to Yahweh at the border of Egypt” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

## Isaiah 19:20

### **It will be as a sign and a witness to Yahweh of hosts in the land of Egypt**

The abstract nouns “sign” and “witness” can be expressed with the verbs “show” and “prove.” Alternate translation: “The altar will show and prove that Yahweh of hosts is in the land of Egypt” (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**)

### **to Yahweh of hosts in the land of Egypt**

Yahweh being in the land of Egypt represents the people of Egypt worshipping him. Alternate translation: “that the people in the land of Egypt worship Yahweh of hosts” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### **When they cry**

Alternate translation: “When the Egyptians cry”

### **because of oppressors**

Alternate translation: “because people are treating them harshly” or “because others are causing them to suffer”

### **he will send them a savior and a defender**

Alternate translation: “Yahweh will send someone to save and defend the Egyptians”

### **he will deliver them**

Who Yahweh will deliver them from can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “Yahweh will deliver the Egyptians from their oppressors” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)



## Isaiah 19:21

### Yahweh will become known to Egypt

Here “Egypt” refers to the people of Egypt. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “Yahweh will make the people of Egypt know him” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### will acknowledge Yahweh

Alternate translation: “will accept the truth about Yahweh” or “will agree to the truth about Yahweh”

### They will worship

The object of their worship can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “They will worship Yahweh” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### will make vows to Yahweh and fulfill them

Alternate translation: “will make promises to Yahweh and keep them” or “they will make promises to Yahweh and they will do what they have promised to do”

## Isaiah 19:22

### Yahweh will afflict Egypt

Here, “Egypt” refers to the people of Egypt. Alternate translation: “Yahweh will afflict the people of Egypt” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### afflict

Alternate translation: “strike” or “punish”

### afflicting and healing

The word “them” is understood in this phrase. Alternate translation: “afflicting them and healing them” (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**) (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**)

### afflicting and healing

How this phrase relates to the phrase before it can be made clear with the words “after” and “also.” Alternate translation: “and after he afflicts them, he will also heal them”

## Isaiah 19:23

### there will be a highway

A highway is a large road on which many people can travel.

### the Assyrian will come

“the Assyrian” refers to a person from Assyria, but represents anyone from Assyria who comes to Egypt. Alternate translation: “Assyrians will come” (See: **Generic Noun Phrases (p.1409)**) (See: **Generic Noun Phrases (p.1409)**)

### the Egyptian to Assyria

The words “will come” are understood. Alternate translation: “the Egyptian will come to Assyria” (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**) (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**)

### the Egyptian

This refers to a person from Egypt, but represents anyone from Egypt who comes to Assyria. Alternate translation: “Egyptians” (See: **Generic Noun Phrases (p.1409)**) (See: **Generic Noun Phrases (p.1409)**)

### the Egyptians will worship with the Assyrians

The object of their worship can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “the Egyptians and Assyrians will worship Yahweh” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

## Isaiah 19:24

### Israel will be the third with Egypt and Assyria

The names of the three nations represent the people of those nations. Alternate translation: “the Israelites will be the third with the Egyptians and Assyrians” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### be the third with

This could mean: (1) “join together with” or (2) “be the third blessing with” or (3) “be equal to.” (See: **Ordinal Numbers (p.1457)**) (See: **Ordinal Numbers (p.1457)**)

## Isaiah 19:25

### **Blessed be Egypt, my people; Assyria, the work of my hands; and Israel, my inheritance**

The names of the three nations refer to the people of those nations. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "I have blessed you, people of Egypt, because you are my people; and I have blessed you, people of Assyria, because I created you; and I have blessed you, people of Israel, because I securely possess you" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### **the work of my hands**

Here "hands" refers to God's power and action. (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 20

### Isaiah 20 General Notes

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Naked and barefoot

This is an image used in this chapter to describe Assyria's victory over Egypt and Ethiopia. While they will be defeated, they will not be totally destroyed. Instead, they will be left with nothing. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 20:1

### Tartan

the name of the chief commander of the armies of Assyria (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

### Sargon

the name of the king of Assyria

### he fought against Ashdod and took it

Ashdod refers to the army of Ashdod. Alternate translation: “he fought against the army of Ashdod and defeated it” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## **Isaiah 20:2**

### **walking naked and barefoot**

“walking around without clothes and without sandals.” Here the word “naked” probably refers to wearing only his undergarments.



## **Isaiah 20:3**

### **an omen**

Alternate translation: "a warning"

## Isaiah 20:4

### the king of Assyria will lead away the captives

The king orders his army to do this task. Alternate translation: “the king of Assyria will have his army lead away the captives” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### will lead away the captives of Egypt, and the exiles of Cush

It can be stated clearly that they will first attack and capture people. Alternate translation: “will attack Egypt and Cush and capture their people and lead them away” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### to the shame of Egypt

Egypt refers to the people of Egypt. Alternate translation: “which will bring shame on the people of Egypt” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 20:5

### dismayed and ashamed

Alternate translation: "afraid and put to shame"

### because of Cush their hope and of Egypt their glory

Hope and glory refer to their trust in the military power of these countries. Alternate translation: "because they had trusted in the power of the armies of Cush and Egypt" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 20:6

### The inhabitants of these coasts

the people who lived in the lands bordering the Mediterranean Sea

### where we fled for help to be rescued

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “where we fled to so they would rescue us” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### now, how can we escape?

The author uses this question to emphasize how hopeless their situation was. Alternate translation: “now there is no way for us to escape!” (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

# Isaiah 21

## Isaiah 21 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 21:1-10, 13-17.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Cush

Dumah and Seir are places in Edom. Part of this chapter is a prophecy against Cush. (See: **prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess (p.1525)**)

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### The desert by the sea

This is a metaphor for an unknown nation. Scholars are divided over the proper identity of this nation, but it is probably Babylon. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

#### Mystery

The fulfillment of this chapter is very mysterious. It is unknown who is truly being addressed and how this is to be fulfilled in history. The translator should not attempt to give the reader insight into this prophecy's fulfillment. (See: **fulfill, fulfilled, carried out (p.1507)**)

## Isaiah 21:1

### A declaration

Alternate translation: "This is what Yahweh declares" or "This is Yahweh's message"

### about the desert by the sea

This refers to the people who live in Babylon as being a desert, even though God has not made it into a desert yet. This event will certainly happen. Alternate translation: "about the people who live in a land that soon will be a desert" (See: [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-pastforfuture\]\]](#)) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### Like stormwinds sweeping through the Negev

Isaiah compares the army that will attack the people to a storm with strong winds. They will be quick and powerful. (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

### from the wilderness

Here "wilderness" refers to the wilderness of Judea. (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### from a terrible land

The army is from a people that cause great fear.

## Isaiah 21:2

### A distressing vision has been given to me

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “Yahweh showed me a troubling vision” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### the treacherous man deals treacherously

Alternate translation: “those who deceive will deceive”

### the destroyer destroys

Alternate translation: “those who destroy will destroy”

### Go up and attack, Elam; besiege, Media

In the vision given to Isaiah, Yahweh speaks to the armies of Elam and Media as if they are there listening to him. (See: **Apostrophe (p.1377)**) (See: **Apostrophe (p.1377)**)

### Go up and attack, Elam; besiege, Media

It is understood that they are to attack the Babylonians. Alternate translation: “Go up and attack the Babylonians, you soldiers of Elam; go and besiege the Babylonians, you soldiers of Media” (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**) (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**)

### Elam & Media

Here “Elam” and “Media” represent the soldiers from these places. (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### I will stop all her groaning

Here “her” represents all the people who are suffering because of the Babylonians. Yahweh will cause them to stop groaning when he sends the armies of Elam and Media to destroy the Babylonians. (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 21:3

### my loins are filled with pain

The vision that Isaiah sees is so troubling it causes him physical pain. Here he describes the pain and cramping in the middle part of his body.

### pains like the pains of a woman in labor have taken hold of me

Isaiah compares his pain to the pain of a woman giving birth. This emphasizes the great pain he is feeling. (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

### I am bowed down by what I heard

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "What I heard has caused me to bend over in pain" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### I am disturbed by what I saw

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "what I saw has greatly troubled me" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)



## **Isaiah 21:4**

**My heart pounds; I shake with fear**

Alternate translation: "My heart beats fast and I am shaking"

## Isaiah 21:5

### They prepare

Here “They” refers to the leaders of Babylon.

### prepare the table

Here “table” represents the food that people will eat at the feast. (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### arise, princes

Here “princes” refers in general to men with authority and not necessarily to sons of kings.

### anoint your shields with oil

Soldiers would put oil on their leather shields so they would stay soft and not crack during battle. (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

## **Isaiah 21:6**

### **post a watchman**

Alternate translation: “tell a watchman to stand on the wall of Jerusalem”

## **Isaiah 21:7**

### **a chariot, a pair of horsemen**

Alternate translation: "a soldier riding in a chariot, a pair of horses pulling it"

## **Isaiah 21:8**

### **Lord, on the watchtower I stand**

Here “Lord” refers to the person with authority that commanded the watchman to stand on the wall of Jerusalem.

## Isaiah 21:9

### Babylon has fallen, fallen

Babylon being completely defeated by their enemies is spoken of as if Babylon has fallen. Here “Babylon” is a metonym that represents the people of Babylon. Alternate translation: “The people of Babylon are completely defeated” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### fallen, fallen

The word “fallen” is repeated to emphasize that the people of Babylon were completely defeated by their enemies.

## Isaiah 21:10

### My threshed and winnowed ones, children of my threshing floor

The people of Israel suffering because of the Babylonians is spoken of as if the people were grain that was threshed and winnowed. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### My threshed

The word “my” refers to Isaiah.

### Yahweh of hosts

See how you translated this in [Isaiah 1:9](#).

## Isaiah 21:11

### A declaration

Alternate translation: "This is what Yahweh declares" or "This is a message from Yahweh"

### about Dumah

This is another name for Edom. Here "Dumah" represents the people who live there. Alternate translation: "about the people of Dumah" or "about the people of Edom" (See: [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/translate-names\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#)) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

### One calls to me

Here "me" refers to Isaiah.

### Seir

This is the name of mountains west of Edom. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

### Watchman, what is left of the night? Watchman, what is left of the night?

This is repeated to emphasize that the person asking the question is worried and nervous. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)



## **Isaiah 21:12**

**If you want to ask, then ask; and come back again**

Alternate translation: "Ask me now what you want to know, but also come back later and ask again"

## Isaiah 21:13

### A declaration

Alternate translation: "This is what Yahweh declares" or "This is the message of Yahweh"

### about Arabia

Arabia refers to the population of Arabia. Alternate translation: "about the people of Arabia" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### In the wilderness of Arabia

Arabia does not have a forest. Alternate translation: "Far off from the road in Arabia" or "Out in the bushes of Arabia" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### caravans

a group of people traveling together

### Dedanites

This is a people group that lived in Arabia. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

## Isaiah 21:14

### land of Tema

This is the name of a city in Arabia. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

### fugitives

A fugitive is a person who runs away so that his enemy will not capture him. See how you translated this in [Isaiah 15:5](#).

### with bread

Here “bread” represents food in general. (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

## Isaiah 21:15

### from the sword, from the drawn sword, from the bent bow

Here “sword” and “bow” represents the soldiers who attack the inhabitants of Tema. Alternate translation: “from their enemies who attack them with swords and bows” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### from the weight of war

The terror and suffering that is experienced during war is spoken of as if war were a heavy weight on people. Alternate translation: “from the horrors of war” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 21:16

### as a laborer hired for a year would see it

“as a hired laborer would count the days of a year.” A hired worker is careful to count the days so that he works exactly the amount of time he is paid to work. This means Kedar will be defeated in exactly one year. (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### of Kedar

This is a region in Arabia. Kedar represents the population of Kedar. Alternate translation: “of the people of Kedar” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-names\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#)) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

## **Isaiah 21:17**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## Isaiah 22

### Isaiah 22 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in this chapter.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Repentance

On this day of judgment, Judah should be repenting of their sin. Instead, they are celebrating it. Although Judah avoids Yahweh's punishment through the Assyrians, their punishment will still come. (See: [\[\[rc://tw/dict/bible/kt/judge\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc://tw/dict/bible/kt/repent\]\]](#) and **sin, sinful, sinner, sinning (p.1531)**)

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### “Valley of Visions”

This is a metaphor used in this prophecy against the nation of Judah. (See: [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc://tw/dict/bible/kt/prophet\]\]](#))

## Isaiah 22:1

### A declaration

Alternate translation: "This is what Yahweh declares" or "This is Yahweh's message"

### about the Valley of Vision

Here "Valley" refers to those who live in the valley, that is, Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "about those who live in the Valley of Vision" or "about those who live in Jerusalem" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### What is the reason that you have all gone up to the housetops?

Isaiah uses a question to scold the people of Judah. Alternate translation: "You should not go and stand on the tops of your houses." (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)



## Isaiah 22:2

### a town full of revelry

Alternate translation: "a town full of people celebrating"

### Your dead were not killed with the sword

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Enemy soldiers did not kill your people" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### with the sword

Here "sword" represents the soldiers who fight in battle. (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 22:3

### but they were captured without using a bow

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “but the enemy captured your rulers who were not even carrying a bow” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### all of them were captured together

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “the enemy captured all of them together” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 22:4

### Therefore I said

Here "I" refers to Isaiah.

### of the daughter of my people

Here "daughter" represents the people and may imply Isaiah's feeling of love for them. Alternate translation: "of my people whom I love" or "of my people" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-explicit\]\]](#)) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## **Isaiah 22:5**

### **For there is a day**

Alternate translation: "For there will be a time"

### **of tumult, treading down, and confusion for the Lord Yahweh of hosts**

Alternate translation: "when the Lord Yahweh of hosts will cause panic, treading down, and confusion"

### **treading down**

This could mean: (1) this refers to soldiers marching or (2) people in general are running in panic and not sure where to go.

### **in the Valley of Vision**

This refers to Jerusalem. See how you translated this in [Isaiah 22:1](#).

### **people crying out to the mountains**

This could mean: (1) "people in the mountains will hear their cries" or (2) "the people's cries will echo off the mountains"

## Isaiah 22:6

### Elam takes up the quiver

The quiver is a bag to carry arrows and represents the archer's weapons. Alternate translation: "The soldiers of Elam take their bows and arrows" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### Kir lays the shield bare

Here "Kir" represents the soldiers. Alternate translation: "the soldiers of Kir will take their shields out of their covers" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### Kir

Kir is a city in Media. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

## Isaiah 22:7

### **your choicest valleys**

Here “your” refers to the people of Jerusalem. Isaiah does include himself as one of the people of Jerusalem.  
Alternate translation: “our best valleys”

## Isaiah 22:8

### He took away the protection of Judah

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **protection**, you can express the same idea with a verbal form. Alternate translation: "Yahweh will take away everything that has protected the people of Judah" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**)

### you looked in that day to the weapons

Here the phrase "to look to" means to trust in something. Alternate translation: "to defend yourselves you will get the weapons" (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

### Palace of the Forest

This was a part of the temple in Jerusalem where they stored their weapons.

## Isaiah 22:9

### you collected the water of the lower pool

The people will store water so that they will have enough to drink while their enemies surround the city. (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)



## **Isaiah 22:10**

### **You counted the houses**

Here “counted” means they inspected the houses to find material to help them rebuild the city wall.

## **Isaiah 22:11**

### **You made a reservoir**

Alternate translation: "You made a storage place"

### **between the two walls**

It is unclear what two walls Isaiah meant. The main point is that they built the reservoir within the city walls.

### **the city's maker**

This could mean: (1) this refers to the original human builder of the city or (2) this refers to Yahweh.

## **Isaiah 22:12**

### **Yahweh of hosts**

See how you translated this in [Isaiah 1:9](#).

### **for shaved heads**

This was a sign of mourning and repenting. (See: **Symbolic Action (p.1482)**) (See: **Symbolic Action (p.1482)**)

## Isaiah 22:13

### let us eat and drink, for tomorrow we will die

Here "eat and drink" represents having a party and over indulging in food and wine. Alternate translation: "we may as well have fun now by eating and drinking all we want, for we will die soon" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 22:14

### This was revealed in my ears by Yahweh of hosts

Here "ears" represents Isaiah as a whole. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Yahweh of hosts revealed this to me" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-synecdoche\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### Surely this iniquity will not be forgiven you, even when you die

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Surely I will not forgive you for these sinful things you have done, even when you die" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### even when you die

This could mean: (1) Yahweh will never forgive them, even after they die or (2) Yahweh will not forgive them until they die.

## Isaiah 22:15

### Shebna

This is the name of the manager of the king's palace in Jerusalem. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

### who is over the house

Here "house" represents those in the king's palace. Alternate translation: "who is in charge of all those who work in the palace" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 22:16

### What are you doing here and who gave you permission & in the rock?

Yahweh uses this question to scold Shebna. Alternate translation: "You have no right ... in the rock!" (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### cut out a tomb & hewing out a grave & carving out a resting place

These three phrases all refer to making a burial tomb. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### on the heights

The most important people in Israel had tombs in the highest places. (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

## Isaiah 22:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)



## Isaiah 22:18

**He will surely wind you round and round, and toss you like a ball into a vast country**

The enemy soldiers coming and taking Shebna as a captive to a foreign land is spoken of as if Yahweh were throwing him like a ball into another land. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

**you will be the shame of your master's house**

Here "house" represents the people who work in the king's palace. Alternate translation: "you will cause shame for all those in your master's palace" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 22:19

**I will thrust you from your office and from your station. You will be pulled down**

Yahweh causing Shebna to no longer work in the king's palace is spoken of as if Yahweh will throw him to the ground. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

**You will be pulled down**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "I will bring you down from your honored position" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## **Isaiah 22:20**

### **It will come about on that day**

Alternate translation: "It will happen at that time"

### **Eliakim & Hilkiah**

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

## Isaiah 22:21

### I will clothe him with your tunic and put on him your sash

Yahweh causing Eliakim to take Shebna's place in the king's palace is spoken of as if Yahweh will dress Eliakim in Shebna's clothes that represent his authority in the king's palace. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### your tunic & your sash

Here the tunic and sash represent authority in the king's palace. (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### sash

This is a piece of cloth that people wear around the waist or across the chest. See how you translated this in [Isaiah 3:20](#).

### into his hand

Here "hand" represents power or control. Alternate translation: "to him" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### He will be a father

Eliakim caring for and protecting the people of Judah is spoken of as if he would be their father. Alternate translation: "He will be like a father" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### to the house of Judah

Here "house" represents the people. Alternate translation: "to the people of Judah" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 22:22

### I will place the key of the house of David on his shoulder & none will open

Here “key” represents authority. This speaks of Eliakim having authority that no one can oppose as if he had the key to the palace and no one else could lock or unlock the door. Alternate translation: “I will put him in charge of those who work in the king’s palace, and when he makes a decision no one will be able to oppose him” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 22:23

### I will fasten him, a peg in a secure place

Yahweh causing Eliakim's authority to be strong and secure in the king's palace is spoken of as if Eliakim were a peg and Yahweh will set him firmly in the palace wall. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### he will become a seat of glory for his father's house

Here "seat of glory" represents a place of honor. Alternate translation: "Eliakim will bring honor to his family" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### his father's house

Here "house" represents family. Alternate translation: "his father's family" or "his family" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 22:24

### They will hang on him all the glory of his father's house

Yahweh causing Eliakim's whole family to be honored because of Eliakim is spoken of as if Eliakim were a peg in the wall and his family were something that hangs on the peg. Alternate translation: "They will give honor to his whole family because of him" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### every small container from the cups to all the jugs

This continues to speak of Eliakim as a peg. His offspring will be like cups that hang on the peg. This means his descendants will be honored because of him. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### the cups to all the jugs

A cup is a small container that holds water. A jug is a larger container that holds water.

## Isaiah 22:25

### the peg driven in a firm place & will be cut off

Yahweh causing Shebna to lose his authority in the king's palace is spoken of as if Shebna were a peg in the wall that breaks off and falls to the ground. This emphasizes that Shebna thought his authority was secure but God will remove him. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### the weight that was on it will be cut off

Here "weight" represents Shebna's power and authority. It is spoken of as if it were an object hanging on the peg that represents Shebna. Yahweh causing Shebna to lose his power and authority is spoken of as if someone were to cut off the object that was hanging on the peg. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)



## Isaiah 23

### Isaiah 23 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in this chapter.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Phoenicia

This chapter prophesies destruction against several cities in Phoenicia as well as in Tarshish. The exact location of Tarshish is unknown. Because of the locations mentioned in this chapter, it appears that the Assyrians will conquer many of the nations on the Mediterranean Sea. (See: **prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess (p.1525)**)

## Isaiah 23:1

### A declaration about Tyre

Alternate translation: "This is what Yahweh declares about Tyre"

### Howl, you ships of Tarshish

Here "ships" represents the men on the ships. Isaiah speaks to the men on the ships of Tarshish as if they could hear him. Alternate translation: "Cry out in despair you men on the ships of Tarshish" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-apostrophe\]\]](#)) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### harbor

an area of the sea that is near land and safe for ships

### from the land of Cyprus it has been revealed to them

This phrase can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the men heard about Tyre when they were in the land of Cyprus" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-names\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

## Isaiah 23:2

### Be silent, you inhabitants of the coast

Isaiah speaks to the people who live on the coast as if they could hear him. (See: **Apostrophe (p.1377)**) (See: **Apostrophe (p.1377)**)

### Be silent

This is an idiom. Here silence is meant to signal shock and amazement. Alternate translation: “Be shocked” (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

### of the coast

The “coast” is the land near or around the sea or ocean. Here it refers to the people who live in Phoenicia which borders the Mediterranean sea.

### the merchant of Sidon, who travels over the sea, has filled you

Here “merchant” means “many merchants.” Alternate translation: “the merchants of Sidon, who travel over the sea, have made you rich” (See: **Generic Noun Phrases (p.1409)**) (See: **Generic Noun Phrases (p.1409)**)

## Isaiah 23:3

### Upon the great waters was the grain of Shihor

Shihor was the name of a valley near the Nile River in Egypt known for its production of grain. Alternate translation: "The men traveled on the large sea to transport the grain from Shihor in Egypt" (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

### the harvest of the Nile was her produce

The "harvest of the Nile" refers to the grain that was harvested near the Nile River and transported on the river and then to Phoenicia. (See: **Possession (p.1466)**) (See: **Possession (p.1466)**)

### her produce

Alternate translation: "its produce." It was common to refer to the river as "her."

### it became the commerce of the nations

Commerce is the activity of buying and selling goods. Here "nations" represents the people. Alternate translation: "you were where people from other nations came to buy and sell goods" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 23:4

**for the sea has spoken, the mighty one of the sea & nor brought up young women**

This could mean: (1) Yahweh describes the city of Tyre as a mother who speaks about the people who live in the city as her children, or (2) Yahweh is describing the Mediterranean Sea as speaking. The people of Tyre considered the sea their god and father. In either meaning the speaker mourns because its children are destroyed. (See:

**Personification (p.1464)** (See: **Personification (p.1464)**)

## **Isaiah 23:5**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## Isaiah 23:6

### Cross over to Tarshish

“Make your way to Tarshish.” Tarshish was the farthest land the people of Tyre traveled to do business. It will be the only place of safety for those who escape from Tyre.

## Isaiah 23:7

### **Has this happened to you, the joyful city, whose origin is from ancient times & to settle?**

Yahweh uses a question to mock Tyre. This rhetorical questions can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "This has indeed happened to you who were full of joy in the ancient city of Tyre ... to settle." (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### **the joyful city**

Here "city" represents the people. Alternate translation: "the joyful people who live in the city of Tyre" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### **whose feet carried her far away to foreign places to settle**

Here "feet" represents the whole person. Alternate translation: "who went to distant places to live and make money" (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### **her far away**

Here "her" refers to the city of Tyre which represents the people of Tyre. (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)



## Isaiah 23:8

### Who has planned this against Tyre & of the earth?

Isaiah uses a question to mock Tyre. The word “this” refers to God’s plans to destroy Tyre which Isaiah described in 23:1-7. Also, “Tyre” refers to the people who live in Tyre. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this question as a statement. Alternate translation: “It was Yahweh who has planned to destroy the people of Tyre ... of the earth.” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-rquestion\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#)) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### the giver of crowns

Here “crown” refers to the power a person has as a ruler over people. Alternate translation: “who gives people power to rule over others” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### whose merchants are princes

The merchants are compared to princes to emphasize how much power they had when they went to different lands. Alternate translation: “whose merchants are like princes” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### whose traders are the honored ones of the earth

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “whose traders the people of the earth give the highest honors” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## **Isaiah 23:9**

### **to dishonor her pride and all her glory**

Alternate translation: "to dishonor them because they were proud of their own glory"

### **her pride & her glory & her honored ones**

Here "her" refers to the city of Tyre which represents the people who live there. Alternate translation: "their pride ... their glory ... their honored one" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 23:10

### Plow your land, as one plows the Nile, daughter of Tarshish. There is no longer a marketplace in Tyre

This could mean: (1) Isaiah is telling the people of Tarshish to start planting crops since they can no longer trade with Tyre or (2) Isaiah is telling the people of Tarshish they are free from Tyre's control. Alternate translation: "Pass through your land like a river, daughter of Tarshish. The people of Tyre no longer have any power" (See: **Simile (p. 1479)**) (See: **Simile (p. 1479)**)

### daughter of Tarshish

The "daughter" of a city represents the people of the city. Alternate translation: "the people of Tarshish" or "the people who live in Tarshish" (See: **Metonymy (p. 1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p. 1449)**)

## Isaiah 23:11

### **Yahweh has reached out with his hand over the sea, and he has shaken the kingdoms**

Yahweh using his power to control the sea and the people of mighty kingdoms is spoken of as if Yahweh reached out his hand and shook kingdoms. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### **has reached out with his hand over the sea**

Here "hand" refers to God's power and control. Alternate translation: "has shown his power over the sea" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 23:12

### oppressed virgin daughter of Sidon

Here “virgin daughter” represents the people of Sidon. Alternate translation: “people of Sidon, because other people will oppress you” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 23:13

### See the land of the Chaldeans

Here, **Chaldeans** here is another name for Babylonians. Alternate translation: “See what happened to the land of the Babylonians” or “See what has happened to Babylonia”

### siege towers

Soldiers built towers or dirt ramps to attack over the walls of a city.

## Isaiah 23:14

### Howl, you ships of Tarshish

Here “ships” represents the men on the ships. See how you translated this in [Isaiah 23:1](#). (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### for your refuge has been destroyed

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “for enemies have destroyed your refuge” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 23:15

### In that day

Alternate translation: "At that time" or "Then"

### Tyre will be forgotten for seventy years

Since people will no longer go to Tyre to buy or sell goods, it will be like they have forgotten about the city. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "for seventy years it will be like the people have forgotten about Tyre" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### for seventy years

"for 70 years" (See: **Numbers (p.1454)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1454)**)

### like the days of a king

Alternate translation: "like the years of a king" or "which is about as long as a king lives"

### like in the song of the prostitute

This speaks about the people of Tyre as if they were a prostitute. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)



## Isaiah 23:16

### **Take a harp, go about the city, you forgotten prostitute & so that you may be remembered**

This speaks about the people of Tyre as if they were a prostitute (verse 15). Just as a prostitute who is no longer popular may sing in the streets to regain her former lovers, the people of Tyre will try to get people from other nations to return to them to continue trading so that the people of Tyre will be rich and powerful again. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### **so that you may be remembered**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "so that people remember you" or "so that people return to you" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 23:17

### It will come about that

This phrase is used here to mark an important event that will happen. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

### seventy years

“70 years” (See: **Numbers (p.1454)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1454)**)

### Yahweh will help Tyre

Here “Tyre” represents the people who live in Tyre. Alternate translation: “Yahweh will help the people of Tyre” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### she will start making money again by doing the work of a prostitute & of the earth

Isaiah compares the people of Tyre with a prostitute. Just as the prostitute sells herself for money to any man, the people of Tyre will again buy and sell to all kingdoms. Alternate translation: “And like a prostitute they will buy and sell will all the kingdoms of the earth” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 23:18

### **They will not be stored up or kept**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "The merchants will not store away their money" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### **those who live in Yahweh's presence**

Alternate translation: "those who obey and serve Yahweh"

### **to supply them with abundant food**

Alternate translation: "so they will have enough food to eat"

## Isaiah 24

### Isaiah 24 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in this chapter.

While it appears that this chapter is a continuation of the prophecy from the previous chapter, it actually looks at the whole of the Assyrian conquest as Yahweh's punishment on the world. (See: **prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess (p.1525)**)

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Covenant

The mention of an “everlasting covenant” in this chapter is probably not to a specific covenant with Abraham or Moses. Instead, it is an expectation that mankind would obey Yahweh. Some consider this to be a covenant Yahweh made with Adam. (See: [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/eternity\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/covenant\]\]](#))

#### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

##### Reign of Yahweh

This chapter appears to prophesy about a time of restoration when the Messiah will reign. This chapter pictures a time of great peace and harmony in the world. The translator should not add explanation, but should try to maintain the tense of the original text, as a future or uncompleted action. (See: [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/restore\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/prophet\]\]](#) and **Christ, Messiah (p.1497)**)

## **Isaiah 24:1**

### **to empty the earth**

Alternate translation: "to make the earth desolate" or "to destroy everything on the earth"

## Isaiah 24:2

### It will come about that

This phrase marks an important event. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

### as with & so with

What Yahweh will do is not stated here, but it is understood. This shows that God will treat all people the same way. Alternate translation: "as Yahweh scatters ... so he will scatter"(See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**) (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**)

### the priest & the giver of interest

In 24:2 Isaiah lists several classes of people. They can be expressed as plural nouns as in the UST. Alternate translation: "the priests ... those who give interest" (See: **Generic Noun Phrases (p.1409)**) (See: **Generic Noun Phrases (p.1409)**)

### the receiver of interest

"the one who owes money." The word "interest" means the extra money someone has to pay so that he may borrow money.

### the giver of interest

Alternate translation: "the one who is owed money"

## Isaiah 24:3

### The earth will be completely devastated and completely stripped

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Yahweh will completely devastate the earth and he will remove everything with value" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### Yahweh has spoken this word

Alternate translation: "Yahweh has said he would"

### The earth

everything that is on the earth (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 24:4

### The earth dries up and withers, the world shrivels up and fades away

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. Alternate translation: "Everything on earth will dry up and die" (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### The earth & the world

Both of these represent everything that is on the earth. (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)



## Isaiah 24:5

### **The earth is polluted by its inhabitants**

The people sinning and making the earth unacceptable to God is spoken of as if the people made the earth physically unclean. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "The people have polluted the earth" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### **they have transgressed the laws, violated the statutes, and broken the everlasting covenant**

Alternate translation: "they have not obeyed God's laws and statutes, and they have broken God's eternal covenant"

## Isaiah 24:6

### a curse devours the earth

Yahweh cursing the earth and destroying it is spoken of as if a curse were either a wild animal that completely eats the earth or a fire that completely burns up the earth. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### its inhabitants are found guilty

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Yahweh will declare that the people are guilty" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 24:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## Isaiah 24:8

### tambourines & lyre

These are musical instruments. See how you translated these in [Isaiah 5:12](#).

## **Isaiah 24:9**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## Isaiah 24:10

### The city of chaos has been broken down

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “Yahweh will break down the city of chaos” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### The city of chaos

This could mean: (1) the city was in chaos before the Lord breaks it down; the people did not obey God, the government was corrupt, and the city was full of drinking and parties, or (2) the city will be in chaos after God breaks it down. The walls and buildings that were once built strong and tall are now in ruins on the ground. With either meaning it does not mean one city. It refers to cities in general.

### every house is closed up and empty

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “the people will close up their houses and leave them empty” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## **Isaiah 24:11**

### **because of the wine**

Alternate translation: "because there is no wine"

### **all joy is darkened, the gladness of the land has disappeared**

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. Alternate translation: "all joy will be gone from the earth" (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### **gladness of the land**

Here "land" represents the people of the earth. (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 24:12

### In the city is left a desolation

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **desolation**, you can express the same idea with a verbal form such as “desolate” or “empty.” Alternate translation: “The city is desolate” or “The city is left empty” (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**)

### In the city

This is not a specific city but cities in general. (See: **Generic Noun Phrases (p.1409)**) (See: **Generic Noun Phrases (p.1409)**)



## Isaiah 24:13

**as when an olive tree is beaten, as the gleanings when the grape harvest is done**

This compares the nations after Yahweh devastates the land to trees and vines after their fruit has been picked. This means there will be very few people left in the land. (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

## Isaiah 24:14

### They will lift up their voices and shout the majesty of Yahweh

The phrase “lift up their voices” is an idiom that means to speak loudly. Alternate translation: “They will sing and shout about the majesty of Yahweh” (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

### They will

Here “They” refers to those who are still alive after Yahweh devastates the earth.

### and will joyfully shout from the sea

Here “the sea” refers to the Mediterranean Sea which is west of Israel. Alternate translation: “and those in the west towards the sea will shout with joy” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

## Isaiah 24:15

### Therefore in the east glorify Yahweh

The phrase “in the east” represents the people living east of Israel. Isaiah is commanding these people as if they were there with him. But, he is talking to the people in the future after God devastates the earth. Alternate translation: “Therefore everyone from distant lands in the east will glorify Yahweh” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-apostrophe\]\]](#) and **Predictive Past (p.1469)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### in the isles of the sea give glory

Isaiah is commanding the people who live on the islands in the Mediterranean sea as if they were there with him. But, he is talking to the people in the future after God devastates the earth. Alternate translation: “everyone in the islands will give glory” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-apostrophe\]\]](#) and **Predictive Past (p.1469)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### to the name of Yahweh

Here “name” represents Yahweh. Alternate translation: “to Yahweh” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 24:16

### we have heard

Here “we” refers to Isaiah and the people of Israel. Isaiah is describing something in the future as if it has already happened. Alternate translation: “we will hear” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-exclusive\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-pastforfuture\]\]](#)) (See: **Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’ (p.1404)**)

### I have wasted away, I have wasted away

Isaiah repeats this phrase to emphasize his anguish. He was very concerned because he saw people who deceived others and did not do what they promised to do. Alternate translation: “I have become very weak” (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### The treacherous have dealt treacherously; yes, the treacherous have dealt very treacherously

Isaiah repeats this phrase to emphasize his anguish. Alternate translation: “Indeed, those who deceive are now deceiving others” or “Indeed, the deceivers have acted deceitfully” (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

## Isaiah 24:17

**Terror, the pit, and the snare are upon you, inhabitants of the earth**

Alternate translation: "You people of the earth will experience terror, the pit, and the snare"

**the pit, and the snare**

Here "pit" and "snare" represent all the different bad things that will happen to people. People will run away to escape one bad thing but they will just experience another bad thing. (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

## Isaiah 24:18

### caught in the snare

Here the “snare” represents all the different bad things that will happen to people. People will run away to escape one bad thing but they will just experience another bad thing. (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### the sound of terror

Alternate translation: “the terrifying sound”

### will be caught in the snare

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “the snare will catch him” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### The windows of the heavens will be opened

This speaks of large amounts of rain falling from the sky as if Yahweh opened a window in the sky and let the water pour through. Alternate translation: “The sky will split open and torrents of rain will fall” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### the foundations of the earth will shake

The word “foundation” normally refers to a stone structure that gives support to a building from underneath. Here it describes a similar structure that was thought to support and hold the earth in place. Isaiah says even the structure that holds the earth will shake. Alternate translation: “the earth will shake terribly” or “there will be a terrible earthquake”

## Isaiah 24:19

**The earth will be completely broken, the earth ripped apart; the earth will be violently shaken**

These passive clauses can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The earth will break and split apart; the earth will shake violently" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

**Isaiah 24:20**

**The earth will stagger like a drunken man and it will sway back and forth like a hut**

These similes emphasize how the earth will shake back and forth. (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

**Its sin will be heavy on it and it will fall and never rise again**

This speaks of the earth as if it were a person and transgressions were a heavy object. The person tries to carry the heavy weight but the weight causes the person to fall and not be able to stand back up. Here the earth represents the people of the earth who cause Yahweh to destroy the earth because of their sins. Alternate translation: "The sins of the people are many and so Yahweh will destroy the earth, and the earth will be like a person who falls and cannot get back up" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)



## Isaiah 24:21

### On that day

Alternate translation: "At that time"

### the host of the heaven

A host is an army. Here "the host of the heaven" refers to the many powerful spirits in the heavens. It can be stated clearly that they are evil. Alternate translation: "the powerful beings" or "the evil spiritual beings" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### in the heavens

Alternate translation: "in the sky"

## Isaiah 24:22

### **They will be gathered together, prisoners in a pit, and will be shut up in a prison**

Here "pit" refers to a dark room or hole in a prison. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Yahweh will gather them together as his prisoners and lock them in the dungeon of a prison" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### **they will be punished**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Yahweh will punish them" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 24:23

### Then the moon will be ashamed, and the sun disgraced

The sun and the moon are described as a person who is ashamed of being in front of someone with greater power. In the presence of Yahweh, the light of the moon and sun will seem less bright. (See: **Personification (p.1464)**)  
(See: **Personification (p.1464)**)

## Isaiah 25

### Isaiah 25 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in this chapter.

This chapter shifts from being a prophecy against the nations to the personal praises of Isaiah. He praises Yahweh for the deliverance of his people. (See: [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/prophet\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/other/deliverer\]\]](#) and **people of God (p.1523)**)

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Reign of the Messiah

This chapter appears to prophesy about a time of restoration when the Messiah will reign. This chapter pictures a time of great peace and harmony in the world. The translator should not add explanation, but should try to maintain the tense of the original text, as a future or uncompleted action. (See: [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/restore\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/prophet\]\]](#) and **Christ, Messiah (p.1497)**)

## Isaiah 25:1

### praise your name

Here "name" represents Yahweh. Alternate translation: "praise you" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### things planned long ago

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "things you planned long ago" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### in perfect faithfulness

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **faithfulness**, you can express the same idea with a verbal form such as "faithful." Alternate translation: "because you are perfectly faithful" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**)

## Isaiah 25:2

### the city

This is not referring to a certain city. It means cities in general. (See: **Generic Noun Phrases (p.1409)**) (See: **Generic Noun Phrases (p.1409)**)

### a fortress of strangers

Alternate translation: "a fortress belonging to foreigners"

## Isaiah 25:3

### a city of ruthless nations

Here “city” and “nations” represent the people who live there. (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 25:4

**you have been a place of safety & a shelter & a shelter from the storm & a shade from the heat**

Yahweh protecting his people is spoken of as if he were a place that the people could go to be safe and comforted. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

**When the breath of the ruthless was like a storm against a wall**

Ruthless people oppressing the people of God is spoken of as if they were a storm beating against a wall. (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

**When the breath**

Alternate translation: "When the wind" or "When the blast"

**the ruthless**

This is a nominal adjective. Alternate translation: "ruthless people" or "those who are ruthless" (See: **Nominal Adjectives (p.1452)**) (See: **Nominal Adjectives (p.1452)**)



## Isaiah 25:5

### like heat in a dry land

This compares the enemies of God's people to the heat that dries up the land. This emphasizes how much the enemies cause the people of God to suffer. (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

### as the heat is subdued & ruthless ones is answered

Yahweh stopping ruthless people from singing and boasting is compared to a cloud providing shade on a hot day. This emphasizes that Yahweh comforts his people by stopping those who cause them to suffer. (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

### as the heat is subdued by the shade of a cloud

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "just like when a cloud passes overhead and subdues the heat" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### the song of the ruthless ones is answered

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "you will stop the ruthless people from singing" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## **Isaiah 25:6**

### **On this mountain**

This refers to Jerusalem or Mount Zion.

### **Yahweh of hosts**

See how you translated this in [Isaiah 1:9](#).

### **a feast of fat things**

Here “fat things” means the best food.

### **a feast on the lees**

“the oldest wine.” This means the best wine.

## Isaiah 25:7

### **the covering over all peoples, the web woven over all the nations**

Death, suffering, and sadness are spoken of as if they were a dark cloud or web that covers everyone on the earth.  
(See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## **Isaiah 25:8**

### **He will swallow up death forever**

Yahweh causing people to live forever is spoken of as if he would swallow death. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### **the disgrace of his people he will take away from all the earth**

Yahweh causing the people to never be ashamed again is spoken of as if disgrace were an object that Yahweh would take away. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 25:9

### It will be said

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "People will say" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### on that day

Alternate translation: "at that time"

## Isaiah 25:10

### For on this mountain the hand of Yahweh will rest

The “hand” represents God’s power. For Yahweh’s hand to rest on “this mountain” means he will protect his people. Alternate translation: “The power of Yahweh will be on this mountain” or “For on Mount Zion Yahweh will protect his people” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-idiom\]\]](#)) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### Moab will be trampled down in his place, even as straw is trampled down in a pit filled with manure

Yahweh destroying the people of Moab is spoken of as if he would step on them and crush them. This is compared to how people trampled on straw to mix it with manure. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-simile\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### Moab will be trampled down in his place

Here Moab represents the people of Moab. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “Yahweh will trample the people in the land of Moab” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 25:11

### They will spread their hands & his hands to swim

This simile emphasizes how badly Yahweh will humiliate the people of Moab. They will spread their hands in dung like a swimmer spreads his hands in water. (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

### They will spread their hands in the midst of it

Alternate translation: "The people of Moab will push their hands through the dung"

### as a swimmer spreads his hands to swim

Alternate translation: "as if they were swimming"

### will bring down their pride

Yahweh humiliating a proud person is spoken of as if pride were something high and Yahweh would cause it to be low. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### in spite of the skill of their hands

Here "hands" represents the power to do or make something. Alternate translation: "in spite of the great things they have built" or "in spite of the great things they have done" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 25:12

### Your high fortress walls he will bring down to the ground, to the dust

This speaks of Yahweh causing armies to bring down the walls as if he himself were going to bring them down.

Alternate translation: "He will send an army to bring your high fortress walls to the ground, to the dust" (See:

**Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### Your high fortress

Here "Your" refers to the people of Moab. It can be stated in third person to be consistent with the previous verse.

Alternate translation: "Their high fortress" (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1406)**) (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1406)**)



## Isaiah 26

### Isaiah 26 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in this chapter.

#### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

##### “That day”

This is a common phrase in this section of Isaiah. This chapter appears to prophesy about a time of restoration when the Messiah will reign. This chapter pictures a time of great peace and harmony in the world. The translator should not add explanation, but should try to maintain the tense of the original text, as a future or uncompleted action. (See: [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/restore\]\]](#), [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/prophet\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/christ\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/fulfill\]\]](#))

## Isaiah 26:1

### In that day

Alternate translation: "At that time"

### this song will be sung in the land of Judah

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "the people in the land of Judah will sing this song" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### We have a strong city

This refers to the city of Jerusalem.

### God has made salvation its walls and ramparts

God's power to protect and save his people is spoken of as if his salvation were walls around a city. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 26:2

### the righteous nation that keeps faith

Here “nation” represents the people. Alternate translation: “the righteous and faithful people” (See: **Metonymy (p. 1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 26:3

### The mind that is stayed on you

Here “mind” represents a person’s thoughts. Also “you” refers to Yahweh. The phrase “stayed on you” is an idiom. Alternate translation: “The person who continually thinks about you” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-idiom\]\]](#)) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 26:4

### Yah, Yahweh

Yah is another name for Yahweh.

### Yahweh, is an everlasting rock

Yahweh having the power to protect his people is spoken of as if he were a tall rock where people could go to escape from their enemies. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 26:5

### he will bring down those who live proudly

Yahweh humiliating those who are proud is spoken of as if proud people were up high and he would cause them to come down low. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### the fortified city

This means fortified cities in general not a specific city. (See: **Generic Noun Phrases (p.1409)**) (See: **Generic Noun Phrases (p.1409)**)

### he will lay low & he will level

Yahweh causing an army to destroy fortified cities is spoken of as if Yahweh would do it himself. (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

**Isaiah 26:6****It will be trampled down by the feet of the poor and the treading of the needy**

Both statements mean the same thing. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "The poor and oppressed people will trample on the ruins of the city" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

## Isaiah 26:7

### **The path of the righteous is level & the path of the righteous you make straight**

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. People obeying Yahweh is spoken of as if they were walking on his path. Yahweh ensuring the people that what they do is right is spoken of as if he were making the path level and straight for them. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)



## Isaiah 26:8

### in the path of your judgments, Yahweh, we wait for you

Doing what Yahweh judged to be right is spoken of walking on his path. Alternate translation: “we wait for you, Yahweh, as we continue to do what you judged to be right” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### of your judgments

Alternate translation: “of your laws” or “of your teachings”

### we wait

Here “we” refers to Isaiah and all righteous people who are speaking to Yahweh. (See: **Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’ (p.1404)**) (See: **Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’ (p.1404)**)

### your name and your reputation are our desire

Here “name” and “reputation” represent Yahweh’s character which represents Yahweh himself. Alternate translation: “our only desire is to honor you” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 26:9

### my spirit within me seeks you earnestly

Wanting to know Yahweh and his laws better is spoken of as if the person were seeking to find Yahweh. Alternate translation: "I earnestly want to know you better" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### my spirit within me seeks you earnestly

Here "spirit" represents the speaker as a whole. (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

## Isaiah 26:10

### Let favor be shown to the wicked one, but he will not learn righteousness

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “Even if Yahweh is kind to wicked people, they still do not learn to do what is right” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### the wicked one

This means wicked people in general. (See: **Generic Noun Phrases (p.1409)**) (See: **Generic Noun Phrases (p.1409)**)

### In the land of uprightness

Here “land” represents the people who live there. Alternate translation: “In the land where the people do what is right” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### does not see the majesty of Yahweh

Here “see” represents realizing something. Alternate translation: “does not realize that Yahweh is great” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 26:11

### **your hand is lifted up**

Yahweh preparing to punish wicked people is spoken of as if his hand were raised and about to hit the wicked people. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### **but they do not notice**

Alternate translation: "but the wicked people do not notice"

### **they will see your zeal for the people**

Here "see" represents realizing something. Alternate translation: "they will realize that you are eager to bless your people" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### **be put to shame**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "they will be ashamed" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### **fire of your adversaries will devour them**

Yahweh punishing and completely destroying his adversaries is spoken of as if he would send a fire that will completely burn them up. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### **fire of your adversaries**

Here "of" does not mean the fire belongs to the adversaries but that the fire is intended to be used against the adversaries. Alternate translation: "your fire will completely burn them up"

## Isaiah 26:12

### for us

Here “us” refers to Isaiah and includes all the righteous people. (See: **Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’ (p.1404)**) (See: **Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’ (p.1404)**)

## Isaiah 26:13

### but we praise your name alone

Here "name" represents the person of God. Alternate translation: "but we praise you alone" (See: **Metonymy (p. 1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## **Isaiah 26:14**

**they will not arise**

Alternate translation: "they will not come back to life"

**made every memory of them to perish**

Yahweh causing people to no longer remember those he destroyed is spoken of as if Yahweh made their memory perish or die. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 26:15

### **You have increased the nation, Yahweh, you have increased the nation**

This clause is repeated for emphasis. Here “nation” represents the people. Alternate translation: “You have greatly increased the number of people in our nation” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#)) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)



## Isaiah 26:16

### they looked to you

Here “they” refers to the people of Israel. This would include Isaiah. Alternate translation: “we looked to you” (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1406)**) (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1406)**)

### looked to you

This idiom means they asked Yahweh for help. (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

### when your discipline was on them

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **discipline**, you can express the same idea with a verbal form. Alternate translation: “when you disciplined them” (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**)

## Isaiah 26:17

### As a pregnant woman & cries out in her labor pains

This compares the people to a woman giving birth. This emphasizes their suffering and crying when Yahweh disciplined them. (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

## Isaiah 26:18

### but it is as if we have only given birth to wind

“but it is as if we have only given birth to air” or “it is like we gave birth to nothing.” This is a simile that emphasizes that the people’s suffering resulted in nothing. Alternate translation: “but nothing good resulted from it” (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

### We have not brought salvation to the earth, and the inhabitants of the world have not fallen

Here “earth” represents the people who live on the earth. The meaning is unclear, but it seems to mean that the people of Israel have not been able to save themselves or other people by defeating their enemy in battle. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-explicit\]\]](#)) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### We have not brought salvation to the earth

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **salvation**, you can express the same idea with the verb “save.” Alternate translation: “We have not saved the inhabitants of the earth” (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**)

### and the inhabitants of the world have not fallen

Alternate translation: “nor have we caused the wicked people of the world to fall in battle”

## Isaiah 26:19

### Your dead will live

This can be reworded so that the nominal adjective “dead” is expressed as the verb “have died.” Alternate translation: “Your people who have died will live again” (See: **Nominal Adjectives (p.1452)**) (See: **Nominal Adjectives (p.1452)**)

### Your dead

This could mean: (1) “Your” refers to Yahweh or (2) “Your” refers to the people of Israel. If you choose option two you could translate it as “Our dead.”

### Awake

This speaks of dead people coming back to life as if they were waking up from sleep. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### you who live in the dust

This is a polite way of referring to those who have died. Alternate translation: “those who are dead and buried” (See: **Euphemism (p.1402)**) (See: **Euphemism (p.1402)**)

### for your dew is the dew of light

Yahweh acting kindly towards his people and bringing them back to life is spoken of as if it were the dew that causes the plants to live. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### for your dew

This could mean: (1) “your” refers to Yahweh and this is the dew that Yahweh gives or (2) “your” refers to the people of Israel and this is the dew they receive from Yahweh.

### dew of light

This could mean: (1) “light” refers to Yahweh’s power to make dead people alive again. Alternate translation: “dew from Yahweh” or (2) “light” refers to the morning time when dew is on the plants. Alternate translation: “dew in the morning”

### the earth will bring forth its dead

“the earth will give birth to those who died.” Yahweh causing dead people to come back to life is spoken of as if the earth would give birth to those who have died. Alternate translation: “and Yahweh will cause those who have died to rise from the earth” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 26:20

### my people

Here “my” refers to Isaiah. Also “people” refers to the people of Israel.

### until the indignation has passed by

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **indignation**, you can express the same idea with the adjective “angry.” Alternate translation: “until Yahweh is no longer angry with us” (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**)

## Isaiah 26:21

**the earth will uncover her bloodshed, and will no longer conceal her slain**

Yahweh revealing all murders that have happened on the earth so that he can punish the murderers is spoken of as if the earth itself will reveal everyone who has been murdered. (See: **Personification (p.1464)**) (See: **Personification (p.1464)**)

## Isaiah 27

### Isaiah 27 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in this chapter.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Leviathan

This was an ancient type of dragon or serpent. It is possible that this is a reference to Satan, who is also described as a serpent and a dragon. (See: [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/satan\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-explicit\]\]](#))

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### “That day”

This is a common phrase in this section of Isaiah. This chapter appears to prophesy about a time of restoration when the Messiah will reign. This chapter pictures a time of great peace and harmony in the world. The translator should not add explanation, but should try to maintain the tense of the original text, as a future or uncompleted action. (See: [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/restore\]\]](#), [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/prophet\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/christ\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/fulfill\]\]](#))

## **Isaiah 27:1**

### **On that day**

Alternate translation: "At that time"

### **Yahweh with his hard, great and fierce sword will punish**

Yahweh having the power to destroy his enemies is spoken of as if he had strong, large sword. (See: **Metaphor (p. 1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### **the monster that is in the sea**

This refers to Leviathan.



## Isaiah 27:2

### A vineyard of wine, sing of it

“Sing about the vineyard of wine.” This speaks about the people of Israel as if they were a vineyard that produced fruit. Alternate translation: “Sing about the people of Israel as if they were a vineyard that produced grapes for wine” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 27:3

### I, Yahweh, am its protector

Alternate translation: "I, Yahweh, protect the vineyard"

### night and day

The words "night" and "day" are combined here to mean "all the time." Alternate translation: "all the time" or "continually" (See: **Merism (p.1440)**) (See: **Merism (p.1440)**)

## Isaiah 27:4

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

This continues to speak about the people of Israel as if they were a vineyard ([Isaiah 27:2-3](#)).

**I am not angry, Oh, that there were briers and thorns! In battle I would march against them**

Alternate translation: "I am not angry. If there were briers and thorns I would march against them in battle"

**I am not angry**

It is understood that Yahweh is not angry with his people any longer. Alternate translation: "I am not angry with my people any longer" (See: [Ellipsis \(p.1399\)](#)) (See: [Ellipsis \(p.1399\)](#))

**that there were briers and thorns**

The enemies of the people of Israel are spoken of as if they were briers and thorns growing in the vineyard. (See: [Metaphor \(p.1442\)](#)) (See: [Metaphor \(p.1442\)](#))

**briers and thorns**

See how you translated this phrase in [Isaiah 5:6](#).

**In battle I would march against them**

Yahweh fighting his enemies is spoken of as if he were a warrior in an army. (See: [Metaphor \(p.1442\)](#)) (See: [Metaphor \(p.1442\)](#))

**I would march against them; I would burn them all together**

Here Isaiah combines different images to speak of Yahweh's enemies. He speaks of them as if they are briers and thorns but also as soldiers in an army. (See: [Metaphor \(p.1442\)](#)) (See: [Metaphor \(p.1442\)](#))

## Isaiah 27:5

### unless they grasp my protection

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **protection**, you can express the same idea with the verb “protect.” Alternate translation: “unless they ask me to protect them” (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**)

### make peace with me; let them make peace with me

Alternate translation: “they ask to live peacefully with me; I want them to live peacefully with me”

## Isaiah 27:6

### In the coming day

This speaks about a day as if it travels and arrives somewhere. Alternate translation: "In the future" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### Jacob will take root; Israel will blossom and bud

Yahweh blessing the people of Israel and causing them to prosper is spoken of as if they were a vine that grows roots and blossoms. Alternate translation: "the descendants of Israel will prosper like a vine that has taken root and blossomed" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### Jacob & Israel

Here "Jacob" and "Israel" are metonyms that represent the descendants of Jacob. (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### they will fill the surface of the ground with fruit

Yahweh causing the people of Israel to prosper greatly so that they can help other people is spoken of as if they were a vine that grows so much fruit that it would cover the earth. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 27:7

### Has Yahweh attacked Jacob and Israel as he attacked those nations who attacked them?

The question is used to contrast the severity of God's punishment. Alternate translation: "Yahweh has certainly punished the enemy nations more severely than he punished the people of Israel." (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### Jacob & Israel

These represent the descendants of Jacob. (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### Have Jacob and Israel been killed as in the slaughter of those nations that were killed by them?

This question too is used to contrast the severity of God's punishment. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Yahweh has not killed the people of Israel like they killed their enemies from other nations." (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-rquestion\]\]](#)) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 27:8

### In exact measure you have contended

Here “you” refers to God. Yahweh punishing his people as much as they needed is spoken of as if God’s punishment were something that could be measured. Alternate translation: “But you did punish them as much as was needed” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-you\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Forms of You (p.1408)**)

### sending Jacob and Israel away

This represents the descendants of Jacob. Alternate translation: “sending the Israelites away” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### he drove them away with his fierce breath in the day of the east wind

Yahweh’s power to send his people away to a foreign country is spoken of as if Yahweh used his breath to blow them to a foreign country. Alternate translation: “the power of Yahweh drove them out like a fierce wind from the east” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 27:9

### So in this way

This could mean: (1) "this" refers to Yahweh sending the people into exile as Isaiah mentioned in the previous verse or (2) "this" refers to the actions that Isaiah will mention in the next part of verse 9.

### the iniquity of Jacob will be atoned for

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Yahweh will purge the sin from the Israelites" or "Yahweh will forgive the sins of the Israelites" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### iniquity of Jacob & removal of his sin

Here "Jacob" represents the descendants of Jacob. Alternate translation: "iniquity of the Israelites ... removal of their sins" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### for this will be

Here "this" refers to the actions that Isaiah will describe in the next part of verse 9.

### the full fruit

This speaks of the results of an action as if it were the fruit that grows as on a tree or vine. Alternate translation: "the result" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### he will make all the altar stones as chalk and crushed to pieces, and no Asherah poles or incense altars will remain standing

Here "he" refers to Jacob who represents his descendants. Alternate translation: "They will completely destroy all the altars on which they sacrifice to false gods, and they will remove all the Asherah idols and the altars on which they burn incense to false gods" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)



## Isaiah 27:10

### For the fortified city is & consumes its branches

Here Isaiah describes an event that will happen in the future as if it already happened. This emphasizes that it certainly will happen. (See: **Predictive Past (p.1469)**) (See: **Predictive Past (p.1469)**)

### For the fortified city is desolate, the habitation is deserted and forsaken like the wilderness

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "The cities that were strong and had many people living in them will become empty like a desert" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### the fortified city & the habitation

This does not refer to a specific city or habitation but to cities and habitations in general. (See: **Generic Noun Phrases (p.1409)**) (See: **Generic Noun Phrases (p.1409)**)

### a calf feeds, and there he lies down and consumes

Here "calf" represents calves or cattle in general. Alternate translation: "calves feed, and there they lie down and consume" (See: **Generic Noun Phrases (p.1409)**) (See: **Generic Noun Phrases (p.1409)**)

## Isaiah 27:11

### When the boughs & not a people of understanding

The people becoming so weak because they disobey Yahweh so that enemies can easily destroy them is spoken of as if they are dry branches that women break off of a tree. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### When the boughs are withered, they will be broken off. Women will come and make fires with them

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "When the branches wither, women will come and break them off and make fires with them" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### this is not a people of understanding

This can be made more explicit. Alternate translation: "this is not a people who understands Yahweh or his law" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### a people

This could mean: (1) "people" refers to the people of Israel or (2) "people" refers the people of foreign nations who oppress the people of Israel.

### Therefore their Maker will not have compassion on them, and he who made them will not be merciful to them

Both clauses mean the same thing. Alternate translation: "Because they do not understand, Yahweh, the one who made them, will not be merciful to them" (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

## Isaiah 27:12

### It will come about

This phrase marks an important event that will happen.

### on that day

Alternate translation: "at that time"

### Yahweh will thresh

Yahweh gathering his people to bring them back from the foreign nations to the land of Israel is spoken of as if he were threshing wheat to separate the grain from the chaff. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### from the Euphrates River to the Wadi of Egypt

Isaiah mentions the Euphrates River and the Wadi of Egypt to mean that Yahweh will bring back the people of Israel who were exiled in lands near those waters, that is, Assyria and Egypt. The Euphrates River is northeast of Israel, and the Wadi of Egypt is southwest of Israel.

### the Wadi of Egypt

Alternate translation: "the brook of Egypt"

### you & will be gathered together one by one

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Yahweh will gather you together one by one" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 27:13

### **a great trumpet will be blown**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “someone will blow a trumpet loudly” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### **the perishing ones in the land of Assyria will come, and the outcasts in the land of Egypt**

The understood information can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “those who are in exile and dying in the land of Assyria and the land of Egypt will return to the land of Israel” (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**) (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**)

### **holy mountain**

The “holy mountain” is Mount Zion, in Jerusalem. See how you translated this in [Isaiah 11:9](#).

## Isaiah 28

### Isaiah 28 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in this chapter.

#### Important figures of speech in this chapter

##### Metaphors

There are many metaphors used to describe Yahweh's punishment as well as the sin of the people of Ephraim. In one such metaphor, they are described as being drunk. Construction and weather metaphors are also used in this chapter. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/sin\]\]](#))

#### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

##### “That day”

This is a common phrase in this section of Isaiah. This chapter appears to prophesy about a time of restoration when the Messiah will reign. This chapter pictures a time of great peace and harmony in the world. The translator does not need to add an explanation, but should try to maintain the tense of the original text, as a future or uncompleted action. (See: [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/restore\]\]](#), [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/prophet\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/christ\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/fulfill\]\]](#))

## Isaiah 28:1

### **Woe to the proud garland & on the head of the lush Valley of those who are overcome with wine**

A “garland” is a crown made of flowers. Here it represents the city of Samaria, the capital of Israel, which sits above a fertile valley. Samaria and its people being destroyed is spoken of as if the flowers in the garland will grow old and stop being beautiful. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### **who are overcome with wine**

Alternate translation: “who are drunk with wine”

## Isaiah 28:2

### Behold

Alternate translation: "Listen" or "Pay attention"

### the Lord sends one who is mighty and strong

Here "one" refers to a mighty king who also represents his powerful army. Alternate translation: "the Lord sends a king with his powerful army" (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### storm of hail

A "storm of hail" or hailstorm happens when hard pieces of ice fall from the sky. Here it is a simile that refers to the enemy army that Yahweh will send to destroy the people of Samaria. (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

### he will throw each garland crown down to the ground

The king and his powerful army destroying the people of Samaria and their city is spoken of as if the king will throw the people's garlands onto the ground. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 28:3

### The proud garland of the drunkards of Ephraim will be trodden underfoot

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "The enemy army will crush the proud drunkards of Samaria as if they were crushing flowers under their feet" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### proud garland & of Ephraim

A "garland" is a crown made of flowers. Here it represents the city of Samaria, the capital of Israel, which sits above a fertile valley. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)



## **Isaiah 28:4**

### **that is on the head of the rich valley**

The city of Samaria, the capital of Israel, sits above a fertile valley. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### **will be as the first ripe fig & gulps it down**

This speaks of the enemy soldiers seeing the beauty of Samaria and quickly plundering it as if they were a person who sees the first fig of the season and quickly eats it. (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

## Isaiah 28:5

### Yahweh of hosts

See how you translated this in [Isaiah 1:9](#).

### **will become a beautiful crown and a diadem of beauty**

Yahweh is spoken of as if he were to become a beautiful crown that the people who honor him as their true king would wear. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### **a beautiful crown and a diadem of beauty**

These mean the same thing. Alternate translation: “a beautiful crown” (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**) (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**)

## Isaiah 28:6

### **a spirit of justice for him who sits in judgment, and strength for those who**

This can be reworded so that the abstract nouns “justice” and “strength” are expressed as adjectives. These words can begin a new sentence. Alternate translation: “Yahweh will cause the judges to be just and will cause to be strong those who” (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**)

### **a spirit of justice**

A person who has a “spirit of justice” is someone who has the characteristic of justice and is a just person. (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

### **sits in judgment**

This idiom means the person has the authority to judge. (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

### **strength for those who turn back their enemies at their gates**

Here “to turn back” is an idiom that means to defeat in battle. Alternate translation: “Yahweh will cause the soldiers to be strong so that they defeat their enemies when the enemies attack their city” (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

## Isaiah 28:7

### But even these

Alternate translation: "But even the leaders"

### The priest and the prophet

This does not mean a specific priest or prophet. It refers to priests and prophets in general. Alternate translation: "The priests and the prophets" (See: **Generic Noun Phrases (p.1409)**) (See: **Generic Noun Phrases (p.1409)**)

### reel with wine, and stagger with strong drink

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize that the priests and the prophets cannot do their job because they are very drunk. Alternate translation: "stumble around because they are drunk" (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### they are swallowed up by wine

Their drinking so much that they can no longer think properly is spoken of as if the wine swallowed them. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "the wine is causing them to be confused" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### staggering in vision and reeling in decision

Just like they are too drunk to walk correctly, they are too drunk to understand the visions God gives them or to make good decisions.

## **Isaiah 28:8**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## Isaiah 28:9

### **To whom will he teach knowledge, and to whom will he explain the message?**

The drunk prophets and priests use a question to criticize Isaiah, who is trying to correct them. Alternate translation: "The drunk prophets and priests say, 'Isaiah should not be trying to teach us about Yahweh's message!'" (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### **To those who are weaned from milk or to those just taken from the breasts?**

The drunk prophets and priests use a question to criticize Isaiah, because they feel that he is treating them like babies. Alternate translation: "He should not treat us like babies!" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-rquestion\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

## **Isaiah 28:10**

**For it is command upon command, command upon command; rule upon rule, rule upon rule; here a little, there a little**

The drunk prophets and priests criticize Isaiah because they feel that Isaiah is repeating simple commands as if he were talking to a child.

## Isaiah 28:11

### with mocking lips and a foreign tongue he will speak to this people

Here “lips” and “tongue” represent the foreigners who speak a different language than the Israelites do. It is implied that this refers to the Assyrian army that will attack Israel. Alternate translation: “Yahweh will speak to this people through enemy soldiers who will speak a foreign language” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-synecdoche\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### mocking lips

Alternate translation: “stammering lips”



## Isaiah 28:12

### This is the rest

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **rest**, you can express the same idea with an adjective. Alternate translation: "This is the resting place" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**)

### give rest to him who is weary

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **rest**, you can express the same idea with a verbal form. Alternate translation: "let whoever is tired come and rest" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**)

### this is the refreshing

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **refreshing**, you can express the same idea with a verbal form. Alternate translation: "this is the place where you can be refreshed" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**)

## Isaiah 28:13

### So the word of Yahweh

Alternate translation: "So Yahweh's message"

**command upon command, command upon command; rule upon rule, rule upon rule; here a little, there a little**

These are the words that the drunk priests and prophets used to criticize how Isaiah teaches them. See how you translated this in [Isaiah 28:10](#).

**so that they may go and fall backward, and be broken, ensnared, and captured**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "in order that the army of Assyria will come and defeat them and take them as captives" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

**go and fall backward, and be broken**

People losing in battle to the enemy army is spoken of as if the people will fall down and break. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

**ensnared**

The enemy soldiers capturing the people of Israel is spoken of as if they were hunters that catch an animal in a snare. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## **Isaiah 28:14**

### **So listen to the word of Yahweh**

Alternate translation: "So listen to Yahweh's message"

## Isaiah 28:15

### **We have made a covenant with death, and with Sheol we have reached an agreement**

Both of these statements mean basically the same thing. This could mean: (1) the leaders of Jerusalem have used magic or sorcery to try to make an agreement with the gods of the place of the dead so that these gods would protect them from dying or (2) this is a metaphor that speaks of the leaders having made an agreement with the leaders of Egypt. The leaders of Jerusalem were so confident that the Egyptians would protect that it was like they had made an agreement with the gods of the place of the dead. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### **So when the overwhelming whip passes through, it will not reach us**

This speaks of Yahweh's judgment and punishment as if it were a whip that would strike the people. And the whip is spoken of as if it were a flood that would pass through Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "As a result, when everyone else is suffering and dying, nothing will harm us" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### **For we have made a lie our refuge, and taken shelter in falsehood**

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. A "lie" and "falsehood" are spoken of as if they were places where a person could go to hide. The leaders in Jerusalem would not have said they trust in a lie. They believed they were truly safe. But Isaiah knows they are not safe, because they trust in lies. Alternate translation: "For lies and falsehoods have become like a place where we can hide from danger" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### **a lie our refuge & taken shelter in falsehood**

This could mean: (1) the leaders trust in their own lies that they have said in order to protect themselves or (2) the leaders trust that the covenant they have made with the false gods of the place of the dead will keep them safe or (3) the leaders trust that the agreement they have made with the Egyptians will keep them safe.

## **Isaiah 28:16**

### **See**

Alternate translation: "Look" or "Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you."

### **I will lay in Zion a foundation stone & sure foundation**

Yahweh sending a strong person to help the people of Israel is spoken of as if Yahweh is constructing a strong foundation for a building. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### **a tried stone**

Alternate translation: "a stone that is solid"

### **a sure foundation**

Alternate translation: "a firm support"

### **He who believes will not be ashamed**

Alternate translation: "Anyone who trusts in this foundation stone will not be sorry"

## Isaiah 28:17

### I will make justice the measuring stick, and righteousness the plumbline

Yahweh testing according to his justice and righteousness to determine if the people are just and righteous is spoken of as if he were a builder using tools to determine that something is the correct length and perfectly level. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

#### the measuring stick

A builder uses a measuring stick to determine if something is the correct length.

#### the plumbline

A builder uses a plumbline to determine if something is straight and level.

### Hail will sweep away

Yahweh causing a large amount of hail to fall is spoken of as if it would be an overwhelming flood. Alternate translation: "Hailstorms will destroy" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### Hail & the floodwaters

This could mean: (1) these are a synecdoche representing anything in general that will cause destruction or (2) these are a metaphor referring to the enemy army that Yahweh will send to destroy the people of Jerusalem. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-synecdoche\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### Hail

hard pieces of ice that fall from the sky

### the refuge of lies & the hiding place

This speaks about "lies" as if they were a place a person could go to hide. They represent what the leaders of Jerusalem trusted in to keep them safe from Yahweh's punishment. This could mean: (1) the leaders trust in their own lies that they have said in order to protect themselves or (2) the leaders trust that the covenant they have made with the false gods of the place of the dead will keep them safe or (3) the leaders trust that the agreement they have made with the Egyptians will keep them safe. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Isaiah 28:15](#). (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-explicit\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 28:18

### **Your covenant with death will be dissolved, and your agreement with Sheol will not stand**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "I will cancel the covenant you have with death, and I will cancel the agreement you have with Sheol" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### **covenant with death & agreement with Sheol**

This could mean: (1) the leaders of Jerusalem had used magic or sorcery to try to make an agreement with the gods of the place of the dead so that these gods would protect them from dying or (2) this is a metaphor that speaks of the leaders having made an agreement with the leaders of Egypt. The leaders of Jerusalem were so confident that the Egyptians would protect that it was like they had made an agreement with the gods of the place of the dead. See how you translated this in [Isaiah 28:15](#). (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### **will not stand**

Alternate translation: "will not last"

### **When the raging flood passes through**

This could mean: (1) "flood" is a synecdoche that represents anything in general that will cause destruction or (2) "flood" is a metaphor referring to the enemy army that Yahweh will send to destroy the people of Jerusalem. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-synecdoche\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### **you will be overwhelmed by it**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "it will overwhelm you" or "it will destroy you" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## **Isaiah 28:19**

### **morning by morning**

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “every day” (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

### **by day and night**

This means “throughout the entire day” (See: **Merism (p.1440)**) (See: **Merism (p.1440)**)



## Isaiah 28:20

**For the bed is too short for a man to stretch out on, and the blanket too narrow for him to wrap himself in**

This was probably a proverb that the people knew at the time. It means that what they believe will keep them safe from Yahweh's punishment will disappoint them like a bed that is too short or a blanket that is too narrow. (See: **Proverbs (p.1473)**) (See: **Proverbs (p.1473)**)

## Isaiah 28:21

### Yahweh will rise up

Yahweh preparing to act is spoken of as if he were sitting and then rising up. (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

### Mount Perazim & Valley of Gibeon

These refer to places where God miraculously defeated enemy armies. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-explicit\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-names\]\]](#)) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### he will rouse himself

Alternate translation: "he will become very angry"

### his strange work & his strange deed

These two phrases mean the same thing. This work is strange because God is using a foreign army to defeat the people of Jerusalem rather than helping the people of Jerusalem defeat their enemies. (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**) (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**)

## Isaiah 28:22

### Now

This does not mean “at this moment,” but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

### your bonds will be tightened

Yahweh punishing the people even more severely is spoken of as if he would tighten their bonds. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “Yahweh will tighten your bonds” or “Yahweh will punish you even more severely” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### Yahweh of hosts

See how you translated this in [Isaiah 1:9](#).

### a decree of destruction on the earth

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **destruction**, you can express the same idea with the verb “destroy.” Alternate translation: “that he is going to destroy people throughout the land” (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**)

## Isaiah 28:23

### General Information:

## General Information:

This begins a parable that ends in 28:29. (See: **Parables (p.1459)**) (See: **Parables (p.1459)**)

### Pay attention and listen to my voice; be attentive and listen to my words

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. The second phrase is used to strengthen the first. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### to my voice

Here “voice” represents what Isaiah says. Alternate translation: “to what I say” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### to my words

Alternate translation: “to my message”

## Isaiah 28:24

**Does a farmer who plows all day to sow, only plow the ground? Does he continually break up and harrow the field?**

Isaiah uses rhetorical questions to make the people think deeply. Alternate translation: "A farmer does not plow the ground over and over and continually work the soil without ever sowing seed." (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

## Isaiah 28:25

### When he has prepared the ground

Alternate translation: "When the farmer has plowed the soil"

### does he not scatter caraway seed, sow the cumin, put in the wheat in rows and the barley in the right place, and the spelt at its edges?

Isaiah uses a question to make the people of Jerusalem think deeply. If your language does not have a word for each of these seeds, they can be stated more generally. Alternate translation: "he will certainly plant each kind of seed in the correct way and in the proper places." (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### caraway & cumin

These are names of plants that are spices. Translators may represent them in general as seeds of spices used to spice food. (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1490)**) (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1490)**)

### wheat & barley & spelt

These are all names of plants that are grains. Translators may represent them in general as seeds of grains. (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1490)**) (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1490)**)

## Isaiah 28:26

### His God instructs him; he teaches him wisely

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. Alternate translation: “Yahweh helps the farmer know how to care for each kind of plant” (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

## Isaiah 28:27

### the caraway seed is not threshed with a sledge

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “the farmer does not separate the caraway seed from the plant with a heavy club” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### caraway

See how you translated this in [Isaiah 28:25](#).

### nor is a cartwheel rolled over the cumin

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “nor does he roll a heavy wheel over the cumin seed” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### cumin

See how you translated this in [Isaiah 28:25](#).

### but caraway is beaten with a stick, and cumin with a rod

Isaiah describes the correct way for a farmer to separate the seed from the plant. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “but he beats the caraway with a stick, and he beats cumin with a rod” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)



## Isaiah 28:28

### Grain is ground for bread but not too finely

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "The farmer grinds the grain for bread but not so that it is too small" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 28:29

### This too comes & excellent in wisdom

This concludes the parable started in [Isaiah 28:23](#). The implied lesson of the parable is that farmers are wise enough to listen to Yahweh's instructions about planting and threshing. But the leaders of Jerusalem are foolish for not listening to Yahweh's instructions that he is speaking through Isaiah. (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### Yahweh of hosts

See how you translated this in [Isaiah 1:9](#).

## Isaiah 29

### Isaiah 29 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in this chapter.

This chapter begins a series of “woes” against specific nations. It presents judgments against the kingdoms of Ephraim and eventually Judah. (See: [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/woe\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/judge\]\]](#))

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Ariel

This is another name for Jerusalem. It is an uncommon name.

#### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

##### Prophecies

This chapter appears to prophesy about a time of restoration when the Messiah will reign. It pictures a time of great peace and harmony in the world. The translator does not need to add an explanation, but should try to maintain the tense of the original text, as a future or uncompleted action. (See: [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/restore\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/prophet\]\]](#) and **fulfill, fulfilled, carried out (p.1507)**)

## Isaiah 29:1

### Woe to Ariel

Here “Ariel” represents the people who live in the city of Ariel. Alternate translation: “How terrible it will be for the people of Ariel” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### Ariel

This is another name for Jerusalem, and it means “altar.” If possible translate this as “Ariel” rather than “Jerusalem” since the meaning of “Ariel” is important in 29:2. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

### David encamped

Alternate translation: “David dwelled” or “David lived”

### Add year to year; let the festivals come round

“Keep celebrating your festival year after year.” This is an ironic statement. Yahweh tells the people to keep celebrating their festivals where they sacrifice to him, but he knows it will not prevent him from destroying them. (See: **Irony (p.1435)**) (See: **Irony (p.1435)**)

## Isaiah 29:2

### But I will besiege

The word “I” refers to Yahweh. This represents Yahweh causing an enemy army to besiege Jerusalem. (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### she will

Here “she” refers to Ariel, which represents the people of Ariel. Alternate translation: “the people of Ariel will” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### mourning and lamenting

The words “mourning” and “lamenting” mean basically the same thing and emphasize the intensity of mourning. Alternate translation: “they will mourn deeply” (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**) (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**)

### like Ariel

Translators may add a footnote that says, “The name Ariel means ‘altar.’” (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

## Isaiah 29:3

### I will encamp against you

The word “I” refers to Yahweh. This represents Yahweh causing an enemy army to surround Jerusalem. Alternate translation: “I will command the army of your enemies to surround you” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### palisade & siege works

A “palisade” is a tower armies would build to attack cities with high walls. Also “siege works” refers to other various weapons armies would build to attack cities. (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1490)**) (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1490)**)

## Isaiah 29:4

### You will be brought down

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “Your enemy will bring you down” or “Your enemy will humble you” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

**will speak from the ground; your speech will be low from the dust. Your voice will sound like a spirit that speaks from the ground, and out of the dust your speech will whisper**

All of these statements mean basically the same thing. They emphasize that the people who once spoke with proud words will be weak and grieving after the enemy defeats them. Alternate translation: “you will only be able to speak with weak whispers like a spirit speaking from where dead people dwell” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-simile\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#)) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

**Isaiah 29:5**

**The great number of your invaders will become like fine dust, and the multitude of the ruthless ones as chaff that passes away**

This emphasizes how weak and insignificant the invading army is before God. Alternate translation: "Yahweh will easily remove the horde of your invaders and the multitude of the ruthless ones"(See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

**great number of your invaders**

Alternate translation: "many soldiers that will attack you"

**the ruthless ones as chaff**

The translator can supply the verb "will become." Alternate translation: "the soldiers who show you no mercy will become as chaff" (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**) (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**)



## Isaiah 29:6

### Yahweh of hosts will come to you

The word “you” refers to the people of Jerusalem. This could mean: (1) “Yahweh of hosts will come to help you” or (2) “Yahweh of hosts will come to punish you.” (See: **Forms of You (p.1408)**) (See: **Forms of You (p.1408)**)

## Isaiah 29:7

### It will be like a dream, a vision of the night

The phrase “a vision of the night” is the same thing as “a dream.” The two phrases emphasize that soon it will be like the invading army was never there. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-doublet\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-simile\]\]](#)) (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**)

### A horde of all the nations

Alternate translation: “Large armies from all the nations”

### fight against Ariel

The name “Ariel” is another name for Jerusalem, and it represents the people who live there. See how you translated “Ariel” in [Isaiah 29:1](#). Alternate translation: “fight against the people of Ariel” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### her stronghold. They will attack her and her fortifications to press upon her

The word “her” refers to Ariel which represents the people who live there. Alternate translation: “their stronghold. They will attack the city of Ariel and its defenses and cause the people to be in great distress” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 29:8

### **It will be like when a hungry man dreams he is eating & his thirst not quenched**

These similes mean that the enemy will expect victory but they will fail because God will not allow them to conquer Jerusalem. (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

### **Yes, so will be the great number of nations that fights against Mount Zion**

Here "Mount Zion" represents the people who live there. Alternate translation: "Yes, this will be what happens to the armies from the nations who fight against the people who live on Mount Zion" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 29:9

### Astonish yourselves and be astonished

The word “yourselves” refers to the people of Jerusalem. Why they are astonished can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “Be astonished at what I am telling you” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-explicit\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-doublet\]\]](#)) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### blind yourselves and be blind

The people ignoring what Yahweh says is spoken of as if they would make themselves blind. Alternate translation: “keep being ignorant and spiritually blind to what I am showing you” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### Be drunk, but not with wine; stagger, but not with beer

The people being senseless and not understanding what Yahweh is doing is spoken of as if they were drunk. Alternate translation: “Be senseless like a drunk person, but it is not because you have drank too much wine or beer” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 29:10

### **For Yahweh has poured out on you the spirit of deep sleep**

Here “the spirit of” means “to have the characteristic of” being asleep. Yahweh causing the people to be asleep is spoken of as if “the spirit” were a liquid that he poured out on the people. Also “deep sleep” is a metaphor that means the people are senseless and cannot understand what Yahweh is doing. Alternate translation: “The reason you are senseless is because Yahweh has caused you to be spiritually asleep” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### **He has closed your eyes, the prophets, and has covered your heads, the seers**

Yahweh causing the people to be senseless and not to understand what he is doing is spoken of as if he closed their eyes and covered their heads so they could not see. Alternate translation: “It is as though Yahweh has closed the eyes of the prophets and covered the heads of the seers” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## **Isaiah 29:11**

### **All revelation has become to you as the words of a book that is sealed**

The other prophets in Jerusalem are unable to hear or understand God's message. Alternate translation: "All that Yahweh has revealed is to you like a sealed book" (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

### **is sealed, which men might give to one who is learned**

This can be stated as a new sentence. Alternate translation: "is sealed. A person may take the sealed book to someone who can read"

## Isaiah 29:12

### If the book is given to one who cannot read

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "If a person takes the book to someone who cannot read" (See:

**Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 29:13

### **This people comes close to me with their mouths and honors me with their lips**

The words “mouths” and “lips” represent what people say. Here it also represents saying something but not truly meaning it. Alternate translation: “The people of Jerusalem pretend to worship me and honor me with what they say” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### **but their heart is far from me**

Here “heart” is a metonym that represents a person’s thoughts and emotions. The people not being truly devoted to Yahweh is spoken of as if their hearts were far away from him. Alternate translation: “but they do not honor me in their thoughts” or “but they are not truly devoted to me” (See: [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### **Their honor for me is only a commandment of men that has been taught**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “They honor me only because that is what people tell them to do” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)



## Isaiah 29:14

**Therefore, see, I will proceed to do a marvelous thing among this people,  
wonder after wonder**

Alternate translation: "Therefore, look and see! I am going to do wonderful and marvelous things among you that you will not be able to explain"

**The wisdom of their wise men will perish, and the understanding of their  
prudent men will disappear**

Both of these statements mean the same thing. Yahweh showing that the wise people cannot understand or explain what Yahweh does is spoken of as if their wisdom and understanding will vanish. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

## Isaiah 29:15

### General Information:

## General Information:

This may be Isaiah speaking or it may continue Yahweh's speech in 29:13-14.

### who deeply hide their plans from Yahweh

People trying to make plans without Yahweh knowing about it is spoken of as if they hide their plans in a deep place where Yahweh cannot see. Alternate translation: "who try to hide their plans from Yahweh" or "who try to keep Yahweh from finding out what they are planning to do" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### whose deeds are in darkness

It is implied that they are secretly doing evil things. Alternate translation: "who do evil things in the dark so no one can see them" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### Who sees us, and who knows us?

They use a question to emphasize that they believe no one knows what they are doing. Alternate translation: "No one, not even Yahweh, sees us or knows what we are doing!" (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

## Isaiah 29:16

### You turn things upside down

This is an idiom that means to distort what is true. Alternate translation: “You make things opposite of the way they should be” or “You distort the truth” (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

### Should the potter be considered like clay, so that the thing that is made should say about him who made it & “He does not understand”?

Yahweh who created humans is spoken of as if he were a potter and humans were the clay. This metaphor emphasizes that it is foolish for humans to reject or criticize the one who created them. Alternate translation: “Should you consider me, your maker, to be like the clay rather than the potter? It is as if a potter created something, and that thing said about the potter, ‘He did not make me,’ or ‘He does not understand.’” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### Should the potter be considered like clay & “He does not understand”?

This question is used to scold the people of Jerusalem. Alternate translation: “Obviously, the potter should not be considered like clay ... ‘He does not understand.’” (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

## Isaiah 29:17

### Lebanon will be turned into a field, and the field will become a forest

This could mean: (1) this is literal and Yahweh will cause the places where trees grew wild in Lebanon to become fruitful fields or (2) this is a metaphor and the large forests of Lebanon represent powerful oppressors, and the crops that grow in the field and become a forest are the common people who are suffering. This means Yahweh will humble those who are powerful, but he will honor those who are suffering. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### Lebanon will be turned into a field

Here "Lebanon" represents the large cedar forests in Lebanon. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "God will turn the mighty forests of Lebanon into a field" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 29:18

**the deaf will hear the words of a book, and the eyes of the blind will see out of the deep darkness**

This could mean: (1) this is literal and Yahweh will cause deaf people to hear and blind people to see or (2) this is a metaphor that means Yahweh will enable the people to hear and understand his message or (3) it may mean both options 1 and 2. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

**the eyes of the blind**

Here "eyes" represents the whole person. Alternate translation: "those who are blind" (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

## Isaiah 29:19

**The oppressed will again rejoice in Yahweh, and the poor among men will rejoice in the Holy One of Israel**

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. Alternate translation: "The poor and oppressed people will again be happy because of what Yahweh, the Holy One of Israel, has done" (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

## Isaiah 29:20

### For the ruthless will cease

The nominal adjective “the ruthless” can be stated as an adjective. Alternate translation: “For the ruthless people will cease” or “For there will no longer be cruel people” (See: **Nominal Adjectives (p.1452)**) (See: **Nominal Adjectives (p.1452)**)

### the scoffer will vanish

The nominal adjective “the scoffer” can be stated as a verb. Alternate translation: “those who scoff will vanish” or “the people who mock will disappear” (See: **Nominal Adjectives (p.1452)**) (See: **Nominal Adjectives (p.1452)**)

### All those who love to do evil will be eliminated

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “Yahweh will eliminate all those who love to do evil” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 29:21

### who by a word make a man out to be an offender

This refers to giving testimony in court against someone. Alternate translation: “who testify against a man and make him out to be an offender” or “who say in court that an innocent man is guilty of doing something wrong” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### They lay a snare for him who seeks justice at the gate and put the righteous down with empty lies

The evil people doing anything they can to stop a good person is spoken of as if the evil people set a trap like a hunter catching his prey. Alternate translation: “They lie and try to stop those who want to do what is fair and right” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### who seeks justice at the gate

The city gate was often the place where the city leaders made official decisions.



## Isaiah 29:22

### who redeemed Abraham

This possibly refers to when Yahweh called Abraham from his home country and sent him to the promised land. (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### Jacob will no longer & his face

Here “Jacob” represents his descendants. Alternate translation: “Jacob’s descendants will no longer ... their faces” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### nor will his face be pale

This is an idiom that means he will no longer be afraid. Alternate translation: “nor will he be afraid” (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

## Isaiah 29:23

### he sees his children

The words “he” and “his” speak of Jacob (verse 22) and represent his descendants. Alternate translation: “Jacob’s descendants will no longer ... their faces ... they see their children” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### But when he sees his children, the work of my hands

Here “hands” represents Yahweh’s power and action. Alternate translation: “When they see all the children I have given them and all that I have done” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### they will make my name holy

Here “name” represents Yahweh. Alternate translation: “they will honor me” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### They will make holy the name of the Holy One of Jacob

Here “name” represents Yahweh. Yahweh refers to himself as “the Holy One of Jacob.” Alternate translation: “They will honor me, the Holy One of Jacob” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-123person\]\]](#)) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### of the God of Israel

Yahweh refers to himself as “the God of Israel.” Alternate translation: “of me, the God of Israel” (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1406)**) (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1406)**)

## Isaiah 29:24

### Those who err in spirit

Here “spirit” represents a person’s inner being. Alternate translation: “Those who are wrong in what they think” or “Those who are wrong in their attitude” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### will gain understanding

This can be made more explicit to explain what they will understand. Alternate translation: “will begin to understand Yahweh and his laws” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### complainers will learn knowledge

This can be made more explicit to explain what knowledge they will learn. Alternate translation: “those who complain will begin to know that what Yahweh teaches them is true” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

## Isaiah 30

### Isaiah 30 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in this chapter.

This chapter continues the series of “woes” against specific nations. It presents judgments against the people of Ephraim and Judah when they desired to make an alliance with Egypt. (See: [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/woe\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/judge\]\]](#))

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Negev

This is an area between Egypt and Judah. The people would have had to travel through it in order to get to Egypt. No one really lived in this area and it was known to be very dangerous.

##### Trust

The people were to trust in Yahweh. Only he could provide them with protection. The people were punished for their lack of trust when they were in trouble, but Yahweh only required that they trust him. (See: **trust**, **trusted**, **trustworthy**, **trustworthiness** (p.1533))

#### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

##### “That day”

This is a common phrase in this section of Isaiah. The chapter appears to prophesy about a time of restoration when the Messiah will reign. It pictures a time of great peace and harmony in the world. The translator does not need to add an explanation, but should try to maintain the tense of the original text, as a future or uncompleted action. (See: [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/restore\]\]](#), [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/prophet\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/christ\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/fulfill\]\]](#))

## Isaiah 30:1

### the rebellious children

Yahweh speaks about his people as if they were his children. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### this is Yahweh's declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. Alternate translation: "this is what Yahweh has declared" or "this is what I, Yahweh, have declared" (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1406)**) (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1406)**)

### They make plans, but not from me

This can be reworded so that If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **plans**, you can express the same idea with the verb "plan." Alternate translation: "They plan to do things, but they do not ask me what I want them to do" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**)

### but they were not directed by my Spirit

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "but my Spirit did not direct them" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### they add sin to sin

Continuing to sin is spoken of as if sins were objects that could be stacked on one another. Alternate translation: "they continue to sin more and more" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 30:2

### They seek protection from Pharaoh

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **protection**, you can express the same idea with the verb “protect.” Alternate translation: “They ask Pharaoh to protect them” (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**)

### take refuge in the shadow of Egypt

Egypt’s protection from enemy armies is spoken of as if it were a shadow that protects someone from the burning heat of the sun. Alternate translation: “they rely on the Egyptians to keep them safe” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 30:3

### **Therefore Pharaoh's protection will be your shame, and the refuge in Egypt's shade, your humiliation**

This can be reworded so that the abstract nouns "protection," "shame," and "humiliation" are expressed as adjectives or verbs. Alternate translation: "Therefore you will be ashamed because you relied on Pharaoh to protect you; you will be humiliated because you relied on the Egyptians to keep you safe" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**)

### **the refuge in Egypt's shade**

Egypt's protection from enemy armies is spoken of as if it were a shadow that protects someone from the burning heat of the sun. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## **Isaiah 30:4**

### **their princes**

Here “princes” mean an official or ambassador, not necessarily sons of the king.

### **their & their**

belonging to the people of Judah

### **Zoan & Hanes**

These were cities in the northern part of Egypt. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

### **have come to Hanes**

Here “come” can be stated as “gone.” (See: **Go and Come (p.1411)**) (See: **Go and Come (p.1411)**)



## **Isaiah 30:5**

### **They & them**

These words refer to the people of Judah.

### **because of a people**

Alternate translation: "because of the people of Egypt"

## **Isaiah 30:6**

### **A declaration**

Alternate translation: "This is what Yahweh declares"

### **of the lioness and the lion, the viper and fiery flying serpent**

This refers to these types of animals in general. Alternate translation: "where lionesses and lions dwell, and where there are vipers and serpents" (See: **Generic Noun Phrases (p.1409)**) (See: **Generic Noun Phrases (p.1409)**)

### **fiery flying serpent**

Here the word "fiery" probably refers to the serpent's poisonous bite and the word "flying" refers to its quick movements. See how you translated this in [Isaiah 14:29](#).

### **they carry their riches**

Alternate translation: "the people of Judah carry their riches"

## Isaiah 30:7

### I have called her Rahab, who sits still

There were popular stories about a sea monster named Rahab. The name Rahab means “strength” or “arrogance.” Alternate translation: “I call Egypt a loud boaster who does nothing” (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

## Isaiah 30:8

### Now

This word is used here to mark a break in Yahweh's declaration about Judah. Here he tells Isaiah to do something.

### in their presence

Alternate translation: "in the presence of the people of Judah"

### for the time to come

This speaks of time as if it travels and arrives somewhere. Alternate translation: "for a future time" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 30:9

### lying children, children who will not hear the instruction of Yahweh

This speaks of Yahweh's people as if they were his children. This can be translated as a new sentence. Alternate translation: "They behave like children who lie and do not listen to what Yahweh commands" (See: **Metaphor (p. 1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p. 1442)**)

## **Isaiah 30:10**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## Isaiah 30:11

### Turn aside from the way, stray off the path

How Yahweh wants his people to behave is spoken of as if it were a way or path on which to walk. To disobey Yahweh is spoken of as if the person strays away from Yahweh's path. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### Holy One of Israel

See how you translated this name in [Isaiah 1:4](#).

## Isaiah 30:12

### Holy One of Israel

See how you translated this name in [Isaiah 1:4](#).

### you reject this word

Alternate translation: "you reject this message"

### trust in oppression and deceit and lean on it

This could mean: (1) the leaders of Judah are trusting in the Egyptian leaders who rule by oppressing and deceiving others or (2) the leaders of Judah have oppressed and deceived their own people in order to take their money and send it to the Egyptians leaders as payment for protection. (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### lean on it

Here the word "it" refers to "oppression and deceit." Alternate translation: "lean on them" (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1406)**) (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1406)**)

### lean on

This is an idiom that means to trust or rely on something. (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)



## Isaiah 30:13

### so this sin will be to you like a broken part & in an instant

This simile means that God will destroy the people of Judah suddenly because of their sin. (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

### like a broken part ready to fall

It is understood that this is a broken part of a wall. Alternate translation: “like a broken part of a wall that is ready to fall” (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**) (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**)

### whose fall will happen suddenly

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **fall**, you can express the same idea with the verb “fall.” Alternate translation: “that will suddenly fall” (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**)

### suddenly, in an instant

These mean the same thing and emphasize how quickly the wall will fall. (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**) (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**)

## Isaiah 30:14

### General Information:

## General Information:

Isaiah describes how Yahweh will destroy the people of Judah ([Isaiah 30:12-13](#)).

### He will break it

Here “it” refers to the part in the wall that is about to fall. The part in the wall is a metaphor that represents the people of Judah and their sin mentioned in [Isaiah 30:12-13](#). (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### as a potter’s vessel is broken

This simile means that the piece of wall will break as quickly and completely as a clay jar that falls to the ground. (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

### potter

A potter is a person who makes pots and jars out of clay.

### there will not be found

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “no one will be able to find” or “there will not be” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### a shard with which to scrape

Alternate translation: “a shard big enough to scrape”

### fire from the hearth

The word “fire” here refers here to ashes. Alternate translation: “ashes from the fireplace” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 30:15

### Holy One of Israel

See how you translated this name in [Isaiah 1:4](#).

### In returning and resting you will be saved

Repenting is spoken of as if it were physically returning to Yahweh. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "I will save you from your enemies if you will repent and rest knowing that I will take care of you" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### resting

It is implied that the people rest because they trust that Yahweh will take care of them. (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### in quietness and in trust will be your strength

Quietness here refers to not being anxious and worried. It is implied that they are not worried because they trust in Yahweh. Alternate translation: "You will be strong if you are quiet and trust in me" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

## Isaiah 30:16

### we will flee on horses

Apparently these are horses that the people of Judah received from the Egyptians. (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

## Isaiah 30:17

### **One thousand will flee at the threat of one; at the threat of five you will flee**

The word “solider” is understood. Alternate translation: “One thousand soldiers will flee at the threat of one enemy soldier; at the threat of five enemy soldiers all of your soldiers will flee” (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**) (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**)

### **One thousand**

“1,000” (See: **Numbers (p.1454)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1454)**)

### **until your remnant will be like a flagstaff on the top of a mountain, or like a flag on a hill**

This simile means there will be so few people left that they will be like a single flag on top of a hill. (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

## **Isaiah 30:18**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## **Isaiah 30:19**

**you will & to you & answer you**

Here “you” refers to the people who will live in Zion.

**he will answer you**

Alternate translation: “he will help you”

## **Isaiah 30:20**

### **the bread of adversity and the water of affliction**

Here “bread” and “water” make up the diet of a very poor person. The whole phrase represents the hard times and poverty of the people. (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### **your teacher**

This refers to Yahweh.

### **you will see your teacher with your own eyes**

Here “eyes” represents the whole person. Alternate translation: “you yourselves will see your teacher” (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)



## **Isaiah 30:21**

### **Your ears will hear**

Here "ears" represents the whole person. Alternate translation: "You will hear" (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### **a word behind you saying**

Alternate translation: "him speaking behind you saying"

### **This is the way, walk in it**

How Yahweh wants his people to behave is spoken of as if it were a way or path. To obey Yahweh is spoken of as if it were a person walking on his path. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### **when you turn to the right or when you turn to the left**

Disobeying Yahweh is spoken of as if the person turned left or right off of Yahweh's path. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 30:22

### You will throw them away like a menstrual rag

This simile means they will throw away their idols like they were garbage. (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

### You will say to them, "Get out of here."

This speaks of the idols as if they could hear and get up and leave a place. Yahweh means that the people will no longer need or want the idols. (See: **Personification (p.1464)**) (See: **Personification (p.1464)**)

## **Isaiah 30:23**

### **He will give**

Alternate translation: "Yahweh will give"

### **bread with abundance from the ground**

Here "bread" represents food in general. Alternate translation: "he will cause the ground to produce plenty of food for you to eat" (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### **In that day**

Alternate translation: "At that time"

## Isaiah 30:24

### that has been winnowed with a shovel and a fork

Shovels and forks were used to throw the grain in the air so the wind would blow away the chaff, leaving only the part that could be eaten. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "that you have winnowed with a shovel and a pitchfork" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## **Isaiah 30:25**

### **On every high mountain & every high hill**

Isaiah describes what will be an ideal situation after Yahweh rescues his people. Although the language may be exaggerated, you should translate this just as Isaiah described it.

### **in the day of the great slaughter when the towers fall**

Alternate translation: “when Yahweh slaughters your enemies and causes their strong towers to fall”

### **in the day**

Alternate translation: “at the time”

## Isaiah 30:26

**The light of the moon will be like the light of the sun, and the light of the sun will be seven times brighter, like the sunlight of seven days**

Isaiah describes what will be an ideal situation after Yahweh rescues his people. Although the language may be exaggerated, you should translate this just as Isaiah described it.

**the light of the sun will be seven times brighter, like the sunlight of seven days**

Alternate translation: “the sun will shine as bright as seven suns” or “the sun will give as much light in one day as it normally does in seven days”

**Yahweh will bind up the breaking of his people and heal the bruises of his wounding them**

Yahweh comforting his people and causing their suffering to end is spoken of as if he would put bandages on their wounds. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 30:27

### the name of Yahweh & like a devouring fire

Yahweh being extremely angry is spoken of as if he were a large fire. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### the name of Yahweh comes

Here “name” represents Yahweh. Alternate translation: “Yahweh comes” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### His lips are full of fury, and his tongue is like a devouring fire

Here “lips” and “tongue” are metonyms that represent Yahweh speaking. And, Yahweh speaks with so much anger and power that it is spoken of as if his tongue were a fire. Alternate translation: “When he speaks his fury is like a fire that destroys everything” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-synecdoche\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-simile\]\]](#)) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

## Isaiah 30:28

### His breath is like an overflowing torrent

This compares the air coming out of Yahweh's mouth to a flood to emphasize its power to destroy. (See: **Simile (p. 1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

### to sift the nations with the sieve of destruction

Yahweh separating the people of the nations and destroying the wicked people is spoken of as if Yahweh puts the nations in a sieve. This can be translated as a new sentence. Alternate translation: "Yahweh will separate and destroy the wicked people of the nations" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### His breath is a bridle in the jaws of the peoples to cause them to wander away

Yahweh having the power to cause people's plans to fail or causing them to be destroyed is spoken of as if his breath were a bridle that steers people off the correct path. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### a bridle in the jaws of the peoples

A "bridle" is a device that people put over a horse's head to guide it. The bridle contains a small piece called a "bit" that goes in the horse's mouth. Alternate translation: "a bridle on the heads of the peoples" or "a bit in the jaws of the peoples" (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1490)**) (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1490)**)



## Isaiah 30:29

### You will have a song

This can be reworded so the noun “song” is stated as a verb. Alternate translation: “You will sing”

### as in the night when a holy feast is observed

This simile emphasizes how happy the people will be. (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

### when a holy feast is observed

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “when you observe a holy feast” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### gladness of heart

Here “heart” represents a person’s inner being. Alternate translation: “you will be glad” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### as when one goes & Rock of Israel

This simile emphasizes how happy the people will be. (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

### to the Rock of Israel

Yahweh having the power to protect his people is spoken of as if he were a rock on which the people could climb and escape from enemies. Alternate translation: “to Israel’s protective rock” or “which is like a protective rock for Israel” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 30:30

### show the motion of his arm

Here “arm” represents the power of God. It is implied that Yahweh will show his power by destroying his people’s enemies. Alternate translation: “show that he is powerful by destroying your enemies” (See: [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-explicit\]\]](#)) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### in storming anger and flames of fire

Yahweh’s anger is spoken of as if it were a storm or a fire. Alternate translation: “in anger that is like a storm and flames of fire” or “in great anger” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### with windstorm, rainstorm, and hailstones

Alternate translation: “with storms full of wind, rain, and hail”

### hailstones

hard pieces of ice that fall from the sky like rain

## Isaiah 30:31

### For at the voice of Yahweh, Assyria will be shattered

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "For when Yahweh speaks he will shatter the soldiers of Assyria" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### Assyria will be shattered

Isaiah speaks of Assyria's fear as if Assyria is an object that Yahweh's voice shatters. Alternate translation: "Assyria will be terrified" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### Assyria

Here this represents the soldiers of Assyria. (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 30:32

### Every stroke of the appointed rod that Yahweh will lay on them

Yahweh causing an army to defeat the Assyrians is spoken of as if Yahweh would hit the Assyrians with a rod. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### will be accompanied

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “the people of Judah will accompany it” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### tambourines

This is a musical instrument with a head like a drum that can be hit and with pieces of metal around the side that sound when the instrument is shaken. See how you translated this in [Isaiah 5:12](#).

### he battles and fights with them

Yahweh causing the enemy army to defeat the Assyrians is spoken of as if Yahweh were a warrior who would fight along with the enemy army. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 30:33

### For a place of burning was prepared long ago

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “For long ago Yahweh prepared a place for burning” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### a place of burning

This phrase is the meaning of the word “Topheth.” Topheth is a place in the Hinnom Valley, south of Jerusalem, where at one time people burned their children as sacrifices to a false god. (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### it is prepared for the king

It is implied that this refers to the king of Assyria. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “Yahweh prepared it for the king of Assyria” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-explicit\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### The pile is ready with a fire and much wood

Alternate translation: “The pile is ready with much wood to make a fire”

### The breath of Yahweh, like a stream of brimstone, will set it on fire

This speaks of Yahweh’s breath as if it were a river of fire that will set the pile on fire. (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

## Isaiah 31

### Isaiah 31 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in this chapter.

This chapter continues the series of “woes” against specific nations. It presents judgments against the people of Ephraim and Judah when they desired to make an alliance with Egypt. It also prophesies the destruction of Assyria. (See: [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/woe\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/judge\]\]](#) and **prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess** (p.1525))

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Trust

The people were to trust in Yahweh. Only he could provide them with protection. They were punished for their lack of trust when they were in trouble, but Yahweh only required that they trust him. (See: **trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness** (p.1533))

#### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

##### “That day”

This is a common phrase in this section of Isaiah. This chapter appears to prophesy about a time of restoration when the Messiah will reign. It pictures a time of great peace and harmony in the world. The translator does not need to add an explanation, but should try to maintain the tense of the original text, as a future or uncompleted action. (See: [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/restore\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/fulfill\]\]](#))

##### Israel

The use of the term “Israel” in this chapter is in reference to the northern kingdom of Israel exclusively.

## **Isaiah 31:1**

### **go down to Egypt**

The phrase “go down” is used here because Egypt is lower in Elevation than Jerusalem.

### **those who go down**

Alternate translation: “those people of Judah who go down”

### **lean on horses**

This speaks about people relying on their horses to help them as if they were leaning on their horses. Alternate translation: “rely on their horses” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### **Holy One of Israel**

See how you translated this name in [Isaiah 1:4](#).

### **nor do they seek Yahweh**

Alternate translation: “nor do they ask Yahweh to help them”

## Isaiah 31:2

### he will bring disaster

Here the word "bring" means to "cause." Alternate translation: "he will cause disasters to happen" (See: **Idiom (p. 1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

### will not retract his words

The phrase "retract his words" speaks of a person not fulfilling what they said they will do as if the words that he had said were something that he could pull back to himself. Here it says that Yahweh will not do this, meaning he will fulfill what he has said. Alternate translation: "he will do what he said he would do" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### arise against

Alternate translation: "punish"

### evil house

This refers to evil people who live there. Alternate translation: "all who do evil things" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)



## Isaiah 31:3

### Egypt is a man

Here Egypt refers to the soldiers of Egypt. Alternate translation: “The soldiers of Egypt are men” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### their horses flesh and not spirit

This means that their horses are only horses and not spiritual beings. Alternate translation: “their horses are only horses; they are not powerful spirits” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### When Yahweh reaches out with his hand

The term “hand” is often used in reference to God’s power and action. Alternate translation: “When Yahweh uses his power against them” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### both the one who helps will stumble, and the one who is helped will fall

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. Stumbling and falling are metaphors of failing. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “these two things will happen: I will destroy Egypt, who helps you, and I will destroy you, whom Egypt helps” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### the one who is helped

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “the one who is seeking help” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 31:4

### General Information:

## General Information:

Yahweh speaks to Isaiah.

### As a lion & thus Yahweh of hosts

"A lion ... in the same way Yahweh of hosts." Here Yahweh speaks of how he will defend the people who belong to him and not be scared away by comparing himself to a lion who guards its prey. (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

### thus Yahweh of hosts will descend & that hill

It may be more clear if you move the last line to before the first line: "Yahweh of hosts will descend to fight on Mount Zion, on that hill, as a lion, even a young lion"

### a lion, even a young lion

"a female lion or killer lion." This is a doublet with both phrase referring to a fierce lion. Alternate translation: "a lion" (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**) (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**)

### growls

warns others to stay away

### when a group of shepherds is called out against it

The phrase "called out against it" means to be sent out to chase the lion away. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "when someone sends shepherds to chase the lion away" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-idiom\]\]](#) or [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

### from their sound

The shepherds would make loud noises to try and chase away the lion. Alternate translation: "from the loud noises that they make" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### will descend

"will come down." This refers to descending from heaven. Alternate translation: "will come down from heaven" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

## on Mount Zion, on that hill

Both of the phrases refer to Mount Zion. Alternate translation: “on Mount Zion” (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

## Isaiah 31:5

### Like birds in flight, so Yahweh of hosts will protect Jerusalem

Here the way that Yahweh protects Jerusalem is compared to the way that a mother bird protects her baby birds in their nest. (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

### he will protect and rescue as he passes over it and preserves it

This speaks of how Yahweh protects and rescues Jerusalem, describing him as a bird that flies over the city. Alternate translation: "he will protect and rescue the city from its enemies" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### Yahweh of hosts

See how you translated this phrase in [Isaiah 1:9](#).

### Jerusalem

This refers to the people who live there. Alternate translation: "the people of Jerusalem" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## **Isaiah 31:6**

**Return to him from whom you have deeply turned away**

Alternate translation: "Return to the one against whom you have rebelled"

## Isaiah 31:7

### that your own hands have sinfully made

Here the people are referred to by their “hands” the emphasize that they made something with their hands.

Alternate translation: “that you have sinned by making with you own hands” (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

## Isaiah 31:8

### Assyria will fall by the sword; a sword not wielded by man will consume him

“Sword” refers to military might. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “God’s sword, and not a man’s sword, will destroy the Assyrian army” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### He will flee

Alternate translation: “The Assyrians will flee”

### his young men will be forced to do hard labor

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “enemies will capture their young men and force them to do hard labor” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 31:9

### They will lose all confidence because of terror

The word “confidence” can be expressed with the adjective “confident.” The word “terror” can be expressed with the adjective “terrified.” Alternate translation: “They will no longer be confident because they are so terrified” (See:

**Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**)

### his princes

Alternate translation: “their leaders”

### whose fire is in Zion and whose firepot is in Jerusalem

Both of these clauses mean the same thing and are used together for emphasis. Here God’s presence and his power to judge and destroy are spoken of as if they were a fire. Alternate translation: “whose powerful presence is in Zion” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#)) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)



## Isaiah 32

### Isaiah 32 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in this chapter.

### Special concepts in this chapter

### Reign of the Messiah

This chapter appears to prophesy about a time of restoration when the Messiah will reign. It pictures a time of great peace and harmony in the world. The translator does not need to add an explanation, but should try to maintain the tense of the original text, as a future or uncompleted action. (See: [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/restore\]\]](#), [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/prophet\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/christ\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/fulfill\]\]](#))

## **Isaiah 32:1**

### **Look**

This word is used here to draw peoples' attention to what is said next. Alternate translation: "Listen"

**Isaiah 32:2****Each one will be like a shelter from the wind and a refuge from the storm**

This compares the king and princes who protect the people to a shelter. Alternate translation: “the rulers will protect the people like a shelter does in a storm” (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

**like streams of water in a dry place**

This is another comparison that means that the rulers will provide for the needs of the people. Alternate translation: “they will provide for the people like streams of water in a dry place” (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

**like the shade of a great rock in a land of weariness**

This is another comparison that means that the rulers will provide comfort and rest for the people. Alternate translation: “they will provide rest for the people like a huge rock gives shade to weary people” (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

## Isaiah 32:3

### Then the eyes & attentively

Both of these phrases emphasize that the leaders will enable the people to understand God's truth. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### will not be dim

Alternate translation: "will see clearly"

## Isaiah 32:4

### The rash & the stutterer

This refers to people who act rashly and people who stutter. Alternate translation: "The rash person ... the stuttering person" (See: **Nominal Adjectives (p.1452)**) (See: **Nominal Adjectives (p.1452)**)

## Isaiah 32:5

### The fool will no longer be called honorable

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “No one will give honor to the fool” (See: **Active or Passive (p. 1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### nor the deceiver called principled

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. “The deceiver” refers to a person who is deceptive. Alternate translation: “nor will anyone show respect to the person who deceives” (See: [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-nominaladj\]\]](#)) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 32:6

### For the fool speaks folly, and his heart plans evil

“The fool” refers to foolish people. Also, “folly” and “evil” may be expressed as adjectives. Alternate translation: “For the foolish person says foolish things and his heart plans evil things” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-nominaladj\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-abstractnouns\]\]](#)) (See: **Nominal Adjectives (p.1452)**)

### his heart plans evil

Here the foolish person is referred to by his heart to emphasize his inner thoughts. Alternate translation: “he plans evil things in his heart” (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### He makes

The word “he” refers to the foolish person.

### the hungry empty

“The hungry” refers to hungry people. They are hungry because they have empty stomachs. Alternate translation: “the hungry person have an empty stomach” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-nominaladj\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-explicit\]\]](#)) (See: **Nominal Adjectives (p.1452)**)

### the thirsty he causes to lack drink

“The thirsty” refers to people who are thirsty. Alternate translation: “he causes the thirsty person to have nothing to drink” (See: **Nominal Adjectives (p.1452)**) (See: **Nominal Adjectives (p.1452)**)

## Isaiah 32:7

### The deceiver's

This refers to a person who deceives others. Alternate translation: "The deceptive person's" (See: **Nominal Adjectives (p.1452)**) (See: **Nominal Adjectives (p.1452)**)

### to ruin the poor with lies

"The poor" refers to poor people. Also, the phrase "to ruin" does not mean to kill them but to harm them by telling lies about them. Alternate translation: "to harm the poor people by telling lies" (See: **Nominal Adjectives (p.1452)**) (See: **Nominal Adjectives (p.1452)**)



## Isaiah 32:8

### he will stand

This means that he will be successful. Alternate translation: “he will be successful” (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

## Isaiah 32:9

### Rise up

Alternate translation: "Stand up" or "Pay attention"

### at ease

Alternate translation: "secure" or "carefree"

### my voice

Isaiah refers to himself by his voice to emphasize what he says. Alternate translation: "me speak" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 32:10

### **your confidence will be broken**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Also, Isaiah speaks of them no longer being confident as if their confidence were a physical object that is broken. Alternate translation: “you will no longer be confident” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### **the grape harvest will fail**

This means that there would not be good grapes to harvest. Alternate translation: “there will be no grapes for you to harvest” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### **the ingathering will not come**

Alternate translation: “the time for gathering crops will not happen”

## Isaiah 32:11

### Tremble

shake from fear

### at ease

Alternate translation: “secure” or “carefree”

### take off your fine clothes and make yourselves bare

Here “bare” does not necessarily mean naked, but to wear minimal covering such as undergarments. Alternate translation: “take off you fine clothes and make yourself unclothed” or “take off your fancy clothes” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### put on sackcloth around your waists

This is an act of grieving or mourning. Alternate translation: “put sackcloth around waists as you grieve” (See: **Symbolic Action (p.1482)**) (See: **Symbolic Action (p.1482)**)

## Isaiah 32:12

### You will wail for the pleasant fields, for the fruitful vines

This means that they will cry out loudly as they grieve what happens to their fruitful fields and vines. Alternate translation: "You will wail because of what happens to your pleasant fields and fruitful vines" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

## Isaiah 32:13

### thorns and briers

See how you translated this phrase in [Isaiah 5:6](#).

### the once joyful houses

Here the houses are described as joyful because of the joyful people in them. Alternate translation: “your houses where you were once joyful” (See: **Personification (p.1464)**) (See: **Personification (p.1464)**)

### the city of revelry

“your joyful city.” The word “revelry” means celebrating and partying.

## Isaiah 32:14

### For the palace will be forsaken, the crowded city will be deserted

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “For the people will forsake the palace and the crowds will abandon the city” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### the hill

This refers to the fort built on the top of the hill. Alternate translation: “the fort on the hill” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### the hill and the watchtower will become caves

This speaks of the fort and the watchtower being abandoned as if they became caves. Alternate translation: “the hill and the watchtower will become abandoned and empty” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### a joy of wild donkeys, a pasture of flocks

This means the these animals will enjoy the grass that grows among the abandon fort and watchtower. Alternate translation: “the wild donkeys and the flocks of sheep will eat the grass there” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### forever

This is an exaggeration for a very long time. Alternate translation: “an extremely long time” (See: **Hyperbole (p.1420)**) (See: **Hyperbole (p.1420)**)

## Isaiah 32:15

### until the Spirit is poured

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “until Yahweh pours the Spirit” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### the Spirit is poured on us

This speaks of Yahweh giving him Spirit to his people as if his Spirit were a liquid that he would pour on them. Alternate translation: “the Spirit is given to us” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### from on high

Here heaven is referred to as “on high.” Alternate translation: “from heaven” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### the fruitful field is considered as a forest

This can be written in active form. This compares how overly bountiful the fruitful fields are by comparing them to a thick, dense forest. Alternate translation: “people will say that the fruitful fields have grown thick like a forest” or “the fruitful fields will be overly bountiful” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-simile\]\]](#)) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)



## Isaiah 32:16

### justice will reside & righteousness will live

Isaiah describes “justice” and “righteousness” as a person who lives in these places. This means the people who live in these places will do what is just and right. Alternate translation: “people will act justly in the wilderness and people will act righteously in the fertile fields (See: **Personification (p.1464)**) (See: **Personification (p.1464)**)

## Isaiah 32:17

**The work of righteousness will be peace; and the result of righteousness, quietness and confidence forever**

These two phrases are parallel and both give results of righteousness. These can be combined. Alternate translation: "The result of people acting righteously is that there will be peace, and quietness, and confidence forever" (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

## **Isaiah 32:18**

### **habitation**

place where people live

## Isaiah 32:19

### hails

See how you translated this in [Isaiah 28:2](#).

### **the forest is destroyed, and the city is completely annihilated**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “it destroys the forest and completely destroys the city” (See:

**Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

**Isaiah 32:20**

**you who sow beside all the streams will be blessed, you who send out your ox and donkey to graze**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. This refers to Yahweh blessing all of his people and speaks of the things that are normal for his people to do. Alternate translation: "Yahweh will bless you, as you plant your crops in fields alongside the streams and as you send out your ox and donkey to graze in the pasture" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-explicit\]\]](#)) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 33

### Isaiah 33 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in this chapter.

This chapter continues the series of “woes.” It speaks against ungodly or evil people in general. (See: [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/woe\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/godly\]\]](#) and **evil, wicked, unpleasant (p.1501)**)

## Isaiah 33:1

### General Information:

## General Information:

Isaiah speaks in poetry for Yahweh to the Assyrians. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### who has not been destroyed

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "whom others have not destroyed" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### you will be destroyed

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "others will destroy you" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### they will betray

Alternate translation: "others will betray"

## Isaiah 33:2

### be our arm

Here Yahweh's arm refers to his strength. This speaks of Yahweh strengthening them as if Yahweh would use his strength to act for them. Alternate translation: "give us strength" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### every morning

This refers to the whole day, not just the morning. Alternate translation: "every day" (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### our salvation

This understood verb "be" may be supplied. Also, the word "salvation" may be expressed with the verb "save." Alternate translation: "be our salvation" or "save us" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-abstractnouns\]\]](#)) (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**)

### in the time of trouble

This refers to the times when they are experiencing trouble. Alternate translation: ""when we have troubles" (See: **Possession (p.1466)**) (See: **Possession (p.1466)**)



## Isaiah 33:3

### At the loud noise the peoples flee

Possible meanings of **the loud noise** are: (1) it refers to Yahweh's voice. Alternate translation: "The peoples flee at the sound of your loud voice" or (2) it refers the loud sounds of Yahweh's army. Alternate translation: "The people flee at the sound of your army" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### arise

This means to begin doing something. Alternate translation: "begin acting" (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

### the nations are scattered

This can be written in active form. Alternate translation: "the nations scatter" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 33:4

### **Your spoil is gathered as the locusts gather; as locusts leap, men leap on it**

This compares how quick and eager Yahweh's people are when they gather the spoils from their enemies to the eagerness of locusts when they gather food. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Your people gather spoils from your enemies with the same fierceness as the locusts have who devour green plants" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-simile\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

## Isaiah 33:5

### General Information:

## General Information:

Isaiah speaks to the people of Judah.

### Yahweh is exalted

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Yahweh is greater than anyone else" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### He will fill Zion with justice and righteousness

This speaks of Yahweh ruling Zion with his justice and righteousness as if he were filling Zion with justice and righteousness. Alternate translation: "He will rule Zion with justice and righteousness" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 33:6

### He will be the stability in your times

This speaks of Yahweh causing his people to be secure as if he were the stability himself. The phrase “your times” refers to their lives. Alternate translation: “He will make you secure all your lives” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### abundance of salvation, wisdom, and knowledge

This refers to the things that Yahweh will give to them. If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **salvation**, you can express the same idea with the verb “save.” The abstract nouns “wisdom” and “knowledge” can be expressed with adjectives. Alternate translation: “and he will give you an abundance of salvation, wisdom, and knowledge” or “he will save you and cause you to be very wise and knowledgeable” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-abstractnouns\]\]](#)) (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**)

### the fear of Yahweh is his treasure

This speaks of fearing Yahweh as if it were a treasure that Yahweh gives his people. Alternate translation: “revering Yahweh will be like a valuable treasure that he will give to you” or “to fear Yahweh will be as valuable to you as a treasure” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 33:7

### Look

This word is used here to draw peoples' attention to what is said next. It is also used here to mark a new section in the book. Alternate translation: "Listen"

### envoys

messengers

### the diplomats hoping for peace weep bitterly

This means they weep because they do not succeed in making peace. Alternate translation: "the diplomats hope for peace but they do not succeed and so they weep bitterly" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p. 1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

## Isaiah 33:8

### The highways are deserted; there are no more travelers

Both of the phrases emphasize that there are no travelers on the highways. These can be combined and stated in active form. Alternate translation: "People no longer travel on the highways" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### Covenants are broken, witnesses are despised, and mankind is not respected

This passage may refer to general conditions of corruption in Israel, or it may refer to the nation's inability to make reliable peace treaties with Assyria. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "People break covenants that they have made, people ignore the testimony of witnesses, and people do not respect one another" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 33:9

### The land mourns and withers away

This speaks of the land becoming dry as if it were a person mourning. Alternate translation: “The land becomes dry and its plants wither away” (See: **Personification (p.1464)**) (See: **Personification (p.1464)**)

### Lebanon is ashamed and withers away

Here “Lebanon” represents Lebanon’s trees. This speaks of the trees withering and decaying as if they were a person who is ashamed. Alternate translation: “Lebanon’s trees wither and decay” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-personification\]\]](#)) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### Sharon & Bashan & Carmel

Many trees and flowers once grew in these places.

### Sharon is like a desert plain

This compares how dry Sharon is to a desert plain. Alternate translation: “Sharon is as dry as a desert plain” (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

### Bashan and Carmel shake off their leaves

Here Bashan and Carmel are represented by their trees. Alternate translation: “there are no more leaves on the trees in Bashan and Carmel” (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

## Isaiah 33:10

### will I arise

To arise or stand up is a metaphor for no longer watching and thinking and instead beginning to act. Alternate translation: "will I begin to act" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### now I will be lifted up; now I will be elevated

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. These two phrases have basically the same meaning and emphasize Yahweh being exalted. Alternate translation: "now I will exalt myself and show that I deserve for everyone to honor me" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#)) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)



## Isaiah 33:11

### You conceive chaff, and you give birth to stubble

This speaks of the Assyrians making plans as if they were conceiving and giving birth to their plans as a mother gives birth to a baby. This speaks of their plans being useless by comparing them to chaff. Alternate translation: "You make plans that are as useless as chaff and straw" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### stubble

The dry pieces of plants that are left in the ground after the stalks have been cut.

### your breath is a fire that will consume you

Here the Assyrians' plans are referred to as their "breath." This speaks of their plans causing them to die as if their plans would literally burn up their bodies. Alternate translation: "your plans will cause you to die" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 33:12

### **The peoples will be burned to lime, as thornbushes are cut down and are burned**

This compares how the peoples' dead bodies will be burned to the way thornbushes are burned. Also, If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Fire will burn the peoples' bodies to lime in the same way that a farmer cuts down thornbushes and burns them" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-simile\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

### **lime**

the ashes from burned bones

## Isaiah 33:13

**You who are far away, hear what I have done; and, you who are near, acknowledge my might**

Yahweh uses the words "far away" and "near" to mean all people. The word "might" can be expressed with the adjective "mighty." Alternate translation: "All people everywhere hear what I have done and acknowledge that I am mighty" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-merism\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-abstractnouns\]\]](#)) (See: **Merism (p.1440)**)

## Isaiah 33:14

### trembling has seized the godless ones

This speaks of the godless people trembling as if their trembling were an enemy that had seized them. Alternate translation: “the godless ones are overwhelmed with trembling” (See: **Personification (p.1464)**) (See: **Personification (p.1464)**)

### Who among us & burnings?

It is implied that the sinners in Zion ask these questions. Alternate translation: “They say, ‘Who among us ... burnings?’” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### Who among us can sojourn with a raging fire? Who among us can sojourn with everlasting burnings?

These rhetorical questions have basically the same meaning and emphasize that no one can live with fire. Here fire represents Yahweh’s judgment. Alternate translation: “No one can live with raging fire! No one can live with everlasting burns!” or “No one can live bearing Yahweh’s judgment, it is like an everlasting fire!” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-rquestion\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#)) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### sojourn

live in a place that is not one’s home

## Isaiah 33:15

### He who walks

Here walking refers to living. Alternate translation: “He who lives” (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

### who despises the gain of oppression

The noun phrase “the gain of oppression” can be expressed as a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: “who hates the riches that come from harming other people” (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**)

## Isaiah 33:16

### **this is the man who will dwell on the heights, his place of defense will be the fortress among the cliffs**

This speaks of the man being safe as if he lived in a home on a high hill. These two phrase are parallel and the second phrase describes the place where the man lives. Alternate translation: "he will be safe, like a man whose home is built on a high hill, in a rocky place that is easy to defend" (See: [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### **the heights**

This refers to a high hill or mountainside. Alternate translation: "the high hill" or "the mountainside" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### **the fortress among the cliffs**

This speaks of rocky areas that are easy to defend as if they were actually fortresses. Alternate translation: "the large piles of rocks" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### **will be in steady supply**

Alternate translation: "will always be available"

## Isaiah 33:17

### Your eyes will see & they will see

This refers the audience by their “eyes.” Alternate translation: “You will see ... you will see” (See: **Synecdoche (p. 1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### the king in his beauty

The king’s royal robes are referred to as “his beauty.” Alternate translation: “the king in his beautiful robes” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 33:18

### Your heart will recall the terror

This refers to the audience by their “hearts.” “The terror” refers to their war with the Assyrians. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “You will remember the terror that the Assyrians caused you when they attacked” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-synecdoche\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-explicit\]\]](#)) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### where is the scribe, where is he who weighed the money? Where is he who counted the towers?

These rhetorical question are asked to emphasize that the Assyrian officials are gone. These questions may be written as statements. Alternate translation: “The officers of Assyria who counted the tax money that we were forced to pay to them have disappeared! Those men who counted our towers are gone!” (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### weighed the money

Money was valuable metal; its value was determined by its weight.



## **Isaiah 33:19**

**the defiant people, a people of a strange language that you do not understand**

Alternate translation: "a fierce people who speak a language that you do not understand"

## Isaiah 33:20

### the city of our feasts

This means that they have their festival and feasts at this city. Alternate translation: “the city where we have our feasts” or “they city where we celebrate our festivals” (See: **Possession (p.1466)**) (See: **Possession (p.1466)**)

### your eyes will see

The people are referred to by their “eyes” to emphasize what they are seeing. Alternate translation: “you will see” (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### a tent that will not be removed

This speaks of Zion being secure and well establish as if it were secure tent. This can be stated in active form and written as a new sentence. Alternate translation: “it will be secure, like a tent that no one will ever remove” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### whose stakes will never be pulled up nor will any of its cords be broken

This is part of the metaphor that compares Zion to a secure tent. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “whose stakes no one will ever pull up and whose cords no one will ever break” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 33:21

### **Yahweh in majesty will be with us, in a place of broad rivers and streams**

Here “us” refers to Isaiah and includes the people of Judah. This speaks of the safety of living with Yahweh as if it were a place that has rivers around it so that enemies cannot attack it. Alternate translation: “Yahweh who is majestic will be with us, and we will be safe as if we were in a place surrounded by broad rivers” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-exclusive\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’ (p.1404)**)

### **will travel it**

Alternate translation: “will travel the river”

## Isaiah 33:22

### our & us

This refers to Isaiah and includes the people of Judah. (See: **Exclusive and Inclusive 'We' (p.1404)**) (See: **Exclusive and Inclusive 'We' (p.1404)**)

## Isaiah 33:23

### Your riggings are slack; they cannot hold the mast in place; they cannot spread the sail

This could mean: (1) The Assyrian army is like a boat that is unable to move through the water: the ropes that support the mast and sail have come loose and no longer support the mast, so the sail is useless ([Isaiah 33:1](#)) or (2) the people of Judah are no longer at war: "You have loosened the cords that supported your flagpole; the flag no longer flies" ([Isaiah 33:17-Isaiah 22](#)). (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

#### mast

tall poles that support the sail

#### sail

a large cloth that fills with wind and moves a boat through the water

### when the great spoil is divided

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "when they divide the treasure" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

#### the lame

This refers to people who are cannot walk. Alternate translation: "those who are lame" (See: **Nominal Adjectives (p.1452)**) (See: **Nominal Adjectives (p.1452)**)

## Isaiah 33:24

### **the people who live there will be forgiven for their iniquity**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Yahweh will forgive the sins of the people who live there" (See:

**Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 34

### Isaiah 34 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in this chapter.

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Destruction

There are many images used in this chapter which describe destruction. Here each of these metaphors describes complete destruction. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Prophecy

This chapter appears to prophesy about a time of restoration when the Messiah will reign. It pictures a time of great peace and harmony in the world. The translator does not need to add an explanation, but should try to maintain the tense of the original text, as a future or uncompleted action. (See: [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/restore\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/prophet\]\]](#) and **fulfill, fulfilled, carried out (p.1507)**)

## Isaiah 34:1

### General Information:

## General Information:

Yahweh is speaking in poetry. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### **The earth and all that fills it must listen, the world, and all things that come from it**

Here the earth is spoken of as being required to listen to Yahweh to emphasize that it is under Yahweh's authority. These two parallel phrases are metonyms for all the people who live in the world. Alternate translation: "In all places everywhere on earth, everyone must listen to what I say" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-personification\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#)) (See: **Personification (p.1464)**)

### **the world, and all things that come from it**

This is the second of two parallel phrases. The understood words may be supplied in this phrase. Alternate translation: "the world, and all things that come from it must listen" (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**) (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**)



## Isaiah 34:2

**he has completely destroyed them, he has handed them over to the slaughter**

Often prophets speak of things that will happen in the future as if they have already happened. This emphasizes the event will certainly happen. Alternate translation: "he will completely destroy them, he will give them over to the slaughter" (See: **Predictive Past (p.1469)**) (See: **Predictive Past (p.1469)**)

## Isaiah 34:3

### The bodies of their dead will be thrown out

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "No one will bury their dead" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### their dead

This refers to the dead people. Alternate translation: "those who died" (See: **Nominal Adjectives (p.1452)**) (See: **Nominal Adjectives (p.1452)**)

### the mountains will soak up their blood

Alternate translation: "the mountains will be covered in their blood"

## Isaiah 34:4

### the sky will be rolled up like a scroll

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. This compares what Yahweh will do to the sky to a person rolling up a scroll. Alternate translation: "Yahweh will roll up the sky in the same way that a person rolls up a scroll" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-simile\]\]](#)) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### all their stars will fade away, as the leaf fades from off the vine, and as the overripe figs from the fig tree

This emphasizes even the things in the sky that people thought would be there forever will fall as easily as a leaf. Alternate translation: "all the stars will fall from the sky like a leaf falls from a vine or a fig falls from a tree" (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

## Isaiah 34:5

### when my sword will have drunk its fill in heaven

Yahweh describes himself as a warrior bearing a sword. The phrase “drunk its fill” speaks of Yahweh’s sword as if it were a person who has eaten and become satisfied. Yahweh uses this imagery to emphasize that there will be a lot of destruction in heaven and to state its completion. Alternate translation: “when I am finished destroying things in heaven” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-personification\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### look

This word is used here to draw the listener’s attention and to have them imagine the things being said. Alternate translation: “listen” or “and then”

### it will now come down on Edom, on the people I am setting apart for destruction

The word “it” refers to Yahweh’s sword. This continues the metaphor about Yahweh destroying things with a sword. Alternate translation: “I will come to punish the people of Edom, the people whom I have set aside for me to destroy” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### on Edom

Edom refers to the people who live there. Alternate translation: “on the people of Edom” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 34:6

### The sword of Yahweh is dripping with blood and covered with fat & of rams

This speaks of Yahweh killing the people as if he were a priest sacrificing animals. He does this by describing the sword of a priest. Alternate translation: "Yahweh sacrifices them as a priest sacrifices animals, whose sword drips with the blood and fat of lambs, goats, and rams" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### For Yahweh has a sacrifice in Bozrah and a great slaughter in the land of Edom

The words "sacrifice" and "slaughter" may be expressed here as verbs. Alternate translation: "For Yahweh will sacrifice many people in Bozrah and kill many people in the land of Edom" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**)

### Bozrah

This is an important city in Edom. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

## Isaiah 34:7

### will fall

Alternate translation: "will die"

### Their land will be drunk with blood

This describes the amount of blood that will soak into the ground by comparing the land to a drunk person.

Alternate translation: "Their land will be soaked with blood" (See: **Personification (p.1464)**) (See: **Personification (p.1464)**)

### their dust made fat with fatness

Here "dust" means the dirt on the ground. This describes the amount of fat that will soak into the dirt by comparing it to a person that has become fat from eating so much animal fat. Alternate translation: "the dirt will be full of the fat of the animals" (See: **Personification (p.1464)**) (See: **Personification (p.1464)**)

## Isaiah 34:8

### it will be a day of vengeance for Yahweh

Here "day" is an idiom for a point in time; it is not a literal "day." Alternate translation: "it will be the time when Yahweh gets revenge" (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

### he will pay them back for the cause of Zion

This means that he will take revenge on them for how they had previously waged war against the people of Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "he will give them the punishment they deserve for what they had done to the people of Zion" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

## Isaiah 34:9

### The streams of Edom will be turned into pitch & become burning pitch

The water and land becoming useless for drinking or growing food because it is burnt and covered in pitch and sulfur is spoken of as if their streams and land will actually become pitch and sulfur. Alternate translation: "The streams in Edom will be full of pitch and the ground will be covered with burning sulfur and burning pitch" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### her dust & her land

Alternate translation: "Edom's dust ... Edom's land"

### pitch

a thick, black substance that burns for a long time



## Isaiah 34:10

### It will burn night and day

This means all of the time. Alternate translation: “It will burn throughout the night and the day” or “It will burn constantly, all night and all day” (See: **Merism (p.1440)**) (See: **Merism (p.1440)**)

### from generation to generation

The phrase “generation to generation” refers to all generations of people who will live in the future. See how you translated this phrase in [Isaiah 13:20](#). Alternate translation: “forever” (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

## Isaiah 34:11

### will live there

Alternate translation: "will live in the land of Edom"

### owl

See how you translated this in [Isaiah 13:21](#).

### raven

This is a large black bird. It is difficult to identify some of the precise kinds of birds mentioned in this passage. However, they were all birds that preferred to live in places where there were no people, so they symbolize deserted places.

### in it

"there." This refers to Edom.

### He will stretch over it the measuring line of ruin and the plumbline of destruction

This speaks of Yahweh as if he were a careful builder as he causes destruction in Edom. Alternate translation: "Yahweh will measure that land carefully; he will measure it to decide where to cause ruin and destruction" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### measuring line & plumbline

These are builders' tools. See how you translated similar words in [Isaiah 28:17](#).

## Isaiah 34:12

### Her nobles & her princes

Alternate translation: "The nobles of Edom ... the princes of Edom"

### all her princes will be nothing

This exaggerates the princes losing their royal status by saying that they will become nothing. Alternate translation: "all her princes will no longer rule" (See: **Hyperbole (p.1420)**) (See: **Hyperbole (p.1420)**)

## **Isaiah 34:13**

### **Thorns & nettles & thistles**

These are all weeds with thorns. Nettles' thorns have poison that causes itching.

### **jackals**

Translate the name of this animal the same as you did in [Isaiah 13:22](#).

### **ostriches**

Translate the name of this animal the same as you did in [Isaiah 13:21](#).

## **Isaiah 34:14**

### **wild animals**

Translate this the same as you did in [Isaiah 13:21](#).

### **hyenas**

Translate the name of this animal as you did in [Isaiah 13:22](#).

### **Nocturnal animals**

animals that are awake and active at night

## Isaiah 34:15

### Owls

Translate this word the same as you did in [Isaiah 13:21](#).

### hawks

birds that kill small animals for food

## Isaiah 34:16

### Search through the scroll of Yahweh

The phrase “the scroll of Yahweh” means that it contains the messages spoken by Yahweh. Alternate translation: “Read carefully what is written in this scroll that contains the messages of Yahweh” (See: **Possession (p.1466)**) (See: **Possession (p.1466)**)

### not one of these

Alternate translation: “not one of the animals”

### None will lack for a mate

This can be written as a positive statement. Alternate translation: “Each animal will have a mate” (See: **Double Negatives (p.1394)**) (See: **Double Negatives (p.1394)**)

### for his mouth has commanded it

Yahweh is referred to by his “mouth” to emphasize what he has said. Alternate translation: “for Yahweh has commanded it” (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

## Isaiah 34:17

### He has cast lots for their places

This speaks of Yahweh deciding where to cause the animals to live as if he actually cast lots for their places. Alternate translation: "He has determined where they will live" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### his hand has measured it out for them by a cord

This refers to the way that people measured things in biblical times. Alternate translation: "he has given the animals their places" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### from generation to generation they will

The phrase "generation to generation" refers to all generations of people who will live in the future. See how you translated the phrase "from generation to generation" in [Isaiah 13:20](#). Alternate translation: "forever they will" or "they will always" (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)



## Isaiah 35

### Isaiah 35 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in this chapter.

#### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Reign of the Messiah

This chapter appears to prophesy about a time of restoration when the Messiah will reign. It pictures a time of great peace and harmony in the world. The translator does not need to add an explanation, but should try to maintain the tense of the original text, as a future or uncompleted action. (See: [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/restore\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/prophet\]\]](#) and **Christ, Messiah (p.1497)**)

## Isaiah 35:1

### The wilderness and the Arabah will be glad; and the desert will rejoice

These two phrases have basically the same meaning. These places are described as being glad, like a person is glad, because they have received water and are blossoming. Alternate translation: "It will be like the wilderness and the Arabah are glad and the desert will rejoice" (See: [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-personification\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#)) (See: **Personification (p.1464)**)

### blossom

This speaks of the plants in the desert blossoming as if the desert itself were blossoming. Alternate translation: "its plants will blossom" (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

## Isaiah 35:2

### it will blossom abundantly

This compares the way the plants of the desert blossom to the way a rose (verse 1) has many blossoms. Alternate translation: "The desert will grow many new plants and trees" (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

### and rejoice with joy and singing

This speaks of the desert as if it were happy and singing like a person. Alternate translation: "it will be as though everything is rejoicing and singing" (See: **Personification (p.1464)**) (See: **Personification (p.1464)**)

### the glory of Lebanon will be given to it

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. This speaks of Yahweh making the desert look as glorious as Lebanon as if he were giving the desert Lebanon's glory. Alternate translation: "Yahweh will give it the glory of Lebanon" or "Yahweh will make it as glorious as Lebanon" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### the splendor of Carmel and Sharon

This speaks of Yahweh making the desert look beautiful as Carmel and Sharon as if he were giving the desert their splendor. The understood information may be supplied. Alternate translation: "the splendor of Carmel and Sharon will be given to it" or "Yahweh will make it as splendid as Carmel and Sharon" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### the glory of Yahweh, the splendor of our God

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize Yahweh's appearance. (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**) (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**)

## Isaiah 35:3

### General Information:

### General Information:

Isaiah is speaking to the people of Judah.

### Strengthen the weak hands, and steady the knees that shake.

The words “weak hands” and “knees that shake” represent a person who is fearful. Alternate translation: “Strengthen those whose hands are weak and whose knees shake from fear” (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

## Isaiah 35:4

### those with a fearful heart

Here people are referred to by their hearts, which emphasize their inner feelings. Alternate translation: “to those who are fearful” (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### Look

This is used here to draw the listeners’ attention to what is said next. Alternate translation: “Listen”

### your God will come with vengeance, with the recompense of God

This can be reworded so that the abstract nouns “vengeance” and “recompense” are expressed as the verb “punish.” The words “vengeance” and “recompense” mean the same thing and emphasize that God will punish Judah’s enemies. Alternate translation: “your God will punish your enemies for what they have done” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-abstractnouns\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-doublet\]\]](#)) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**)

## Isaiah 35:5

### General Information:

## General Information:

These verses begin a description of the glorious future for God's people.

### the eyes of the blind will see

"The blind" refers to people who are blind. They are referred to by their "eyes" to emphasize their healing. Alternate translation: "blind people will see" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-nominaladj\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-synecdoche\]\]](#)) (See: **Nominal Adjectives (p.1452)**)

### the ears of the deaf will hear

"The deaf" refers to people who cannot hear. They are referred to by their "ears" to emphasize their healing. Alternate translation: "deaf people will hear" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-nominaladj\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-synecdoche\]\]](#)) (See: **Nominal Adjectives (p.1452)**)

## Isaiah 35:6

### the lame man will leap like a deer

Deer can jump far and high. Jumping like a deer is an exaggeration for being able to move about quickly and easily. Alternate translation: “the lame man will jump high” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-simile\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-hyperbole\]\]](#)) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

### the mute tongue will sing

This refers to people who cannot speak. They are referred to by their “tongues” to emphasize their healing. Alternate translation: “mute people will sing” (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### streams in the wilderness

The understood verb may be supplied. Alternate translation: “streams will flow in the wilderness” (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**) (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**)

## Isaiah 35:7

### The burning sand will become a pool

This means that a pool of water will appear in the hot sand. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: "A pool will appear in the burning sand" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### the thirsty ground

Here the dry ground is described as being thirsty. Alternate translation: "the dry ground" (See: **Personification (p.1464)**) (See: **Personification (p.1464)**)

### the thirsty ground springs of water

This means that springs will appear in the dry ground. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: "springs of water will appear in the thirsty ground" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### jackals

See how you translated this in [Isaiah 13:22](#).

### reeds and rushes

These are plants that grow in wet areas.



## Isaiah 35:8

### General Information:

## General Information:

These verses continue the description of the glorious future for God's people.

### A highway will be there called The Holy Way

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "A highway will be there that has the name The Holy Way" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### highway

See how you translated this word in [Isaiah 11:16](#).

### The unclean

This refers to unclean people. A person who God considers spiritually unacceptable or defiled is spoken of as if the person were physically unclean. Alternate translation: "Those who are unclean" or "People who are not acceptable to God" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-nominaladj\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Nominal Adjectives (p.1452)**)

### him who walks in it

This is an idiom. Here "walking" refers to "living." This refers to the person who lives a holy life. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: "who lives in the holy way" or "who lives a holy life" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-idiom\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-explicit\]\]](#)) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

## Isaiah 35:9

### they will not be found there

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “no one will find them there” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### the redeemed

This refers to people who God has redeemed. Alternate translation: “those who are redeemed” or “those who God has redeemed” (See: **Nominal Adjectives (p.1452)**) (See: **Nominal Adjectives (p.1452)**)

## Isaiah 35:10

### The ransomed of Yahweh

To “ransom” means to “rescue.” This refers to people whom Yahweh has rescued. Alternate translation: “Those whom Yahweh has rescued” (See: **Nominal Adjectives (p.1452)**) (See: **Nominal Adjectives (p.1452)**)

### everlasting joy will be on their heads

This uses a person’s head to mean the person as a whole. Alternate translation: “they will have everlasting joy” (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### gladness and joy & sorrow and sighing

The words “gladness” and “joy” mean basically the same thing, as do “sorrow” and “sighing.” Together they emphasize the intensity of these emotions. (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**) (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**)

### gladness and joy will overtake them

This speaks of the people being overwhelmed by gladness and joy by giving these emotions the human quality of being able to overtake someone by force. Alternate translation: “they will be overwhelmed by joy and gladness” (See: **Personification (p.1464)**) (See: **Personification (p.1464)**)

### sorrow and sighing will flee away

This speaks of the people no longer being sorrowful and sighing by giving these emotions the human ability to run away. Alternate translation: “they will no longer be sorrowful and sighing” (See: **Personification (p.1464)**) (See: **Personification (p.1464)**)

## Isaiah 36

### Isaiah 36 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

The previous chapters have been constructed as prophecy and contain many poetic elements. This chapter switches to a narrative and is a discussion between the officials from Assyria and Judah. To make the meaning clear here, it may be helpful to set apart the extended quotations by setting them farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text. (See: **prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess (p.1525)**)

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Trust

The people of Judah were to trust in Yahweh because only he could provide them with protection. The people of Jerusalem were protected because they trusted in Yahweh. (See: **trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness (p.1533)**)

#### Important figures of speech in this chapter

##### Rhetorical Questions

The Assyrian commanders use rhetorical questions in this chapter to mock or insult Judah and their God, Yahweh. (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

## Isaiah 36:1

### the fourteenth year

“year 14” (See: **Ordinal Numbers (p.1457)**) (See: **Ordinal Numbers (p.1457)**)

### King Hezekiah

See how you translated the name of this king in [Isaiah 1:1](#).

### Sennacherib

This is the name of the king of Assyria. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

### Sennacherib & attacked all the fortified cities

Here Sennacherib represents himself and his army. Alternate translation: “Sennacherib and his army ... attacked all the fortified cities” (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

## Isaiah 36:2

### the chief commander

Some versions of the Bible translate this as “the Rabshakeh.” This is the Assyrian word for one of the highest ranking military leaders in Assyria.

### Lachish

This is a city southwest of Jerusalem. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

### conduit

man-made ditch or tunnel through which water flows. See how you translated this in [Isaiah 7:3](#).

### the launderers' field

This could mean: (1) this is the proper name by which the people called the field or (2) this is the common noun that the people used to talk about the field, “the launderers' field” or “the field where men wash wool” or “the field where women wash clothes.” See how you translated this in [Isaiah 7:3](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

### the launderers' field

Here, **the launderers** are either: (1) men who wash wool that someone has cut from the sheep, “wool washers field,” or (2) women who wash dirty clothes, “clothes washers field.” See how you translated this in [Isaiah 7:3](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

## Isaiah 36:3

### Hilkiah & Eliakim

See how you translated these men's names in [Isaiah 22:20](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

### Shebna

See how you translated this man's name in [Isaiah 22:15](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

### Asaph & Joah

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

## Isaiah 36:4

### said to them

Alternate translation: "said to Eliakim, Shebna, and Joah"

### What is the source of your confidence?

The king of Assyria uses this question to challenge Hezekiah and to say that he does not have a good source for confidence. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this question as a statement. Alternate translation: "You have no reliable source for your confidence." (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)



## Isaiah 36:5

### there is counsel and strength for war

“you have the council and the strength to go to war.” The phrase “strength for war” refers to having a large enough and strong enough army with weapons. Alternate translation: “you have enough military council, strong men, and weapons to go to war” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### Now in whom are you trusting? Who has given you courage to rebel against me?

The king of Assyria uses questions to ridicule Hezekiah for believing he has the strength to rebel. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this question as a statement. Alternate translation: “No matter in whom you trust, you will not have the courage to rebel against me.” (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

## Isaiah 36:6

### Look

Sennacherib uses this word to draw Hezekiah's attention to what he says next. Alternate translation: "Listen"

### trusting in Egypt

Here "Egypt" refers to the Egyptian army. Alternate translation: "trusting in the Egyptian army" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### that splintered reed that you use as a walking staff, but if a man leans on it, it will stick into his hand and pierce it

This speaks of Egypt, specifically its army and its Pharaoh, as if it were a splintered reed to emphasize that relying on them would not help them but would only harm them. Alternate translation: "that is like walking with a splintered reed for a staff. If a man leans on it, it will stick into his hand and pierce it" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### splintered reed

A reed is the long, thin stem of a plant like tall grass. If it is splintered or damaged it cannot carry any weight.

### walking staff

This is a stick that someone would use for support when walking, made of whatever kind of tree limb that is found along the way.

**Isaiah 36:7****is not he the one whose high places and altars Hezekiah has taken away & Jerusalem”?**

The king of Assyria uses this question to ridicule the people and to imply that Yahweh was angry about what Hezekiah did and would not protect them. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this question as a statement. Alternate translation: “he is the one whose high places and altars Hezekiah has taken away ... Jerusalem.” or “he is the one whom Hezekiah insulted by tearing down his high places and altars ... Jerusalem.” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-rquestion\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-explicit\]\]](#)) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p. 1475)**)

**has said to Judah and to Jerusalem, “You must worship before this altar in Jerusalem”?**

This can be written as an indirect quote. “Judah” and “Jerusalem” refer to the people who live in them. Alternate translation: “has told the people of Judah and Jerusalem that they must worship only at this altar in Jerusalem.” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-quotations\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#)) (See: **Direct and Indirect Quotations (p.1389)**)

## Isaiah 36:8

### two thousand horses

"2,000 horses" (See: **Numbers (p.1454)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1454)**)

### if you are able to find riders for them

The chief commander continues to ridicule Hezekiah and his army by implying that he did not have many soldiers.  
(See: **Irony (p.1435)**) (See: **Irony (p.1435)**)

## Isaiah 36:9

### How could you resist even one captain & servants?

The chief commander continues to ridicule Hezekiah and his army. When he says “you,” referring to Hezekiah, he is actually referring to Hezekiah’s army. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this question as a statement. Alternate translation: “Your army could not even defeat one captain ... servants.” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-rquestion\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#)) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

## Isaiah 36:10

**Now then, have I traveled up here without Yahweh to fight against this land and destroy it?**

The chief commander uses another question to ridicule Hezekiah and the people of Judah. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this question as a statement. Alternate translation: "I came here with Yahweh's command to destroy Jerusalem." (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### **without Yahweh**

Here "Yahweh" refers to Yahweh's orders. Alternate translation: "without Yahweh's command" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### **against this land and destroy it & Attack this land and destroy it**

This means to fight against the people and cause destruction in the place where they live. The land referred to here is Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "against this people and destroy their land ... Attack these people and destroy their land" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 36:11

### Eliakim & Hilkiah & Shebnah

See how you translated these men's names in [Isaiah 22:20](#).

### Shebnah

See how you translated this man's name in [Isaiah 22:15](#).

### Joah

See how you translated this man's name in [Isaiah 36:3](#)

### chief commander

See how you translated this in [Isaiah 36:2](#).

### Please speak to your servants

Eliakim, Shebnah, and Joah refer to themselves as the chief commander's servants. This is a polite way to speak to someone who has greater authority.

### the Aramean language, Aramaic

"Aramean" is the name of a people group. "Aramaic" is the name of their language. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

### in the ears of the people who are on the wall

The idiom "to speak in someone's ear" means to speak where they can hear you. Alternate translation: "where the people who are on the wall may hear us" (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

### who are on the wall

This means that they are standing on the wall. The top of the wall was wide and a place where people could sit or stand. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: "who are standing on the wall" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

## Isaiah 36:12

### **Has my master sent me to your master and to you to speak these words?**

The chief commander uses this question to emphasize that his message is for all the people of Judah. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this question as a statement. Alternate translation: "Certainly, my master has sent me to speak this message to you and to all who can hear." (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### **Has he not sent me to the men who sit on the wall, who will have to & you?**

The chief commander uses this question to emphasize his insult. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this question as a statement. Alternate translation: "My master has sent me to everyone who hears this, who will have to ... you." (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### **will have to eat their own dung and drink their own urine with you**

This is a very offensive statement. He is implying that they will need to eat these things because they will have nothing else to eat because their city will be under attack. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: "will soon need to eat their own dung and drink their own urine, just as you will, because you will have nothing else to eat" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)



## **Isaiah 36:13**

### **the chief commander**

See how you translated this phrase in [Isaiah 36:2](#).

## **Isaiah 36:14**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## Isaiah 36:15

### this city will not be given into the hand of the king of Assyria

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Yahweh will not give Jerusalem into the hand of the king of Assyria" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### the hand of the king

The king's "hand" refers to his "control." Alternate translation: "the control of the king" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 36:16

### Make peace with me

This idiom means to agree officially to act peacefully towards one another. Alternate translation: "Let us agree to have peace" (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

### come out to me

This idiom means to surrender. Alternate translation: "surrender to me" (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

## Isaiah 36:17

### until I come and take

Here the king of Assyria is referring to his army as himself. Alternate translation: “until my army comes and takes” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### a land of grain and new wine, a land of bread and vineyards

These two phrase have the same meaning and are used together to emphasize how prosperous the land will be. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### a land of grain & a land of bread

This means that they land is full of natural resources, such as grain. Alternate translation: “a land where there is plenty of grain ... a land where there is plenty of bread” (See: **Possession (p.1466)**) (See: **Possession (p.1466)**)

## Isaiah 36:18

### Has any of the gods of the peoples rescued them from & Assyria?

The chief commander uses this question to ridicule the people of Judah. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this question as a statement. Alternate translation: "None of the gods of the peoples rescued them from ... Assyria." (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### the hand of the king

The king's control is referred to as his "hand." Alternate translation: "the control of the king" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 36:19

### Where are the gods of Hamath and Arpad? Where are the gods of Sepharvaim? Have they rescued Samaria from my power?

The chief commander uses these questions to ridicule the people of Judah. These questions may be combined and written as a statement. Alternate translation: "The gods of Hamath, Arpad, Sepharvaim, and Samaria did not rescue their people from my power." (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### Hamath & Arpad

Translate the names of these cities the same as you did in [Isaiah 10:9](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

### Sepharvaim

This is the name of a city. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

## Isaiah 36:20

**is there any god who has rescued & as if Yahweh could save Jerusalem from my power?**

The chief commander uses this question to ridicule the people of Judah. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this question as a statement. Alternate translation: "there is no god who has rescued ... and Yahweh will not save you in Jerusalem from my power." (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

**his land**

This refers to the people who live in the land. Alternate translation: "his people" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)



## Isaiah 36:21

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## Isaiah 36:22

### Eliakim & Hilkiah & Shebna & Joah & Asaph

Translate the names of these men the same as you did in [Isaiah 36:3](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

### over the household

This idiom means that he was in charge of the affairs of the palace household. Alternate translation: “in charge of the palace” (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

### with their clothes torn

Hezekiah’s officials tore their clothes as a sign of mourning and distress. The meaning of this can be made clear. Alternate translation: “with their clothes torn because they were extremely distressed” (See: **Symbolic Action (p.1482)**) (See: **Symbolic Action (p.1482)**)

## Isaiah 37

### Isaiah 37 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 37:22-38.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Tearing clothes and putting on sackcloth

This was a sign of great distress. While it is often accompanies repentance, in this chapter it is intended to show the king's anger at the blasphemy of the Assyrians when they spoke against Yahweh. (See: [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/sign\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/repent\]\]](#) and **blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous (p.1496)**)

#### Prayer

Hezekiah was different from the other kings because when he was threatened by Assyria, he went to Yahweh in prayer. He did not trust in his army or make an alliance with Egypt. (See: **trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness (p.1533)**)

## Isaiah 37:1

### It came about that

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here. (See: **Introduction of a New Event (p.1432)**) (See: **Introduction of a New Event (p.1432)**)

### he tore his clothes, covered himself with sackcloth

This is a sign of mourning and distress. Alternate translation: “he tore his clothes and covered himself with sackcloth because he was very distressed” (See: **Symbolic Action (p.1482)**) (See: **Symbolic Action (p.1482)**)

## Isaiah 37:2

### Eliakim & Shebna

Translate the names of these men the same as you did in [Isaiah 36:3](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)  
(See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

### over the household

This is an idiom that means that he was in charge of the affairs of the palace household. Alternate translation: “in charge of the palace” (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

### all covered with sackcloth

This is a sign of mourning and distress. (See: **Symbolic Action (p.1482)**) (See: **Symbolic Action (p.1482)**)

## Isaiah 37:3

### They said to him

Alternate translation: "The men sent by Hezekiah said to Isaiah"

**like when a child is ready to be born, but the mother has no strength to give birth to her child**

This comparison is made to emphasize that they are in a time of extreme difficulty. Alternate translation: "It is as terrible as the day when a child is ready to be born, but the mother has no strength to give birth to her child" (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

## Isaiah 37:4

### It may be Yahweh your God will hear the words

Hezekiah is indirectly suggesting that if the people pray Yahweh may listen and act upon what the chief commander had said. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: “Maybe if you pray to Yahweh your God will hear the message” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### the chief commander

See how you translated this phrase in [Isaiah 36:2](#).

### his master

This phrase means that the king is the chief commander’s master.

### will rebuke the words which Yahweh your God has heard

Here the phrase “the words which Yahweh your God has heard” refers to what the king of Assyria had said. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: “Yahweh your God will rebuke the king of Assyria for what he has said” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### lift up your prayer

Praying to Yahweh is described this way to emphasize that Yahweh is in heaven. A prayer is spoken of as if they were objects that could be lifted high into the sky. Alternate translation: “pray” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### for the remnant that is still here

This refers to the people who are left in Jerusalem. Alternate translation: “for the few of us that are still here” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## **Isaiah 37:5**

(There are no notes for this verse.)



## **Isaiah 37:6**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## Isaiah 37:7

### **I will put a spirit in him, and he will hear a certain report and go back to his own land**

The phrase “put a spirit in him” means that God will influence him to make a specific decision. The word “spirit” here means a strong attitude or feeling. Alternate translation: “I will influence him so that when he hears a certain report, he will go back to his own land” (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

### **Look**

This word is used here to draw the peoples’ attention to what is said next. Alternate translation: “Listen”

### **I will cause him to fall by the sword in his own land**

The phrase “fall by the sword” is an idiom that means that his enemy will kill him with a sword. Alternate translation: “And there in his own land, I will cause his enemies to kill him with their swords” (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

## Isaiah 37:8

### Lachish

See how you translated the name of this city in [Isaiah 36:2](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

### Libnah

This is a city in southern Judah. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

## Isaiah 37:9

### Sennacherib

See how you translated this man's name in [Isaiah 36:1](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

### Tirhakah king of Cush and Egypt had mobilized to fight against him

“Tirhakah” is the name of a man. He had mobilized his army so that they were ready to fight. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: “Tirhakah king of Cush and Egypt had mobilized his army” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-names\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-explicit\]\]](#)) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

### to fight against him

The word “him” represents Sennacherib. Here Sennacherib represents his army. Alternate translation: “to fight against the army of Sennacherib” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 37:10

### Jerusalem will not be given into the hand of the king of Assyria

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. The word “hand” refers to the king’s military power. Alternate translation: “The king of Assyria and his army will not conquer you in Jerusalem” (See: [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## **Isaiah 37:11**

### **See, you have heard**

The word “see” here is used to add emphasis to what is said next. Alternate translation: “You have certainly heard”

### **So will you be rescued?**

The king of Assyria uses this question to ridicule Hezekiah and his army. Alternate translation: “So you too will not be saved.” or “So of course no one will rescue you either!” (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

## Isaiah 37:12

### Have the gods of the nations rescued them & Tel Assar?

The king of Assyria uses this question to ridicule Hezekiah and his army. Alternate translation: “The nations’ god did not rescue the nations that my fathers destroyed ... Tel Assar!” (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### that my fathers destroyed

These men destroyed the cities listed by conquering them with their armies. Here the word “fathers” refers to his father and his other ancestors who were kings. Alternate translation: “that my fathers destroyed with their armies” (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### Gozan & Haran & Rezeph & Eden & Tel Assar

These are places that the Assyrians had conquered. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

## Isaiah 37:13

### Hena & Ivvah

These are places that the Assyrians had conquered. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

### Where is the king & Ivvah?

The king of Assyria uses this question to ridicule Hezekiah and his army. Alternate translation: “We also conquered the king ... Ivvah!” (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### Hamath & Arpad & Sepharvaim

Translate the names of these cities the same as you did in [Isaiah 36:19](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)



## **Isaiah 37:14**

### **from hand of the messengers**

Here the messengers are referred to by their “hand” to emphasize that they personally gave it to the king.  
Alternate translation: “that the messengers gave him” (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### **he went up to the house of Yahweh**

The house of Yahweh was at the highest place in Jerusalem, so it is spoken of as “up.”

### **spread it before him**

“spread out the letter in front of Yahweh.” Being in the house of Yahweh is considered the same as being in Yahweh’s presence. The letter was a scroll that could be unrolled and spread out.

## **Isaiah 37:15**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## Isaiah 37:16

### you who sit above the cherubim

You may need to make explicit that the cherubim are those on the lid of the ark of the covenant. The biblical writers often spoke of the ark of the covenant as if it were Yahweh's footstool upon which he rested his feet as he sat on his throne in heaven above. Alternate translation: "you who sit on your throne above the cherubim on the ark of the covenant" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### you are God alone

Alternate translation: "only you are God"

### over all the kingdoms

This idiom means to have authority and to rule over all the kingdoms. Alternate translation: "have authority over all the kingdoms" (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

### You made the heavens and the earth

This means that he created everything. Alternate translation: "You made everything" (See: **Merism (p.1440)**) (See: **Merism (p.1440)**)

## Isaiah 37:17

### which he has sent

Hezekiah is referring to the letter from Sennacherib. The meaning of this can be made clear. Alternate translation: “in the message he has sent” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### Turn your ear

“Incline your ear” or “Turn your head.” This means to turn your head so that you can hear something better.

### Sennacherib

See how you translated this man’s name in [Isaiah 36:1](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

## Isaiah 37:18

### all the nations and their lands

This is a generalization. The kings had destroyed many of the nearby lands, but not necessarily all lands. Alternate translation: "many of the nations and their lands" (See: **Hyperbole (p.1420)**) (See: **Hyperbole (p.1420)**)

## Isaiah 37:19

**for they were not gods but the work of men's hands, just wood and stone**

This emphasizes that humans made these idols with their own hands and are therefore worthless. Alternate translation: "because they were false gods that men made out of wood and stone" (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

## **Isaiah 37:20**

### **from his power**

Alternate translation: "from the king of Assyria's power"

### **all the kingdoms**

This refers to the people in the kingdoms. Alternate translation: "all the people in the kingdoms" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### **you are Yahweh alone**

Alternate translation: "only you, Yahweh, are God"

## Isaiah 37:21

### sent a message

This means that he sent a messenger to give a message to the king. Alternate translation: “sent someone to give a message” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)



## **Isaiah 37:22**

### **is the word that Yahweh has spoken**

Alternate translation: "is what Yahweh has said"

### **laughs you to scorn**

Alternate translation: "laughs at you" or "makes fun of you"

### **shakes her head**

This is a gesture of scorn. (See: **Symbolic Action (p.1482)**) (See: **Symbolic Action (p.1482)**)

### **The virgin daughter of Zion & the daughter of Jerusalem**

These are idioms. Both of these phrases have the same meaning. The "daughter" of a city means the people who live in the city. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Isaiah 1:8](#). Alternate translation: "The people of Zion ... the people of Jerusalem" (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

## Isaiah 37:23

### Whom have you defied and insulted? & Against the Holy One of Israel.

Yahweh uses these rhetorical questions to ridicule the king of Assyria. These can be written as statements.

Alternate translation: "You have defied and insulted Yahweh, you have shouted at and acted pridefully against the Holy One of Israel!" (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### have you exalted your voice

This refers to speaking loudly as if the person's voice were an object that they lifted high. Alternate translation: "have you shouted" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### lifted up your eyes in pride

This is an idiom that means to look at something pridefully, considering yourself more important than you should.

Alternate translation: "looked at pridefully" or "acted pridefully" (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

## Isaiah 37:24

### By your servants

This refers to the servants that he had sent to Hezekiah with a message. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "In the messages you sent with your servants" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### I have gone & I will cut & I will enter

Here Sennacherib speaks of himself conquering many things. He is actually conquering them with the armies and chariots that he commands. Alternate translation: "We have gone ... We will cut ... we will enter" (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### its tall cedars

Alternate translation: "Lebanon's tall cedars"

### its most fruitful forest

Here the word "fruitful" refers to the forest being dense and full of healthy trees. The understood information may be supplied. Alternate translation: "and into its most fruitful forest" (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**) (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**)

## Isaiah 37:25

### I have dug & I dried & my feet

Here Sennacherib speaks of himself conquering many things. He is actually conquering them with the armies and chariots that he commands. Alternate translation: "We have dug ... we dried ... our feet" (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### I dried up all the rivers of Egypt under the soles of my feet

Here Sennacherib is exaggerating his conquest and travels across the rivers of Egypt by claiming to have dried up the rivers when he marched his army through them. Alternate translation: "I have marched through all the rivers of Egypt as if they were dry under my feet" (See: **Hyperbole (p.1420)**) (See: **Hyperbole (p.1420)**)

## Isaiah 37:26

### Have you not heard how & times?

Yahweh uses this rhetorical question to remind Sennacherib of information that he should already be aware of. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this question as a statement. Alternate translation: “Certainly you have heard how ... times.” (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### You are here to reduce impregnable cities into heaps of ruins

Yahweh had planned for Sennacherib's army to destroy the cities that they had destroyed. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “I planned that your army would destroy cities and cause them to become piles of rubble” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### impregnable

strong and heavily guarded

### I am bringing it to pass

The idiom “to bring something to pass” means to cause a specific thing to happen. Alternate translation: “I am causing it to happen” or “I am causing these things to take place” (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

## **Isaiah 37:27**

### **of little strength**

Alternate translation: "who are weak"

### **shattered**

broken into small pieces. This is a metaphor for being greatly discouraged. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### **They are plants in the field, green grass, the grass on the roof or in the field, before the east wind**

This speaks of how weak and vulnerable the cities are before the Assyrian army by comparing the cities to grass. Alternate translation: "The cities are as weak as the grass in the fields before your armies. They are as weak as the grass that grows on the roofs of houses and is scorched by the hot east wind" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### **before the east wind**

The east wind is hot and dry from the desert and plants die when it blows.

## Isaiah 37:28

**But I know your sitting down, your going out, your coming in**

This refers to all activities of life. Alternate translation: "I know everything you do" (See: **Merism (p.1440)**) (See: **Merism (p.1440)**)

**and your raging against me**

The word "raging" can be expressed as a verb. Alternate translation: "how you rage against me" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**)

## Isaiah 37:29

### **your arrogance**

Here the king's "arrogance" refers to his arrogant speech. Alternate translation: "your arrogant speech" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### **your arrogance has reached my ears**

This speaks of Yahweh hearing the king's speech as if the king's speech were something that traveled to his ear. Alternate translation: "I have heard you speaking arrogantly" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### **I will put my hook in your nose, and my bit in your mouth**

A person uses a hook and bit to lead an animal around. This speaks of Yahweh controlling the king as if the king were an animal Yahweh controlled with a bit and hook. Alternate translation: "I will control you like a man controls his animal by place a hook in its nose and a bit in its mouth" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### **I will turn you back the way you came**

This refers to causing the king to return to his own home country. The meaning of this can be made clear. Alternate translation: "I will force you to return to your own country" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)



## Isaiah 37:30

### sign for you

“sign for you, Hezekiah.” Here “you” is singular and refers to Hezekiah. (See: **Forms of You (p.1408)**) (See: **Forms of You (p.1408)**)

### you will eat & you must plant

Here “you” is plural and refers to the people of Judah. (See: **Forms of You (p.1408)**) (See: **Forms of You (p.1408)**)

### in the second year what grows

This describes what the people will eat. The words “you will eat” are understood from the previous phrase Alternate translation: “in the second year you will eat what grows” or “next year you will eat what grows” (See: [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#)) (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**)

### what grows from that

Alternate translation: “what grows wild from that” or “what grows wild”

### in the third year

This refers to the year after the second year. Alternate translation: “the year after that” or “in the following year” (See: **Ordinal Numbers (p.1457)**) (See: **Ordinal Numbers (p.1457)**)

## Isaiah 37:31

### remnant

A “remnant” is a part of something that remains after the rest is gone. Here this refers to the people who are left in Judah.

### the house of Judah

Here Judah’s “house” refers to his descendants. Alternate translation: “the descendants of Judah” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### will again take root and bear fruit

This speaks of the people of Judah becoming prosperous as if they were plants that would root and bear fruit. Alternate translation: “will prosper like a plant that takes root and produces fruit” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 37:32

**For from Jerusalem a remnant will come out; from Mount Zion survivors will come**

These two phrases have the same meaning and are used together to emphasize the remnant of people who will survive. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

**The zeal of Yahweh of hosts will do this**

This speaks of Yahweh doing something because of his zeal as if his “zeal” were actually doing the action. Alternate translation: “Because of his zeal, Yahweh of hosts will do this” or “Yahweh of hosts will do this because of his zeal” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 37:33

### He will not come & He will not come

Here the Assyrian king refers to both him and his army. Alternate translation: "His army will not come ... They will not come" (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### with shield

Alternate translation: "with shields"

### siege ramp

a large mound of dirt built against the wall of a city that better enables an army to attach the city

## Isaiah 37:34

### he came & he will not enter

Here the Assyrian king refers to both him and his army. Alternate translation: “they came ... they will not enter” (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### this is Yahweh’s declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. Translate as in [Isaiah 30:1](#). Alternate translation: “this is what Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, Yahweh, have declared” (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1406)**) (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1406)**)

## **Isaiah 37:35**

**for my own sake and for David my servant's sake**

Alternate translation: "so that things will be better for me and for my servant David"

## Isaiah 37:36

### putting to death

This idiom means to kill. Alternate translation: “killing” (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

### 185,000 soldiers

“one hundred and eighty-five thousand soldiers” (See: **Numbers (p.1454)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1454)**)

## Isaiah 37:37

### Sennacherib king of Assyria left Israel and went home and stayed in Nineveh

Here Sennacherib refers to both him and his army. They all left Israel and returned home to Assyria. Sennacherib returned to the city Nineveh. Alternate translation: “Sennacherib and his army left Israel and went home, and Sennacherib stayed in Nineveh” (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### Sennacherib

See how you translated this man’s name in [Isaiah 36:1](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)



## **Isaiah 37:38**

### **as he was worshiping**

Alternate translation: "as Sennacherib was worshiping"

### **Nisrok**

This is the name of a false god. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

### **Adrammelek & Sharezer & Esarhaddon**

These are the names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

### **with the sword**

Alternate translation: "with their swords"

## **Isaiah 38**

### **Isaiah 38 General Notes**

#### **Structure and formatting**

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 38:10-20.

#### **Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter**

#### **Poetry**

This chapter is written as a narrative, but the section including Hezekiah's prayer is written as poetry. The tone of this prayer shifts from sorrow to praise.

## Isaiah 38:1

### Set your house in order

This means to prepare your family and those in charge of your affairs so that they know what to do after you die. This can be written clearly. Alternate translation: "You should tell the people in your palace what you want them to do after you die" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

## **Isaiah 38:2**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## Isaiah 38:3

### call to mind

This idiom means to remember. Alternate translation: “remember” (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

### faithfully walked before you

This is an idiom. Here “walk” means to “live.” The phrase means to live in a way the pleases Yahweh. Alternate translation: “faithfully lived before you” or “faithfully served you” (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

### with my whole heart

Here the “heart” refers to the inner-being which represents a person’s complete devotion. Alternate translation: “with all my inner being” or “with my complete devotion” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### what was good in your sight

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh’s judgment or evaluation. Alternate translation: “what pleases you” or “what you consider to be good” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 38:4

### the word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. Alternate translation: "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words" (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

## Isaiah 38:5

### See

This is used to ask the listener to pay attention to what is said next. Alternate translation: "Listen"

### fifteen years

"15 years" (See: **Numbers (p.1454)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1454)**)

## Isaiah 38:6

### the hand of the king of Assyria

Here the king's "hand" refers to his power. Alternate translation: "the power of the king of Assyria" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)



## **Isaiah 38:7**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## Isaiah 38:8

### Look

Yahweh uses this word to draw the listener's attention to what is said next. Alternate translation: "Listen"

### stairs of Ahaz

These stairs are referred to this way because they were built while Ahaz was king. You can make this information clear. (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

## **Isaiah 38:9**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## **Isaiah 38:10**

### **that halfway through my life**

“that before I have grown old.” This refers to dying at middle age, before growing old.

### **I will go through the gates of Sheol**

This speaks of dying as if Sheol were a kingdom that has gates that one enters. Alternate translation: “I will die and go to Sheol” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### **I am sent there for the rest of my years**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “before I have lived all of my years I will go to the grave” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 38:11

### in the land of the living

“The living” refers to people who are alive. Alternate translation: “in the land where people are alive” or “in this world where people are alive” (See: **Nominal Adjectives (p.1452)**) (See: **Nominal Adjectives (p.1452)**)

## Isaiah 38:12

### My life is removed and carried away from me like a shepherd's tent

This speaks of how Yahweh is ending Hezekiah's life quickly by comparing it to how a shepherd removes his tent from the ground. Alternate translation: "Yahweh has taken my life away from me quickly like a shepherd packs up his tent and carries it away" (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

### My life is removed

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Yahweh has taken my life" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### I have rolled up my life like a weaver; you are cutting me off from the loom

This speaks of Yahweh quickly ending Hezekiah's life by comparing it to how a weaver cuts his cloth from the loom and rolls it up. Alternate translation: "you are ending my life quickly, like a weaver cuts his cloth from the loom when it is finished" (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

### you are cutting

Here "you" is singular and refers to God. (See: **Forms of You (p.1408)**) (See: **Forms of You (p.1408)**)

### loom

a device used to weave thread together to make cloth

## Isaiah 38:13

### like a lion he breaks all my bones

Hezekiah speaks of how he is in extreme pain by comparing it to having his body torn apart by lions. Alternate translation: "my pain was as though I were being torn apart by lions" (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

## Isaiah 38:14

### Like a swallow I chirp; I coo like a dove

Both of these clauses mean the same thing and they emphasize how sad and pitiful Hezekiah's cries were. A swallow and a dove are types of birds. Alternate translation: "My cries are pitiful--they sound like the chirp of a swallow and the coo of a dove" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-simile\]\]](#)) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### my eyes

Here Hezekiah refers to himself by his "eyes" to emphasize that he is looking for something. Alternate translation: "I" (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### with looking upward

This refers to Hezekiah looking to heaven for God to help him. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: "of waiting for help to come from heaven" or "of waiting for you to help me" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### I am oppressed

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "My sickness oppresses me" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)



## Isaiah 38:15

### What shall I say?

Hezekiah uses a question to emphasize he has nothing left to say. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this question as a statement. Alternate translation: "I have nothing left to say." (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### I will walk slowly

This is an idiom. Here "walking" refers to living. Alternate translation: "I will live humbly" (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

### all my years

This refers to the rest of his life. The meaning of this can be made clear. Alternate translation: "the rest of my life" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### because I am overcome with grief

Alternate translation: "because I am full of grief" or "because I am very sad"

## Isaiah 38:16

### may my life be given back to me

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “may you give my life back to me” (See: **Active or Passive (p. 1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 38:17

### from the pit of destruction

Hezekiah did not die but he was close to dying. This refers Yahweh saving him from dying. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: “from dying and going to the pit of destruction” or “so that I did not die” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### for you have thrown all my sins behind your back

Hezekiah speaks of Yahweh forgiving his sins as if they were objects that Yahweh threw behind himself and forgot about. Alternate translation: “for you have forgiven all my sins and no longer think about them” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 38:18

### For Sheol does not thank you; death does not praise you

Here “Sheol” and “death” refer to “dead people.” Alternate translation: “For those in Sheol do not thank you; dead people do not praise you” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### those who go down into the pit

Alternate translation: “those who go down to the grave”

### do not hope in your trustworthiness

“do not have hope in your faithfulness.” Here “your” is singular and refers to Yahweh. (See: **Forms of You (p.1408)**) (See: **Forms of You (p.1408)**)

## Isaiah 38:19

### The living person, the living person

Hezekiah repeats this phrase to emphasize that only a living person, not a dead person, can give thanks to Yahweh.  
(See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

## Isaiah 38:20

### save me

This refers to him being saved from dying. It can be made more explicit. Alternate translation: “save me from dying” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### we will celebrate

Here “we” refers to Hezekiah and the people of Judah. (See: **Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’ (p.1404)**) (See: **Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’ (p.1404)**)

## Isaiah 38:21

### Now

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. This gives background information about Isaiah and Hezekiah. (See: **Background Information (p.1383)**) (See: **Background Information (p.1383)**)

### Let them

Alternate translation: "Let Hezekiah's servants"

### a lump of figs

This was used as an ointment. The meaning of this can be made clear. Alternate translation: "use an ointment of mashed figs" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### boil

a painful area on the skin that is infected

## **Isaiah 38:22**

(There are no notes for this verse.)



## Isaiah 39

### Isaiah 39 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Pride

Although it is not said why it was sinful for Hezekiah to show the king of Babylon his riches, the sin was probably because of his pride. It can be viewed as bragging to another king about how rich and powerful he was without giving proper credit to Yahweh. Because of this sin, Yahweh punished him. (See: [\[\[rc://tw/dict/bible/kt/sin\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-explicit\]\]](#))

#### Babylon

At this time, Babylon was not very powerful, but was little more than a city. In a short time, however, Babylon became a very powerful nation and conquered Assyria.

## Isaiah 39:1

### Marduk-Baladan & Baladan

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

## Isaiah 39:2

### Hezekiah was pleased by these things

This can be made more explicit. Alternate translation: “When the king’s messengers arrived, Hezekiah was pleased with what they brought to him” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### showed the messengers his storehouse of valuable things

Alternate translation: “he showed the messengers everything of value he had”

### storehouse

a building where goods are kept

### all that was found in his storehouses

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “everything that was in his storehouses” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### There was nothing in his house, nor in all his kingdom, that Hezekiah did not show them

This is a slight exaggeration as Hezekiah showed them many things, but not everything. Also, this can be expressed positively. Alternate translation: “Hezekiah showed them almost everything in his house and in his kingdom” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-doublenegatives\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-hyperbole\]\]](#)) (See: **Double Negatives (p.1394)**)

## **Isaiah 39:3**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

**Isaiah 39:4**

**They have seen everything in my house. There is nothing among my valuable things that I have not shown them**

These two sentences mean the same thing and are used together to emphasize how much Hezekiah showed the men. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

**everything in my house**

This is a generalization, as Hezekiah showed them many things, but not necessarily everything in the palace. Alternate translation: "almost everything in my house" (See: **Hyperbole (p.1420)**) (See: **Hyperbole (p.1420)**)

**There is nothing among my valuable things that I have not shown them**

This can be expressed positively. Alternate translation: "I showed them all the valuable things in my palace" (See: **Double Negatives (p.1394)**) (See: **Double Negatives (p.1394)**)

## Isaiah 39:5

### Yahweh of hosts

See how you translated this phrase in [Isaiah 1:9](#).

### the word

Alternate translation: "the message"

## Isaiah 39:6

### Look

This word is used here to draw Hezekiah's attention to what is said next. Alternate translation: "Listen"

### **when everything in your palace & will be carried to Babylon**

This can be expressed positively. Alternate translation: "when the enemy army will take everything in your palace ... back to Babylon" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## **Isaiah 39:7**

**The sons born from you**

Alternate translation: "Your sons"

**they will take them**

Alternate translation: "the Babylonians will take them"



## **Isaiah 39:8**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## Isaiah 40

### Isaiah 40 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in this chapter.

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Rhetorical Questions

Yahweh uses many rhetorical questions in this chapter. These rhetorical questions help to prove the point he is making and convince the reader. (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### “She has received double from Yahweh’s hand for all her sins”

It is common in many languages to use the feminine “she” to refer to a nation, rather than the word “it,” which is neither masculine or feminine. The translator should use the pronoun that aligns with the common usage in the target language. Therefore, it is acceptable to use “he,” “she,” or “it” in reference to a nation.

The phrase “received double” indicates that Jerusalem was punished more severely than the other nations. This is because they had the privilege of a special relationship to Yahweh and had more knowledge than the other nations.

#### Reign of Yahweh

This chapter appears to prophesy about a time of restoration when the Messiah will reign. It pictures a time of great peace and harmony in the world. The translator does not need to add an explanation, but should try to maintain the tense of the original text, as a future or uncompleted action. It does not appear that this prophecy was fulfilled in the days of Isaiah. (See: [\[\[rc://tw/dict/bible/kt/restore\]\]](#), [\[\[rc://tw/dict/bible/kt/prophet\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc://tw/dict/bible/kt/christ\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc://tw/dict/bible/kt/fulfill\]\]](#))

## **Isaiah 40:1**

### **Comfort, comfort**

The word “comfort” is repeated for emphasis.

### **says your God**

Here “your” is plural and refers to those whom the prophet tells to comfort God’s people. (See: **Forms of You (p. 1408)**) (See: **Forms of You (p.1408)**)

## Isaiah 40:2

### Speak tenderly to Jerusalem

The prophet speaks of Jerusalem as if it were a woman whom Yahweh has forgiven. As such, Jerusalem represents the people who live in that city. Alternate translation: "Speak tenderly to the people of Jerusalem" (See: [[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-personification]] and [[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy]]) (See: **Personification (p.1464)**)

### proclaim to her & her warfare & her iniquity & she has received & her sins

These pronouns refer to Jerusalem but may be changed if "the people of Jerusalem" is adopted as a translation. Alternate translation: "proclaim to them ... their warfare ... their iniquity ... they have received ... their sins" (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1406)**) (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1406)**)

### her warfare

Possible meanings are that the word **warfare** refers: (1) to military battle or (2) to forced labor.

### her iniquity is pardoned

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Yahweh has pardoned her iniquity" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### from Yahweh's hand

Here the word "hand" represents Yahweh himself. Alternate translation: "from Yahweh" (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

## Isaiah 40:3

### A voice cries out

The word “voice” represents the person who cries out. Alternate translation: “Someone cries out” (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### In the wilderness prepare the way of Yahweh; make straight in the Arabah a highway for our God

These two lines are parallel and mean basically the same thing. The people preparing themselves for Yahweh's help is spoken of as if they were to prepare roads for Yahweh to travel upon. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### Arabah

See how you translated this word in [Isaiah 35:1](#).

## Isaiah 40:4

### Every valley will be lifted up, and every mountain and hill will be leveled

These phrases explain how the people are to prepare a highway for Yahweh. They can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Lift up every valley, and level every mountain and hill" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### Every valley will be lifted up

Making the valleys level with the rest of the ground is spoken of as if it were lifting up the valleys. Alternate translation: "Every valley will be filled in" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### and the rugged land will be made level, and the rough places a plain

These phrases explain how the people are to prepare a highway for Yahweh. They can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "make the rugged land level, and make the rough places into a plain" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#)) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 40:5

### the glory of Yahweh will be revealed

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “Yahweh will reveal his glory” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### for the mouth of Yahweh has spoken it

The word “mouth” represents Yahweh himself. Alternate translation: “for Yahweh has spoken it” (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

## Isaiah 40:6

### All flesh is grass

The word “flesh” refers to people. The speaker speaks of humans as if they are grass, because they both die quickly. Alternate translation: “All people are like grass” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### all their covenant faithfulness is like the flower of the field

The speaker compares the covenant faithfulness of people to flowers that bloom and then die quickly. If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **faithfulness**, you can express the same idea with a verbal form such as “faithful.” See how you translated “covenant faithfulness” in [Isaiah 16:5](#). Alternate translation: “they quickly stop being faithful to the covenant, just like a flower of the field dies quickly” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-simile\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-abstractnouns\]\]](#)) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

### covenant faithfulness

This could mean: (1) covenant faithfulness or (2) beauty.



## **Isaiah 40:7**

### **when the breath of Yahweh blows on it**

This could mean: (1) “when Yahweh blows his breath on it” or (2) “when Yahweh sends a wind to blow on it.”

### **humanity is grass**

The speaker speaks of humans as if they are grass, because they both die quickly. Alternate translation: “people die as quickly as grass” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 40:8

### the word of our God will stand forever

The speaker speaks of what God says lasting forever as if his word stands forever. Alternate translation: “the things that our God says will last forever” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 40:9

### Go up on a high mountain, Zion, bearer of good news

The writer speaks of Zion as if it were a messenger who declares good news from a mountain top. (See: **Personification (p.1464)**) (See: **Personification (p.1464)**)

### Go up on a high mountain

Messengers would often stand on elevated land, such as mountains, so that many people could hear what they proclaimed. (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### Zion

This refers to the people who live in Zion. Alternate translation: “you people of Zion” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### Jerusalem. You who bring good news

The writer speaks of Jerusalem as if it were a messenger who declares good news. (See: **Personification (p.1464)**) (See: **Personification (p.1464)**)

## Isaiah 40:10

### his strong arm rules for him

Here the word “arm” represents God’s power. Alternate translation: “he rules with great power” (See: **Metonymy (p. 1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### his reward is with him & those he has rescued go before him

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. The ones he rescued are his “reward.” Alternate translation: “he is bringing those he rescued with him as his reward” (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

## Isaiah 40:11

### He will feed his flock like a shepherd

The writer speaks of Yahweh's people as if they were sheep and of Yahweh as if he were their shepherd. Alternate translation: "He will care for his people like a shepherd feeds his flock" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 40:12

### Who has measured & or the hills in a balance?

These rhetorical questions anticipate a negative answer and emphasize that only Yahweh is able to do these things. Alternate translation: "No one but Yahweh has measured ... and the hills in a balance." (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### measured the waters in the hollow of his hand

Yahweh knowing how much water is in the oceans is spoken of as if Yahweh held the water in his hand. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### measured the sky with the span of his hand

A "span" is the measure of length between the thumb and little finger when the hand is outstretched. Yahweh knowing the length of the sky is spoken of as if he measured it with his hand. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### held the dust of the earth in a basket

Yahweh knowing how much dust there is on the earth is spoken of as if he carried it in a basket. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### weighed the mountains in scales, or the hills in a balance?

Yahweh knowing how heavy the mountains are is spoken of as if he weighed them in scales and balances. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## **Isaiah 40:13**

### **Who has comprehended the mind of Yahweh, or instructed him as his counselor?**

This rhetorical question anticipates a negative answer and emphasizes that no one is able to do these things. Alternate translation: "No one has comprehended the mind of Yahweh, and no one has instructed him as his counselor." (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### **comprehended the mind of Yahweh**

Here the word "mind" refers not only to Yahweh's thoughts, but also to his desires and motivations.

## Isaiah 40:14

### From whom did he ever receive instruction?

This rhetorical question anticipates a negative answer and emphasizes that no one has ever done this. Alternate translation: "He has never received instruction from anyone." (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### Who taught him the correct way to do things, and taught him knowledge, or showed to him the way of understanding?

This rhetorical question anticipates a negative answer and emphasizes that no one has ever done these things. Alternate translation: "No one taught him the correct way to do things. No one taught him knowledge. No one showed to him the way of understanding." (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)



## Isaiah 40:15

### Look & see

These words add emphasis to what follows.

### **the nations are like a drop in a bucket, and are regarded like the dust on the scales**

The prophet compares the nations to a drop of water and to dust in order to emphasize how small and insignificant they are to Yahweh. (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

### **like a drop in a bucket**

This could mean: (1) a drop of water that falls into a bucket or (2) a drop of water that drops out of a bucket.

### **are regarded like the dust on the scales**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Yahweh regards them as dust on the scales" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## **Isaiah 40:16**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## Isaiah 40:17

### they are regarded by him as nothing

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “he regards them as nothing” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 40:18

### To whom then will you compare God? To what idol will you liken him?

Isaiah uses two similar questions to emphasize that there is no idol that can compare with God. Alternate translation: "There is no one to whom you can compare God. There is no idol to which you can liken him." (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-rquestion\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#)) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p. 1475)**)

### you

This is plural and refers to all of God's people. (See: **Forms of You (p.1408)**) (See: **Forms of You (p.1408)**)

## **Isaiah 40:19**

**A craftsman casts it: The goldsmith overlays it with gold and forges silver chains for it**

Alternate translation: "A skilled worker forms it, another covers it with gold and makes a silver chain for it"

## **Isaiah 40:20**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## Isaiah 40:21

**Have you not known? Have you not heard? Has it not been told you from the beginning? Have you not understood from the foundations of the earth?**

Isaiah uses these questions to emphasize that the people should know Yahweh's greatness as the creator. Alternate translation: "You certainly know and have heard! It has been told to you from the beginning; you have understood from the foundations of the earth!" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-rquestion\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#)) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

**Has it not been told you from the beginning?**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Have people not told you from the beginning?" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

**from the foundations of the earth**

The prophet speaks of Yahweh creating the earth as if the earth were a building for which Yahweh laid the foundation. Alternate translation: "from the time that Yahweh created the earth" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 40:22

### He is the one who sits above the horizon of the earth

The prophet speaks of Yahweh ruling the earth as if Yahweh were seated on a throne above the earth. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### the inhabitants are like grasshoppers before him

The prophet compares the way Yahweh considers humans to the way humans would consider grasshoppers. Just as grasshoppers are small to humans, humans are small and weak before God. (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

### He stretches out the heavens like a curtain and spreads them out as a tent to live in

These two lines share similar meanings. The prophet speaks of Yahweh creating the heavens as if he had erected a tent in which to live. Alternate translation: "He spreads out the heavens as easily as a person would stretch out a curtain or erect a tent in which to live" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-simile\]\]](#)) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)



## **Isaiah 40:23**

### **He reduces**

Alternate translation: "Yahweh reduces"

## Isaiah 40:24

### They are barely planted & and they wither

The prophet speaks of rulers being helpless before Yahweh as if they were new plants that wither away when a hot wind blows on them. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### They are barely planted, barely sown

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and refer to the point at which the plants or seeds are placed into the ground. They can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "As soon as someone plants them ... as soon as someone sows them" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### he blows upon them

The prophet speaks of Yahweh removing the rulers from power as if Yahweh were a scorching wind that blows upon the plants and causes them to wither. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### the wind carries them away like straw

This simile extends the metaphor of the rulers as plants and Yahweh as the wind that causes them to wither. The wind of Yahweh's judgement will remove the withered plants as easily as wind blows away straw. (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

## Isaiah 40:25

### To whom then will you compare me, whom do I resemble?

Yahweh uses two similar rhetorical questions to emphasize that there is no one like him. Alternate translation: "There is no one to whom you can compare me. There is no one whom I resemble." (See: [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-rquestion\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#)) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

## Isaiah 40:26

### Who has created all these stars?

This is a leading question that anticipates the answer, Yahweh. Alternate translation: "Yahweh has created all these stars!" (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### He leads out their formations

Here the word "formations" refers to military formations. The prophet speaks of the stars as if they were soldiers whom Yahweh commands to appear. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### By the greatness of his might and by the strength of his power

The phrases "the greatness of his might" and "the strength of his power" form a doublet that emphasizes Yahweh's power. Alternate translation: "By his great might and powerful strength" (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**) (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**)

### not one is missing

This negative statement emphasizes the positive. Alternate translation: "every one is present" (See: **Litotes (p.1438)**) (See: **Litotes (p.1438)**)

## Isaiah 40:27

### Why do you say, Jacob, and declare, Israel & vindication”?

The question emphasizes that they should not say what they say. Alternate translation: “You should not say, O people of Israel ... vindication’.” (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### Why do you say, Jacob, and declare, Israel

These two phrases both refer to the people of Israel. Alternate translation: “Why do you say, O people of Israel” (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**) (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**)

### My way is hidden from Yahweh

Yahweh not knowing what happens to them is spoken of as if Yahweh could not see the road upon which they travel. Alternate translation: “Yahweh does not know what happens to me” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### my God is not concerned about my vindication

This could mean: (1) “my God is not concerned about others treating me unjustly” or (2) “my God is not concerned about treating me justly.”

## Isaiah 40:28

### Have you not known? Have you not heard?

Isaiah uses these questions to emphasize that the people should know Yahweh's greatness. See how you translated these in [Isaiah 40:21](#). Alternate translation: "You certainly know and have heard!" (See: **Rhetorical Question (p. 1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### the ends of the earth

The places on the earth that are very far away are spoken of as if they were the places where the earth ends. This phrase also forms a merism and refers to everywhere in between the ends. AT "the farthest places of the earth" or "the entire earth" (See: [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-merism\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 40:29

### He gives strength to the tired; and to the weak he gives renewed energy

These two lines share similar meanings and emphasize that Yahweh strengthens those who have no strength. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### He gives strength

Alternate translation: "Yahweh gives strength"

## **Isaiah 40:30**

(There are no notes for this verse.)



**Isaiah 40:31****they will soar with wings like eagles**

People receiving strength from Yahweh is spoken of as if the people were able to fly like eagles fly. An eagle is a bird often used as a symbol for strength and power. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

**they will run and not be weary; they will walk and not faint**

These two lines share similar meanings. People receiving strength from Yahweh is spoken of as if they were able to run and walk without tiring. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

## Isaiah 41

### Isaiah 41 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in this chapter.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Mocking

Yahweh tells the people to present their best arguments in favor of honoring their idols. In this Yahweh challenges the people. Yahweh mocks or insults these false gods because they are not real and have no power. (See: **god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry (p.1510)**)

## Isaiah 41:1

### Listen before me in silence

Here “me” refers to God.

### you coastlands

This refers to the people who live on the islands and in the lands bordering or beyond the Mediterranean Sea. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-apostrophe\]\]](#)) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### renew their strength

See how you translated this phrase in [Isaiah 40:31](#).

### let them come near and speak; let us come near together to argue a dispute

These two phrases share similar meanings. The second explains the reason for the first. Alternate translation: “then let them come near so they may speak and reason with me” (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

## Isaiah 41:2

### Who has stirred up one from the east, calling him in righteousness to his service?

Yahweh uses this question to emphasize that he is the one who caused this ruler from the east to be victorious. Alternate translation: "I am the one who called this powerful ruler from the east and put him in my good service." (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### He hands nations over to him

Alternate translation: "I give the nations over to him" or "The one who does these things hands nations over to him"

### He turns them to dust with his sword, like windblown stubble with his bow

Turning them to dust and stubble is a metaphor or exaggeration for completely destroying everything the people of these nations have made. The armies of one from the east will conquer these nations and scatter the people easily. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-simile\]\]](#) and **Hyperbole (p.1420)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 41:3

### He pursues them and passes by safely

Alternate translation: "The ruler from the east pursues the nations"

### by a swift path that his feet scarcely touch

This could mean: (1) this is a metaphor in which he and his army moving very quickly is spoken of as if his feet barely touch the ground. Alternate translation: "by a path on which he moves with great speed" or (2) "feet" represents the whole person and the phrase indicates that this is a path that they have not traveled before.

Alternate translation: "by a path that he has never traveled before" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-synecdoche\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 41:4

### Who has performed and accomplished these deeds?

Yahweh uses this question to emphasize that he is the one who has done these things. Alternate translation: "I have performed and accomplished these deeds." (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### Who has summoned the generations from the beginning?

Here the word "generations" represents all of human history, which Yahweh created and directed throughout history. The rhetorical question anticipates the answer, Yahweh. Alternate translation: "I have summoned the generations of humanity from the beginning." (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### performed and accomplished

These two words mean basically the same thing and emphasize that Yahweh is the one who has done these things. (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**) (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**)

### the first, and with the last ones

This could mean: (1) that Yahweh existed before creation and will exist at the end of creation or (2) that Yahweh was before the first generation of humanity and will be at the last generation of humanity.

## Isaiah 41:5

### The isles & the ends of the earth

These phrases represent the people who live in those places. Alternate translation: "People who live on the isles ... people who live at the ends of the earth" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### The isles

You can translate "isles" the same way you translated "coastlands" in [Isaiah 41:1](#).

### the ends of the earth

The places on the earth that are very far away are spoken of as if they were the places where the earth ends. AT "the farthest places of the earth" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### they approach and come

This doublet means that the people gather together. Alternate translation: "they come together" (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**) (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**)

## **Isaiah 41:6**

(There are no notes for this verse.)



## **Isaiah 41:7**

### **anvil**

an iron block on which a person shapes metal with a hammer

### **saying of the welding**

Here the word "welding" refers to the process of fastening the gold to the wood as the workers finish making the idol.

### **They fasten it with nails so it will not topple over.**

Here "it" refers to the idol that they have made.

## **Isaiah 41:8**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## Isaiah 41:9

**you whom I am bringing back from the ends of the earth, and whom I called from the far away places**

These two lines mean basically the same thing and emphasize that Yahweh is bringing the people of Israel back to their land from distant countries. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### **the ends of the earth**

The places on the earth that are very far away are spoken of as if they were the places where the earth ends. See how you translated this in [Isaiah 41:5](#). AT “the farthest places of the earth” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### **I have chosen you and not rejected you**

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. The second states in negative terms what the first states in positive terms. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-litotes\]\]](#)) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

## Isaiah 41:10

### I will uphold you with my righteous right hand

Yahweh strengthening his people is spoken of as if he were holding them with his hand. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)  
(See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### my righteous right hand

Here “right hand” represents Yahweh’s power. This could mean: (1) Yahweh’s right hand is righteous in that he will always do the right thing. Alternate translation: “my righteous power” or (2) Yahweh’s right hand is victorious in that he will always succeed in what he does. Alternate translation: “my victorious power” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)  
(See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## **Isaiah 41:11**

**they will be ashamed and disgraced, all who have been angry with you**

Alternate translation: "all who have been angry with you will be ashamed and disgraced"

**ashamed and disgraced**

These two words mean basically the same thing and emphasize the greatness of their shame. (See: **Doublet (p. 1397)**) (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**)

**they will be as nothing and will perish, those who oppose you**

Alternate translation: "those who oppose you will be as nothing and will perish"

## **Isaiah 41:12**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## Isaiah 41:13

### I & will hold your right hand

Yahweh helping the people of Israel is spoken of as if he were holding their right hand. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)  
(See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 41:14

### Jacob you worm, and you men of Israel

Here “Jacob” and “men of Israel” mean the same thing. Alternate translation: “you people of Israel who are like worms” (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**) (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**)

### Jacob you worm

This could mean: (1) that this refers to the opinions of other nations regarding the people of Israel or (2) that this refers to Israel's own opinion of themselves. Yahweh speaks of their insignificance as if they were a worm. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### this is Yahweh's declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. Translate as in [Isaiah 30:1](#). Alternate translation: “this is what Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, Yahweh, have declared” (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1406)**) (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1406)**)

### Holy One of Israel

See how you translated this phrase in [Isaiah 1:4](#).



## Isaiah 41:15

### **I am making you like a sharp threshing sledge & you will make the hills like chaff**

Yahweh speaks of enabling Israel to defeat their enemies as if he were making the nation a threshing sledge that will level mountains. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### **a sharp threshing sledge**

A threshing sledge was a board with sharp spikes that someone would drag over the wheat to separate the grain from the chaff.

### **two-edged**

This refers to the edges of the spikes that were attached to the threshing sledge. That they are “two-edged” means that they are very sharp.

### **you will thresh the mountains and crush them**

This is a double metaphor. The mountains are a metaphor for grain, and threshing grain is a metaphor for the Israelites defeating the powerful enemy nations near them. Alternate translation: “you will thresh your enemies and crush them as if they were grain, even though they appear to be as strong as mountains” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-hyperbole\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### **you will make the hills like chaff**

The hills are a metaphor for the powerful enemy nations near Israel. People having the wind blow the chaff away after they have threshed the grain is a metaphor for them allowing Yahweh to destroy their enemies. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-simile\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 41:16

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues to use the metaphor of separating grain from chaff to describe how Israel will defeat their enemies.

### **You will winnow them & the wind will scatter them**

Here the word “them” refers to the mountains and hill in [Isaiah 41:15](#). This represents the next step in the process of threshing grain, in which the grain is winnowed to get rid of the chaff. Israel's enemies will disappear like chaff blown away by the wind. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### **the wind will carry them away; the wind will scatter them**

These two phrases mean the same thing. Alternate translation: “the wind will blow them away” (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

## Isaiah 41:17

### General Information:

### General Information:

Yahweh speaks of people who are in extreme need as if they are extremely thirsty, and of his provision for them as if he caused water to appear in places where it normally would not appear. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## **Isaiah 41:18**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## **Isaiah 41:19**

### **the myrtle & the pines and the cypress box trees**

These are types of trees. (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1490)**) (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1490)**)

## Isaiah 41:20

### the hand of Yahweh has done this

Here the word "hand" represents Yahweh himself. Alternate translation: "Yahweh has done this" (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

## Isaiah 41:21

### General Information:

### General Information:

In these verses, Yahweh is mocking the people and their idols. He is challenging the idols to tell what will happen in the future, but he knows they cannot. (See: **Irony (p.1435)**) (See: **Irony (p.1435)**)

## **Isaiah 41:22**

(There are no notes for this verse.)



## Isaiah 41:23

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues to mock the idols and the people who worship them ([Isaiah 41:21-22](#)).

### do something good or evil

The words “good” and “evil” form a merism and represent anything. Alternate translation: “do anything at all” (See: **Merism (p.1440)**) (See: **Merism (p.1440)**)

## Isaiah 41:24

### the one who chooses you

Here “you” is plural and refers to the idols. Alternate translation: “the person who chooses you idols” (See: **Forms of You (p.1408)**) (See: **Forms of You (p.1408)**)

## Isaiah 41:25

### I have raised up one

Yahweh speaks of appointing a person as if he raised that person up. Alternate translation: "I have appointed one" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### from the sun's rising

This refers to the east, the direction from which the sun rises. Alternate translation: "from the east" (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

### him who calls on my name

This could mean: (1) that this person invokes Yahweh for his success or (2) that this person worships Yahweh.

### he will trample the rulers

Conquering the rulers of other nations is spoken of as if it were trampling them under foot. Alternate translation: "he will conquer the rulers" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### like a potter who is treading on the clay

Yahweh compares the way in which this person will trample the other rulers with the way that a potter tramples on clay to mix it with water. (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

**Isaiah 41:26**

**Who announced this from the beginning, that we might know? Before this time, that we may say, "He is right"?**

Yahweh uses these rhetorical questions to mock the idols that the people worship. The implied answers are: (1) that the idols have not done these things and (2) that Yahweh is the one who has done these things. Alternate translation: "None of the idols announced this from the beginning, that we might know. And none of them announced this before time, that we may say, 'He is right.'" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-rquestion\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#)) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

**Indeed none of them decreed it, yes, none heard you say anything**

Alternate translation: "Indeed, none of the idols decreed it. Indeed, no one heard you idols say anything"

## **Isaiah 41:27**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## **Isaiah 41:28**

**not one among them**

Alternate translation: "not one idol"

## Isaiah 41:29

### their cast metal figures are wind and emptiness

Yahweh speaks of the worthlessness of the idols as if the idols are wind and nothing at all. Alternate translation: "their idols are all worthless" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 42

### Isaiah 42 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in this chapter.

Many scholars believe that there are four songs or poems which Isaiah records about the Messiah. Isaiah 42:1-4 is the first of these songs. They are often called the “servant songs” because they focus on the Messiah being a servant. (See: **Christ, Messiah (p.1497)**)

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Servant

Israel is called Yahweh’s servant. The Messiah is also called the servant of Yahweh. It is likely that the two different usages of the word “servant” are intended to contrast with one another.



## **Isaiah 42:1**

### **Behold, my servant**

Alternate translation: "Look, my servant" or "Here is my servant"

### **in him I take delight**

Alternate translation: "with whom I am very happy"

## **Isaiah 42:2**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## Isaiah 42:3

**A crushed reed he will not break, and a dimly burning wick he will not quench**

Yahweh speaks of weak and helpless people as if they were crushed reeds and dimly burning wicks. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### **crushed reed**

A reed is the long, thin stem of a plant like tall grass. If it is crushed, it cannot carry any weight. See how you translated this in [Isaiah 36:6](#).

### **he will not break**

Alternate translation: "My servant will not break"

## Isaiah 42:4

### the coastlands

This refers to the people who live on the islands and in the lands bordering or beyond the Mediterranean Sea. See how you translated this in [Isaiah 41:1](#). Alternate translation: “the people who live on the coastlands” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

**Isaiah 42:5**

**the one who created the heavens and stretched them out, the one who made the earth**

The prophet speaks of Yahweh creating the heavens and the earth as if the heavens and earth were fabric which Yahweh stretched out. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

**gives breath to the people on it and life to those who live on it**

These phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize that Yahweh gives life to every person. The word "breath" is a metonym for life. Alternate translation: "gives life to the people who live on the earth" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#)) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

## Isaiah 42:6

### have called you

Here “you” is singular and refers to Yahweh’s servant. (See: **Forms of You (p.1408)**) (See: **Forms of You (p.1408)**)

### I will & set you as a covenant for the people

Here the word “covenant” is a metonym for the one who establishes or mediates a covenant. Alternate translation: “I will ... make you be the mediator of a covenant with the people” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### a light for the Gentiles

Yahweh speaks of making his servant the one who delivers the nations from bondage as if he were making him a light that shines in dark places for the Gentiles. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 42:7

### to open the eyes of the blind

Causing blind people to see is spoken of as if it were opening their eyes. Also, Yahweh speaks of his servant delivering those who have been wrongly imprisoned as if his servant were restoring sight to blind people. Alternate translation: “to enable the blind to see” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### to release the prisoners from the dungeon, and from the house of confinement those who sit in darkness

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. The verb may be supplied in the second phrase. Alternate translation: “to release the prisoners from the dungeon, and to release those who sit in darkness from the house in which they are confined” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#)) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

## Isaiah 42:8

### **nor my praise with carved idols**

The verb may be supplied from the previous phrase. Alternate translation: “nor will I share my praise with carved idols” (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**) (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**)

### **my praise**

This refers to the praise that Yahweh receives from people.



## Isaiah 42:9

### I will tell you

Here “you” is plural and refers to the people of Israel. (See: **Forms of You (p.1408)**) (See: **Forms of You (p.1408)**)

## **Isaiah 42:10**

**the sea, and all that is in it, the coastlands, and those who live there**

Alternate translation: "and all the creatures that live in the sea, and all those who live on the coastlands"

## Isaiah 42:11

### Let the desert and the cities cry out

This refers to the people who live in the desert and the cities. (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### Kedar

This is a city north of Arabia. See how this was translated in [Isaiah 21:16](#)

### Sela

a city in Edom (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

## **Isaiah 42:12**

### **Let them give glory**

Here “them” refers to the people along the coastlands.

## Isaiah 42:13

### Yahweh will go out as a warrior; as a man of war

Yahweh is compared with a warrior who is ready to defeat his people's enemies. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-simile\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#)) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

### he will stir up his zeal

Here “zeal” refers to the passion that a warrior experiences when he is about to fight a battle. Yahweh stimulating his zeal is spoken of as if he stirred it up like the wind stirs up waves of water. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

**Isaiah 42:14****I have kept quiet for a long time; I have been still and restrained myself**

These two lines share similar meanings. Yahweh's inactivity is described as quietness and stillness. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

**I have been still and restrained myself**

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and indicate that Yahweh has kept himself from acting. Alternate translation: "I have kept myself from doing anything" (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**) (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**)

**I will cry out like a woman in labor; I will gasp and pant**

Yahweh's activity as a shouting warrior is compared with a pregnant woman who cries from labor pains. This emphasizes sudden unavoidable action after a period of inactivity. (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

## Isaiah 42:15

### I will lay waste mountains & will dry up the marshes

Yahweh uses this metaphorical language to describe his great power to conquer his enemies. (See: **Metaphor (p. 1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### the marshes

A marsh is an area of soft, wet land with pools of water.

## Isaiah 42:16

**I will bring the blind by a way that they do not know; in paths that they do not know I will lead them**

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. Alternate translation: "I will lead the blind in paths that they do not know" (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### **the blind**

Yahweh speaks of his people being helpless as if they could not see because they were blind. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### **that they do not know**

This could mean: (1) "that they have never traveled" or (2) "with which they are unfamiliar."

### **I will turn the darkness into light before them**

Yahweh speaks of his people being helpless as if they could not see because they walked in darkness, and of his helping them as if he caused light to shine in the darkness. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)



## Isaiah 42:17

### **They will be turned back, they will be completely put to shame**

Rejecting those who worship idols is spoken of as if it is forcing them to turn back and move the opposite direction. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “I will reject them and put them to shame” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 42:18

### you deaf & you blind

Here “you” is plural and refers to the people of Israel. Yahweh speaks of their failure to listen to him and obey him as if they are deaf and blind. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-you\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Forms of You (p.1408)**)

## Isaiah 42:19

### Who is blind but my servant? Or deaf like my messenger I send?

Yahweh asks these rhetorical questions to scold his people and to emphasize that no one is as blind or deaf as they are. Alternate translation: "No one is as blind as my servant. No one is as deaf as my messenger whom I send." (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### Who is as blind as my covenant partner, or blind as Yahweh's servant?

Yahweh asks these rhetorical questions to scold his people and to emphasize that no one is as blind or deaf as they are. Alternate translation: "No one is as blind as my covenant partner. No one is as blind as Yahweh's servant." (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

## **Isaiah 42:20**

### **You see many things, but do not comprehend**

Alternate translation: "Although you see many things, you do not understand what they mean"

### **ears are open, but no one hears**

The ability to hear is spoken of as if the ears were open. Here the word "hears" refers to understanding what one hears. Alternate translation: "people hear, but no one understands what they hear" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## **Isaiah 42:21**

### **It pleased Yahweh to praise his justice and to make his law glorious**

“Yahweh was pleased to honor his justice by making his law glorious.” The second part of the phrase explains how Yahweh accomplished the first part.

## Isaiah 42:22

### But this is a people robbed and plundered

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “But the enemy has robbed and plundered this people” (See:

**Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### robbed and plundered

These two words mean basically the same thing and emphasize how badly the enemy had plundered them. (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**) (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**)

### they are all trapped in pits, held captive in prisons

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “the enemy has trapped them all in pits and held them captive in prisons” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

## Isaiah 42:23

### General Information:

## General Information:

Here Isaiah begins speaking.

### Who among you

Here “you” is plural and refers to the people of Israel. (See: **Forms of You (p.1408)**) (See: **Forms of You (p.1408)**)

## Isaiah 42:24

### Who gave Jacob over to the robber, and Israel to the looters?

These two phrases mean the same thing. Isaiah uses this as a leading question in order to emphasize the answer that he will give in the next phrase. Alternate translation: "I will tell you who gave the people of Israel over to robbers and looters." (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-rquestion\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#)) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### Was it not Yahweh & refused to obey?

Isaiah uses this rhetorical question to emphasize that Yahweh alone was responsible for Israel's situation, and to explain the reason that Yahweh did it. Alternate translation: "It was certainly Yahweh ... refused to obey." (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### against whom we have sinned

Here the word "we" refers to the people of Israel and to Isaiah. (See: **Exclusive and Inclusive 'We' (p.1404)**) (See: **Exclusive and Inclusive 'We' (p.1404)**)

### in whose ways they refused to walk, and whose law they refused to obey

The word "they" also refers to the people of Israel and to Isaiah. The two phrases mean the same thing. In the first, obeying Yahweh's laws is spoken of as if it were walking in the paths in which Yahweh commanded them to walk. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)



## Isaiah 42:25

### Therefore he

Alternate translation: "Therefore Yahweh"

### he poured out on them his fierce anger

Isaiah speaks of Yahweh's anger as if it were a liquid that could be poured out. Alternate translation: "he showed them just how angry he was" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### on them

"against us." Here "them" refers to the people of Israel, but Isaiah still included himself as part of the people.

### and the violence of war

The word "devastation" can be translated with a verb. Alternate translation: "by devastating them with war" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**)

### Its flames encircled them & it consumed them

Isaiah speaks of Yahweh's fierce anger as if it were a fire that burned the people. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### they did not take it to heart

Paying attention to something and learning from it is spoken of as if it were placing that thing on one's heart. Alternate translation: "they did not pay attention" or "they did not learn from it" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 43

### Isaiah 43 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in this chapter.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Exodus

This chapter pictures Judah's eventual return from exile in Babylon as a kind of second exodus. It was reminiscent of their exodus from Egypt.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Exile

This chapter prophesies about the Jews return from Babylon, but the exile has yet to happen and is still more than a hundred years in the future. These events will show that Yahweh alone is God. (See: [\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/prophet\]\]](#) and [\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-explicit\]\]](#))

## Isaiah 43:1

**he who created you, Jacob, and he who formed you, Israel**

Both clauses mean the same thing. Alternate translation: “the one who created you, O people of Israel” (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

## Isaiah 43:2

### When you pass through the waters & the flames will not destroy you

Yahweh speaks of suffering and difficult experiences as if they are deep waters and fires through which the people walk. The words "waters" and "flames" form a merism and emphasize any difficult circumstance. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-merism\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### When you pass through the waters, I will be with you; and through the rivers, they will not overwhelm you

These two statements mean basically the same thing and emphasize that the people will experience no harm because Yahweh is with them. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### you will not be burned

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "it will not burn you" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 43:3

### **I have given Egypt as your ransom, Cush and Seba in exchange for you**

These two phrases share similar meanings and emphasize that Yahweh will allow Israel's enemy to conquer these nations instead of Israel. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### **Seba**

This is the name of a nation. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

## Isaiah 43:4

### Since you are precious and special in my sight

The words “precious” and “special” mean basically the same thing and emphasize how much Yahweh values his people. Alternate translation: “Because you are very precious to me” (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**) (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**)

### therefore I will give people in exchange for you, and other peoples in exchange for your life

Both phrases mean the same thing. Alternate translation: “therefore I will let the enemy conquer other peoples instead of you” (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

## Isaiah 43:5

**I will bring your offspring from the east, and gather you from the west**

The directions “east” and “west” form a merism and represent from every direction. Alternate translation: “I will bring you and your offspring from every direction” (See: **Merism (p.1440)**) (See: **Merism (p.1440)**)

## Isaiah 43:6

### say to the north & to the south

Yahweh speaks to “the north” and “the south” as if commanding the nations in those locations. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-personification\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#)) (See: **Personification (p.1464)**)

### my sons & my daughters

Yahweh speaks of the people who belong to him as if they were his children. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)



## Isaiah 43:7

### everyone who is called by my name

Here to be called by someone's name represents belonging to that person. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "everyone whom I have called by my name" or "everyone who belongs to me" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### whom I have formed, yes, whom I have made

Both of these mean the same thing and emphasize that it is God who made the people of Israel. (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**) (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**)

## Isaiah 43:8

### the people who are blind & the deaf

Yahweh speaks of those who do not listen to him or obey him as if they were blind and deaf. (See: **Metaphor (p. 1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 43:9

### Who among them could have declared this and announced to us earlier events?

This rhetorical question applies to the gods whom the people of the nations worship. The implied answer is that none of them could do this. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this question as a statement. Alternate translation: "None of their gods could have declared this or announced to us earlier events." (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-explicit\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-rquestion\]\]](#)) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### announced to us earlier events

This phrase refers to their ability to tell about events that happened in the past before they happened. Alternate translation: "announced to us earlier events before they happened" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### Let them bring their witnesses to prove themselves right, let them listen and affirm, 'It is true.'

Yahweh challenges the gods whom the nations worship to provide witnesses who will testify that they have been able to do these things, although he knows that they cannot do so. Alternate translation: "These gods have no witnesses who will prove them right, witnesses who will listen and affirm, 'It is true'" (See: **Irony (p.1435)**) (See: **Irony (p.1435)**)

## Isaiah 43:10

### You & my servant

Here “you” is plural and refers to the people of Israel. The phrase “my servant” refers to the nation, as a whole. (See: **Forms of You (p.1408)**) (See: **Forms of You (p.1408)**)

### Before me & after me

In speaking this way, Yahweh is not saying that there was a time before which he did not exist or a time after which he will not exist. He is asserting that he is eternal and that the gods whom the people of other nations worship are not.

### Before me there was no god formed

Here the word “formed” indicates that Yahweh is speaking of idols that people have made. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “None of the gods whom people have formed existed before me” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-explicit\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### there will be none after me

Alternate translation: “none of those gods will exist after me”

## **Isaiah 43:11**

### **I, I am Yahweh**

The word “I” is repeated to emphasize the focus on Yahweh. Alternate translation: “I alone am Yahweh” or “I myself am Yahweh” (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**) (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**)

### **there is no savior but me**

This can be expressed positively. Alternate translation: “I am the only savior” or “I am the only one who can save you”

## **Isaiah 43:12**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## Isaiah 43:13

### no one can rescue anyone from my hand

Here the word "hand" represents Yahweh's power. Alternate translation: "no one can rescue anyone from my power" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### who can turn it back?

Yahweh uses this question to say that no one can turn back his hand. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this question as a statement. Turning back his hand represents stopping him from doing something. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Isaiah 14:27](#). Alternate translation: "no one can turn it back." or "no one can stop me." (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-rquestion\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

## Isaiah 43:14

### Holy One of Israel

See how you translated this phrase in [Isaiah 1:4](#).

### I send to Babylon and lead them all down

The object of the verb “send” may be supplied in translation. Alternate translation: “I send an army to Babylon” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### lead them all down as fugitives

Alternate translation: “lead all of the Babylonians down as fugitives”

### fugitives

A fugitive is a person who runs away so that his enemy will not capture him.



## **Isaiah 43:15**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## Isaiah 43:16

### who opened a way & mighty waters

Isaiah speaks of the events following the exodus from Egypt, when Yahweh divided the sea to let the Israelites walk through on dry ground but then drowned the Egyptian army. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

## Isaiah 43:17

### who led out & a burning wick

Isaiah speaks of the events following the exodus from Egypt, when Yahweh divided the sea to let the Israelites walk through on dry ground but then drowned the Egyptian army. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### They fell down together; they will never rise again

Dying is spoken of as if it were falling down to the ground. Alternate translation: "They all died together; they will never live again" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-euphemism\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### they are extinguished, quenched like a burning wick

The people dying is spoken of as if they were burning candle wicks that someone has extinguished. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "their lives have ended, like a person extinguishes the flame of a burning candle" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 43:18

**Do not think about these former things, nor consider the things of long ago.**

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize that they are not to worry about what happened in the past. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

## Isaiah 43:19

### Look

This word is used to draw attention to the important information that follows. Alternate translation: “Listen” or “Pay attention”

### do you not perceive it?

Yahweh uses a question to teach the people of Israel. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this question as a statement. Alternate translation: “surely you have noticed it.” (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

## Isaiah 43:20

### wild animals of the field will honor me, the jackals and the ostriches

Here animals honor Yahweh as if they were people. (See: **Personification (p.1464)**) (See: **Personification (p.1464)**)

### the jackals and the ostriches

These are examples of the kinds of animals that will honor Yahweh. See how you translated the names of these animals in [Isaiah 13:21-22](#). The understood information can be supplied to make the meaning clear. Alternate translation: “the jackals and the ostriches will honor me” (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**) (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**)

## **Isaiah 43:21**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## **Isaiah 43:22**

(There are no notes for this verse.)



## **Isaiah 43:23**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## **Isaiah 43:24**

### **sweet-smelling cane**

This is a plant with a pleasant smell used to make anointing oil. It did not grow in the land of Israel so the people had to buy it from other nations.

### **burdened me with your sins, you have wearied me with your evil deeds**

These both mean the same thing and emphasize the complaint Yahweh has with his people. (See: **Parallelism (p. 1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### **burdened me with your sins**

Alternate translation: "troubled me with your sins"

## Isaiah 43:25

### I, yes, I

The word "I" is repeated for emphasis. Alternate translation: "I alone" (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**) (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**)

### who blots out your offenses

Forgiving sins is spoken of as either: (1) blotting them out or wiping them away or (2) erasing a written record of the sins. Alternate translation: "who forgives your offenses like someone wiping something away" or "who forgives your offenses like someone who erases a record of sins" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### for my own sake

Alternate translation: "for my own honor" or "for my own reputation"

### call to mind

Alternate translation: "remember"

## Isaiah 43:26

### present your cause, that you may be proved innocent

Yahweh challenges the people to offer proof that they are innocent of the charges that he has brought against them, although he knows that they cannot do so. Alternate translation: “present your case, but you cannot prove yourselves to be innocent” (See: **Irony (p.1435)**) (See: **Irony (p.1435)**)

### that you may be proved innocent

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “that you may prove yourselves innocent” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## **Isaiah 43:27**

### **Your first father sinned**

This refers to the founder of Israel and may represent either Abraham or Jacob.

## Isaiah 43:28

### I will hand Jacob over to complete destruction

Here to “hand over” represents putting someone under the power of another. The noun “destruction” can be translated with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: “I will cause the enemy to completely destroy Jacob” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-abstractnouns\]\]](#)) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### Israel to abusive humiliation

The verb may be supplied from the previous phrase, with which this phrase is parallel. The noun “humiliation” can be translated with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: “I will allow the enemy to abuse and humiliate Israel” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#) and **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

## Isaiah 44

### Isaiah 44 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in this chapter.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Yahweh's power

There is a prophecy in this chapter that gives the name of the king who will end the exile of the Jews from Babylon and rebuild the temple, even though the exile has not yet even occurred. This emphasizes that Yahweh knows the future, so the translator should translate the name of Cyrus given here. There are many other aspects of this chapter that show Yahweh's power as well. (See: [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/prophet\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/temple\]\]](#))

## Isaiah 44:1

### Jacob my servant

This refers to Jacob's descendants. Alternate translation: "descendants of Jacob, my servants" (See: **Metonymy (p. 1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)



## Isaiah 44:2

### he who made you and formed you in the womb

Yahweh speaks of creating the nation of Israel as if it were forming the nation as a baby in its mother's womb.

Alternate translation: "he who made you, as I form a baby in the womb" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### you, Jeshurun, whom I have chosen

The verb may be supplied from the previous phrase. Alternate translation: "you, Jeshurun, whom I have chosen, do not fear" (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**) (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**)

### Jeshurun

This also refers to the people of Israel. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

## Isaiah 44:3

### I will pour water on the thirsty ground, and flowing streams on the dry ground

Yahweh speaks of giving his Spirit to the people of Israel as if he were causing rain to fall and streams to flow on dry ground. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### the thirsty ground

Dry ground is spoken of as if it were a thirsty person. Alternate translation: "the dry ground" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-personification\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### I will pour my Spirit on your offspring

Yahweh speaks of giving his Spirit to the people as if his Spirit were liquid that he pours out on them. Alternate translation: "I will give my Spirit to your offspring" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### my blessing on your children

The verb may be supplied from the previous phrase. Alternate translation: "I will pour out my blessing on your children" or "I will give my blessing to your children" (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**) (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**)

## Isaiah 44:4

### **They will spring up among the grass, like willows by the streams of water**

The people of Israel being prosperous and multiplying is spoken of as if they were plants that grow because they have plenty of water. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### **willows**

A willow is a tree with thin branches that grows near the water.

## **Isaiah 44:5**

### **another will call out the name of Jacob**

Alternate translation: "another person will say he is a descendant of Jacob"

### **name himself by the name of Israel**

Alternate translation: "call himself a descendant of Israel"

## **Isaiah 44:6**

### **his Redeemer**

Alternate translation: "Israel's Redeemer"

### **Yahweh of hosts**

See how you translated this phrase in [Isaiah 1:9](#).

### **I am the first, and I am the last**

This phrase emphasizes Yahweh's eternal nature. This could mean: (1) "I am the one who began all things, and I am the one who ends all things" or (2) "I am the one who has always lived, and I am the one who always will live." (See: **Merism (p.1440)**) (See: **Merism (p.1440)**)

## Isaiah 44:7

### Who is like me? Let him announce

Yahweh uses this rhetorical question to emphasize that there is no one like him. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this question as a statement. Alternate translation: "If anyone thinks he is like me, let him announce" (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

## Isaiah 44:8

### Do not fear or be afraid

Yahweh uses two similar expressions in order to strengthen his encouragement. Alternate translation: “Do not be afraid” (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**) (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**)

### Have I not declared to you long ago, and announced it?

Yahweh uses this question to emphasize that he is the one who predicted the events that have now happened. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this question as a statement. The word “announced” means basically the same thing as “declared.” Alternate translation: “I declared these things to you long ago.” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-rquestion\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-doublet\]\]](#)) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### Is there any God besides me?

Yahweh uses a question again to emphasize that there is no other God. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this question as a statement. Alternate translation: “There is no God besides me.” (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### There is no other Rock

Yahweh speaks of himself as if he were a large rock under which people can find shelter. This means he has the power to protect his people. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 44:9

### the things they delight in are worthless

Alternate translation: "the idols they delight in are worthless"

### their witnesses cannot see or know anything

This phrase refers to those who worship these idols and who claim to be witnesses of the idols' power. Yahweh speaks of their inability to understand the truth as if they were blind. Alternate translation: "those who serve as witnesses for these idols are like blind people who know nothing" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### they will be put to shame

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "they will be ashamed" or "their idols will put them to shame" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)



## Isaiah 44:10

### Who would form a god or cast an idol that is worthless?

Yahweh is using this question to rebuke those who make idols. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this question as a statement. Alternate translation: "Only fools would form a god or cast an idol that is worthless." (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### cast an idol that is worthless

The word "worthless" does not distinguish worthless idols from idols that have worth, because all idols are worthless. Alternate translation: "cast worthless idols" (See: **Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding (p.1391)**) (See: **Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding (p.1391)**)

## Isaiah 44:11

### all his associates

This could mean: (1) this refers to the associates of the craftsman who makes the idol. Alternate translation: “all of the craftsman’s associates” or (2) this refers to those who associate themselves with the idol by worshiping it. Alternate translation: “all those who worship the idol” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### be put to shame

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “will be ashamed” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### Let them take their stand together

Alternate translation: “Let them all come together before me”

### they will cower

“they will be terrified.” To “cower” is to bend over in fear.

## **Isaiah 44:12**

### **forming it**

Alternate translation: “forming the idol” or “creating the idol”

## **Isaiah 44:13**

### **with a line**

A string was used to outline the shape of the idol in the wood.

### **stylus**

This is a sharp tool to scratch the wood so the craftsman can see where to cut.

### **a compass**

This is a tool with two points that spread out used to help mark the wood to make the idol.

## **Isaiah 44:14**

### **He cuts down**

Alternate translation: "The carpenter cuts down" or "the woodcarver cuts down"

### **cypress tree**

a tall evergreen tree (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1490)**) (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1490)**)

## **Isaiah 44:15**

### **Then a man uses it**

Alternate translation: "The man uses the wood"

### **he makes an idol and bows down to it**

This part of the sentence says basically the same as the first to emphasize it. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

## **Isaiah 44:16**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## **Isaiah 44:17**

(There are no notes for this verse.)



## **Isaiah 44:18**

### **for their eyes are blind and cannot see**

Yahweh speaks of those who cannot understand the foolishness of worshiping idols as if they were blind. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### **for their eyes are blind**

Here “their eyes” represents the whole person. Alternate translation: “for they are blind” (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### **their hearts cannot perceive**

Here the people are represented by their “hearts.” Alternate translation: “they cannot understand” (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

**Isaiah 44:19****Now should I make & something disgusting to worship? Should I bow down to a block of wood?**

Yahweh says that these people should be asking themselves these rhetorical questions. The questions anticipate negative answers and emphasize how foolish it would be for a person to do these things. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind these questions as statements. Alternate translation: "I should not now make ... something disgusting to worship. I should not bow down to a block of wood." (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

## Isaiah 44:20

### It is as if he were eating ashes

Yahweh speaks of a person worshiping an idol as if that person were eating the burned ashes of the wood from which he made the idol. Just as eating ashes does not benefit a person, neither does worshiping an idol. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### his deceived heart misleads him

The heart represents the inner person. Alternate translation: "he misleads himself because he is deceived" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### He cannot rescue himself

Alternate translation: "The person who worships idols cannot save himself"

## Isaiah 44:21

### Jacob, and Israel

This refers to people descended from Jacob, Israel. Alternate translation: “you descendants of Israel” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-doublet\]\]](#)) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### you will not be forgotten by me

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “I will not forget you” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

**Isaiah 44:22**

**I have blotted out, like a thick cloud, your rebellious deeds, and like a cloud, your sins**

Both of these statements mean the same thing. God has removed their sins as quickly and easily as a wind can blow away a cloud. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-simile\]\]](#)) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

**like a cloud, your sins**

The verb may be supplied from the previous phrase. Alternate translation: “like a cloud, I have blotted out your sins” (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**) (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**)

## Isaiah 44:23

### Sing, you heavens & glory in Israel

Here Isaiah speaks various parts of creation as if they were people and commands them to praise Yawheh. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-apostrophe\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-personification\]\]](#)) (See: **Apostrophe (p. 1377)**)

### you depths of the earth

“you lowest parts of the earth.” This could mean: (1) that this refers to very deep places on the earth such as caves or canyons and forms a merism with “heavens” in the previous phrase or (2) that this refers to the place of the dead. (See: **Merism (p.1440)**) (See: **Merism (p.1440)**)

## Isaiah 44:24

### Redeemer

See how you translated this word in [Isaiah 41:14](#).

### he who formed you from the womb

Yahweh speaks of creating the nation of Israel as if it were forming the nation as a baby in its mother's womb. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Isaiah 44:2](#). Alternate translation: "he who made you, as I form a baby in the womb" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### who alone stretched out the heavens

Yahweh speaks of creating the heavens as if they were fabric which he stretched out. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Isaiah 42:5](#). (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## **Isaiah 44:25**

### **omens**

These are signs that people used to attempt to predict the future.

### **the empty talkers**

This refers to people who say things that are meaningless.



## Isaiah 44:26

### who confirmed the words of his servant and brings to pass the predictions of his messengers

Yahweh is saying the same thing twice to emphasize that it is only he, Yahweh, who causes the prophecies to be fulfilled. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### the words of his servant & the predictions of his messengers

The abstract nouns “words” and “predictions” can be translated as verbs. Alternate translation: “what his servant declares ... what his messengers announce” (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**)

### She will be inhabited

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “People will live there again” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### They will be built again

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “People will rebuild them” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### I will raise up their ruins

The phrase “ruins” refers to places that have been destroyed. Yahweh speaks of rebuilding them as if he were raising them up. Alternate translation: “I will rebuild what others have destroyed” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 44:27

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## Isaiah 44:28

### He is my shepherd

Yahweh speaks of Cyrus ruling and protecting the people of Israel as if Cyrus is their shepherd. (See: **Metaphor (p. 1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### She will be rebuilt

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Let the people rebuild the city" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### Let its foundations be laid

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Let the people lay its foundations" (See: **Active or Passive (p. 1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 45

### Isaiah 45 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in this chapter.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Potter and clay

The potter and the clay are important images used in Scripture. They emphasize the power and control of God. This chapter connects this to the truth that Yahweh is the creator of all, which it repeatedly emphasizes. He is even able to “anoint” or chose a future, pagan king. (See: **anoint, anointed, anointing (p.1494)**)

## Isaiah 45:1

### whose right hand I hold

Yahweh helping Cyrus and causing him to be successful is spoken of as if he were holding his right hand. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 45:2

### level the mountains

Yahweh speaks of removing obstacles that would hinder Cyrus's success as if it were leveling mountains before him. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### the mountains

The Hebrew word used in the text is rare and is of an uncertain meaning. Some modern versions have "rough places" or "crooked places."

### their iron bars

This refers to the iron bars on the bronze gates.

## Isaiah 45:3

### the treasures of darkness

Here "darkness" refers to places that are secret. Alternate translation: "treasures in dark places" or "the treasures in secret places" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**)

## Isaiah 45:4

### Jacob & Israel

These both refer to the descendants of Israel. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-doublet\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#)) (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**)



## **Isaiah 45:5**

### **I will arm you for battle**

This could mean: (1) "I will strengthen you for battle" or (2) "I will equip you for battle."

## Isaiah 45:6

### from the rising of the sun, and from the west

Since the sun rises in the east, this phrase forms a merism and means everywhere on earth. Alternate translation: "from every place on earth" (See: **Merism (p.1440)**) (See: **Merism (p.1440)**)

## Isaiah 45:7

**I form the light and create darkness; I bring peace and create disaster**

Both of these expressions form merisms that emphasize that Yahweh is sovereign creator of everything. (See: **Merism (p.1440)**) (See: **Merism (p.1440)**)

## Isaiah 45:8

**You heavens, rain down from above & righteousness spring up together with it**

Yahweh speaks of his righteousness as if it were rain that falls on the earth, and of his righteousness and salvation as plants that grow on the earth. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## **You heavens**

Yahweh momentarily turns his attention from his people and begins to speak to the heavens. (See: **Apostrophe (p.1377)**) (See: **Apostrophe (p.1377)**)

**Isaiah 45:9****any other earthen pot among all the earthen pots in the ground**

Yahweh speaks of himself as if he were a potter, and of the one who would argue with him as if that person and the rest of humanity were all clay pots. Alternate translation: "like one piece of pottery among many other pieces of pottery scattered on the ground" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

**earthen pot**

This could mean: (1) "clay pot" or (2) "piece of broken clay pottery."

**Does the clay say to the potter & on it'?**

Yahweh asks this question to rebuke those who argue with him about what he does. Alternate translation: "The clay should not say to the potter ... on it!" (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

## Isaiah 45:10

### Woe to him who says to a father, & 'What are you giving birth to?'

Yahweh speaks of those who would argue him as if they were unborn children who argue with their own parents.  
(See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### What are you fathering? & What are you giving birth to?

The unborn child asks these rhetorical questions to scold his parents for giving birth to him. These can be translated as statements. Alternate translation: "You should not be my father ... You should give birth to me." or "You are not fathering me correctly ... You are not giving birth to me correctly." (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)  
(See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

## Isaiah 45:11

### Holy One of Israel

See how you translated this phrase in [Isaiah 1:4](#).

### **Why do you ask questions about what I will do for my children? Do you tell me what to do concerning the work of my hands?**

Yahweh uses questions to scold those who argue with him about what he does. Alternate translation: "Do not question me about what I do for my children. Do not tell me ... my hands." (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### **my children**

This refers to the people of Israel.

### **the work of my hands**

Here the word "hands" represents Yahweh. Alternate translation: "the things that I have made" (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

## Isaiah 45:12

### It was my hands that

Here the word "hands" represents Yahweh. Alternate translation: "It was I who" (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### stretched out the heavens

Yahweh speaks of creating the heavens as if they were fabric that he stretched out. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Isaiah 42:5](#).



## Isaiah 45:13

### I stirred Cyrus up in righteousness

Here the word “righteousness” refers to right action. This could mean: (1) that Yahweh has stirred up Cyrus to do the right thing or (2) that Yahweh was right to stir up Cyrus.

### I stirred Cyrus

Yahweh speaks of causing Cyrus to act as if it were stirring him from slumber. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### I will smooth out all his paths

Yahweh speaks of removing obstacles and causing Cyrus to be successful as if he were making the paths smooth on which Cyrus walks. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### He will build my city

This refers to Jerusalem.

### not for price nor bribe

Here the words “price” and “bribe” share similar meanings. Cyrus will not do these things for financial gain. Alternate translation: “he will not do these things for money” (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**) (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**)

### Yahweh of hosts

See how you translated this phrase in [Isaiah 1:9](#).

## Isaiah 45:14

### **The earnings of Egypt and the merchandise of Cush with the Sabeans, men of tall stature, will be brought to you**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "The people of Egypt, Cush, and the tall people of Seba, will bring to you their earnings and their merchandise" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### **The earnings of Egypt**

Alternate translation: "The profits of Egypt"

### **Sabeans**

These are people from the nation of Seba. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

### **to you**

Here "you" refers to the people of Jerusalem. (See: **Forms of You (p.1408)**) (See: **Forms of You (p.1408)**)

## **Isaiah 45:15**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## Isaiah 45:16

### **They will all be ashamed and disgraced together; those who carve idols will walk in humiliation**

These two lines share similar meanings, with the second clarifying the subject of the first. (See: **Parallelism (p. 1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### **They will all be ashamed and disgraced together**

The words “ashamed” and “disgraced” mean basically the same thing and emphasize the intensity of shame. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “Their idols will leave them all completely ashamed” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-doublet\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**)

### **will walk in humiliation**

Living in continual humiliation is spoken of as if it were walking in humiliation. Alternate translation: “will be continually humiliated” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 45:17

### Israel will be saved by Yahweh

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “Yahweh will save the people of Israel” (See: **Active or Passive (p. 1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### you will never again be ashamed or humiliated

Here “you” refers to the people of Israel. The words “ashamed” and “humiliated” mean basically the same thing. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “No one will ever humiliate you again” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-doublet\]\]](#)) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 45:18

### not as a waste

“not to be empty.” Here the word “waste” refers to an empty, barren place.

### but designed it to be inhabited

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “but he designed it so people could live on it” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## **Isaiah 45:19**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## **Isaiah 45:20**

### **refugees**

people who have fled from their homes so the enemy will not capture or kill them



## Isaiah 45:21

### Let them conspire together

Here the word "them" refers to the refugees from among the nations who worship idols.

### Who has shown this from long ago? Who announced it? Was it not I, Yahweh?

Yahweh uses questions to emphasize that he was the one who told them these things would happen. Alternate translation: "I will tell you who has shown this from long ago. I will tell you who announced it. It was I, Yahweh." (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

## Isaiah 45:22

### Turn to me and be saved

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “Turn to me and I will save you” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### all the ends of the earth

The places on the earth that are very far away are spoken of as if they were the places where the earth ends. This phrase also forms a merism and refers to everywhere in between the ends. AT “all the farthest places of the earth” or “the entire earth” (See: [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-merism\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### all the ends of the earth

Here this phrase represents the people who live at “the ends of the earth.” Alternate translation: “you who live at the farthest places of the earth” or “all of you who live on the earth” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 45:23

### To me every knee will bend, every tongue will swear

The words “knee” and “tongue” represent the people. Alternate translation: “Every person will kneel before me, and everyone will swear” (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

## **Isaiah 45:24**

### **They will say**

All the people on the earth are speaking.

## Isaiah 45:25

### In Yahweh all the descendants of Israel will be justified

Here the word “justified” does not refer to Yahweh forgiving their sins, but to proving to the nations that Israel was right to worship him. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “Yahweh will justify all the descendants of Israel” or “Yahweh will vindicate all the descendants of Israel” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 46

### Isaiah 46 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in this chapter.

#### Yahweh and the false gods

This chapter is intended to compare Yahweh with various false Gods whom the Israelites worship. There really is no comparison at all because Yahweh alone is God. (See: **god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry (p.1510)**)

## Isaiah 46:1

### Bel bows down, Nebo stoops; their idols & for weary animals

Isaiah speaks of people placing the idols of Bel and Nebo into a cart for animals to transport as if these gods were made to “bow down” and “stoop.” These are both postures of humiliation. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### Bel & Nebo

These were the two primary gods whom the Babylonians worshiped. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

### their idols

the idols that represented Bel and Nebo

## **Isaiah 46:2**

### **they cannot rescue the images**

Alternate translation: "Bel and Nebo cannot rescue their images"

### **they themselves have gone off into captivity**

Isaiah speaks of people carrying off these idols as if the false gods whom they represent are being carried off to captivity. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)



## Isaiah 46:3

### Listen to me

Here “me” refers to Yahweh.

### who have been carried by me from before your birth, carried from the womb

Yahweh speaks of the nation of Israel as if it were a person, and of the nation's beginning as if it were its birth. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### who have been carried by me

Yahweh speaks of helping and rescuing the people of Israel as if he were carrying them. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “whom I have carried” (See: [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 46:4

**Even to your old age I am he, and until your hair is gray I will carry you**

Yahweh speaks of the nation of Israel becoming very old as if it were an old man with gray hair. (See: **Metaphor (p. 1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

**Isaiah 46:5****To whom will you compare me? Who do you think I resemble, so that we may be compared?**

Yahweh uses questions to emphasize that there is no one like him. Alternate translation: "There is no one to whom you can compare me. I resemble no one, so that we might be compared." (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)  
(See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

**so that we may be compared**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "so that you may compare us" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)  
(See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## **Isaiah 46:6**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## **Isaiah 46:7**

### **They lift it**

“They” refers to the people who make idols and “it” refers to the idol that they have created.

## **Isaiah 46:8**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## **Isaiah 46:9**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## Isaiah 46:10

**I announce the end from the beginning, and beforehand what has not yet happened**

This basically repeats the same idea for emphasis. The verb from the first phrase may be supplied for the second. Alternate translation: "I announce the end from the beginning, and I announce beforehand what has not yet happened" (See: [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#)) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)



## **Isaiah 46:11**

### **I call a bird of prey from the east**

Yahweh speaks of Cyrus as if he were “a bird of prey.” As a bird swiftly captures its prey, so Cyrus will swiftly accomplish Yahweh’s purpose to conquer the nations. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### **I have spoken; I will also accomplish it; I have purposed, I will also do it.**

This repeats the same idea for emphasis. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

## Isaiah 46:12

### who are far from doing what is right

Yahweh speaks of the people stubbornly doing wrong as if they were physically far away from doing the right thing. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 46:13

### my salvation does not wait

Yahweh speaks of saving his people soon as if his salvation were a person who does not wait to act. If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **salvation**, you can express the same idea with a verb. Alternate translation: "I will not wait to save you" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-personification\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-abstractnouns\]\]](#)) (See: **Personification (p.1464)**)

## Isaiah 47

### Isaiah 47 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in this chapter.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Babylon

This chapter prophesied the destruction of Babylon. At the time that the prophesy was written, Assyria was still in power and Babylon had not yet become a world power. The Chaldeans were not yet a powerful nation either. The people of Judah would become servants or slaves of Babylon and be forced to work very hard. (See: **prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess (p.1525)**)

## Isaiah 47:1

### General Information:

## General Information:

In this chapter, Yahweh speaks to Babylon about her downfall as if she were a queen who is humiliated. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-personification\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### **sit in the dust, virgin daughter of Babylon; sit on the ground & daughter of the Chaldeans.**

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. Sitting in the dust was a sign of humiliation. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-symaction\]\]](#)) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### **virgin daughter of Babylon & daughter of the Chaldeans**

Both of these phrases refer to the city, Babylon, which is spoken of as if it were a daughter. That the city is a “daughter” indicates how people think fondly of her. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### **without a throne**

Here “throne” refers to the power to rule. Alternate translation: “without the power to rule” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### **You will no longer be called dainty and delicate**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “People will no longer call you dainty and delicate” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### **dainty and delicate**

These two words share similar meanings. They describe one who is beautiful and lives in luxury. Alternate translation: “very beautiful” or “very luxurious” (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**) (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**)

## **Isaiah 47:2**

### **millstone**

a large stone used to grind grain

## Isaiah 47:3

Yahweh continues to speak to Babylon about her downfall as if she were a queen who is humiliated. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-personification\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### Your nakedness will be uncovered

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "You will be naked" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### your shame will be seen

Here the word "shame" is a euphemism for one's private parts. This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "people will see your shame" or "people will see your private parts" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-euphemism\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Euphemism (p.1402)**)

## Isaiah 47:4

### Our Redeemer

“Our” refers to Isaiah and the people of Israel. See how you translated “Redeemer” in [Isaiah 41:14](#). (See: **Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’ (p.1404)**) (See: **Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’ (p.1404)**)

### Yahweh of hosts

See how you translated this phrase in [Isaiah 1:24](#).

### Holy One of Israel

See how you translated this phrase in [Isaiah 5:16](#).



## Isaiah 47:5

### daughter of the Chaldeans

This phrase refers to the city, Babylon, which is spoken of as if it were a daughter. That the city is a “daughter” indicates how the Chaldeans think fondly of her. See how you translated this phrase in [Isaiah 47:1](#).

### for you will no longer be called

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “for people will no longer call you” (See: **Active or Passive (p. 1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### queen of kingdoms

Yahweh speaks of Babylon being the capital city of the Babylonian empire as if it were a queen who ruled many kingdoms. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 47:6

Yahweh continues to speak to Babylon about her downfall as if she were a queen who is humiliated. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-personification\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### I was angry

Here "I" refers to Yahweh.

### I defiled my heritage

Yahweh speaks of the people of Israel being his special possession as if they were his heritage or inheritance. Alternate translation: "I defiled my people, who are my special possession" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### gave them over into your hand

Here the word "hand" represents Babylon's power or control. Alternate translation: "I put them under your power" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### you placed a very heavy yoke on the old people

Yahweh speaks of the Babylonians oppressing the old people as if they had treated the old people like cattle and put heavy yokes on their necks. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 47:7

### I will rule forever as sovereign queen

Babylon speaks of permanently ruling over many nations as if she were a queen who would rule forever. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### You did not take these things to heart

Yahweh speaks of thinking carefully about something as if it were placing that thing on one's heart. Alternate translation: "You did not consider these things" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 47:8

Yahweh continues to speak to Babylon about her downfall as if she were a queen who is humiliated. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-personification\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### you who love pleasure

“you luxurious one.” This refers to the many luxuries that Babylon enjoyed.

### sit securely

This refers to Babylon's false sense of security in thinking that she will never lose her position of wealth and honor. Alternate translation: “who think you are safe” (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

### I will never sit as a widow & loss of children

Babylon believing that other nations will never be able to conquer her is spoken of as if she will never become a widow or never have children die. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### I will never sit as a widow

Alternate translation: “I will never become a widow”

## **Isaiah 47:9**

### **in a moment in one day**

Alternate translation: "suddenly at the same time"

## Isaiah 47:10

Yahweh continues to speak to Babylon about her downfall as if she were a queen who is humiliated. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-personification\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### you say in your heart

Here the word "heart" refers to the inner person. Alternate translation: "you say to yourself" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 47:11

### Disaster will overcome you

Yahweh speaks of disaster as if it were a person who captures Babylon. Alternate translation: "You will experience disaster" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### Destruction will fall on you

Yahweh speaks Babylon being destroyed as if destruction were an object that falls upon the city. Alternate translation: "You will experience destruction" or "Others will destroy you" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### Calamity will strike you

Yahweh speaks of Babylon experiencing calamity as if calamity were a person who strikes Babylon. Alternate translation: "You will experience calamity" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 47:12

Yahweh continues to speak to Babylon about her downfall as if she were a queen who is humiliated. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-personification\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### **Persist in casting your spells & perhaps you will scare away disaster**

Yahweh mocks Babylon by telling her to continue to practice her sorcery to keep bad things away, but he knows that it will not help her. (See: **Irony (p.1435)**) (See: **Irony (p.1435)**)



## **Isaiah 47:13**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## Isaiah 47:14

Yahweh continues to speak to Babylon about her downfall as if she were a queen who is humiliated. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-personification\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### they will become like stubble. The fire will burn them up

Yahweh compares the magicians and sorcerers to straw that burns quickly in a fire. This means that Yahweh will destroy them as easily as fire burns stubble, and so they are powerless to save Babylon. (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

### the hand of the flame

Here the word “hand” represents strength. Alternate translation: “the power of the flame” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### There are no coals to warm them and no fire for them to sit by

Yahweh emphasizes that this is a destructive fire by stating that it is not one that people will use to warm themselves.

## **Isaiah 47:15**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## Isaiah 48

### Isaiah 48 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in this chapter.

#### Yahweh and the false gods

This chapter is set up to compare Yahweh with various false Gods whom the Israelites worship. There really is no comparison between the two because Yahweh alone is God. (See: **god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry** (p.1510))

#### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Exile

Yahweh explains purpose behind the Jews exile in Babylon, even though it is still in the future. This emphasizes that Yahweh is much more powerful than the false gods.

## Isaiah 48:1

### Hear this

"Listen to my message." Yahweh is speaking.

### house of Jacob

Here "house" refers to the descendants of Jacob. Alternate translation: "descendants of Jacob" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### who are called by the name Israel

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "whom everyone calls the people of Israel" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### have come from the sperm of Judah

This phrase emphasizes that they are the direct, physical descendants of Judah. Alternate translation: "are the descendants of Judah" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### invoke the God of Israel

Alternate translation: "call on the God of Israel"

## Isaiah 48:2

### they call themselves

This refers to the people of Israel. Alternate translation: “you call yourselves” (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1406)**) (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1406)**)

### the holy city

This refers to Jerusalem.

### Yahweh of hosts

See how you translated this phrase in [Isaiah 1:9](#).

## Isaiah 48:3

### they came out from my mouth

“Mouth” refers to someone speaking. Alternate translation: “I spoke these things” (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

**Isaiah 48:4****your neck muscles tight as iron, and your forehead like bronze**

Yahweh compares the tightness of their neck muscles and the hardness of their foreheads to the hardness of iron and bronze. Here, to have a tight neck or a hard forehead is a metaphor that means the people are stubborn. Alternate translation: "it is as if your necks were iron and your heads were bronze" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-simile\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)



## Isaiah 48:5

**I declared these things to you beforehand; before they happened I informed you**

This is saying the same thing twice for emphasis. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

## Isaiah 48:6

### will you not admit what I said is true?

Yahweh uses a question to scold the people of Israel for not admitting what they should know is true. Alternate translation: "you are stubborn and will not admit what I said is true." (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

## **Isaiah 48:7**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## Isaiah 48:8

### these things were not unfolded to your ears beforehand

Yahweh speaks of explaining something as if it were unfolding it. The word “ears” represents the people who are listening. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “I did not explain these things to you beforehand” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-synecdoche\]\]](#) and **Active or Passive (p. 1374)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### from birth

Yahweh speaks of the nation’s beginning as if it were its birth. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 48:9

### For the sake of my name I will defer my anger

Here the word "name" refers to Yahweh's reputation. Alternate translation: "For the sake of my reputation I will delay my anger" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### for my honor I will hold back from destroying you

This part of the sentence means basically the same thing as the first part. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

## Isaiah 48:10

**Look, I refined you, but not as silver; I have purified you in the furnace of affliction**

Yahweh speaks of using affliction to purify his people as if they were precious metals and affliction were a furnace in which he refines them. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 48:11

### for how can I allow my name to be profaned?

Yahweh uses a question to emphasize that he can never allow his own name to be dishonored. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “for I cannot allow anyone to profane my name.” (See: **Rhetorical Question (p. 1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

## Isaiah 48:12

### Jacob, and Israel

Both of these refer to the people of Israel. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-doublet\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#)) (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**)

### I am the first, I also am the last

This phrase emphasizes Yahweh's eternal nature. This could mean: (1) "I am the one who began all things, and I am the one who ends all things" or (2) "I am the one who has always lived, and I am the one who always will live." See how you translated a similar phrase in [Isaiah 44:6](#). (See: **Merism (p.1440)**) (See: **Merism (p.1440)**)



## Isaiah 48:13

### my hand laid the foundation of the earth, and my right hand spread out the heavens

Here “hand” refers to Yahweh. Alternate translation: “I laid the foundation of the earth, and I spread out the heavens” (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### the foundation of the earth

The word “foundation” normally refers to a stone structure that gives support to a building from underneath. Here it describes a similar structure that was thought to support and hold the earth in place. See how you translated this in [Isaiah 24:18](#).

### spread out the heavens

Yahweh speaks of creating the heavens as if they were fabric which Yahweh stretched out. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Isaiah 42:5](#). (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### when I call to them, they stand up together

Standing up when Yahweh calls is a metaphor for being ready to obey him. Yahweh speaks of the earth and the heavens as if they were able to hear him and obey him. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-personification\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### when I call to them

This could mean: (1) “when I call the earth and the heavens” or (2) “when I call the stars in the heavens.”

## **Isaiah 48:14**

### **Who among you has announced these things?**

Yahweh uses a question to emphasize that the idols have not told them these things. Alternate translation: "None of your idols has told this to you." (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### **Yahweh's ally will accomplish his purpose against Babylon. He will carry out Yahweh's will against the Chaldeans**

Here "ally" refers to Cyrus. Both of these sentences mean the same thing and are used for emphasis. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### **his purpose**

Alternate translation: "Yahweh's purpose"

## Isaiah 48:15

**I, I**

The word "I" is repeated for emphasis. Alternate translation: "I myself" (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**) (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**)

## Isaiah 48:16

### I have not spoken in secret

This can be expressed positively. Alternate translation: "I have spoken plainly and clearly" (See: **Double Negatives (p.1394)**) (See: **Double Negatives (p.1394)**)

### sent me

Here "me" refers to an unknown servant of Yahweh, maybe Isaiah or Cyrus or the promised Messiah.

## Isaiah 48:17

### your Redeemer & your God

Here “your” refers to the people of Israel. (See: **Forms of You (p.1408)**) (See: **Forms of You (p.1408)**)

### Redeemer

See how you translated this word in [Isaiah 41:14](#).

### Holy One of Israel

See how you translated this phrase in [Isaiah 1:4](#).

### who leads you by the way that you should go

Yahweh teaching the people how they should live is spoken of as if he were leading them to walk on the correct paths. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 48:18

### If only you had obeyed my commandments

Yahweh describes something that could have happened but did not. (See: **Hypothetical Situations (p.1424)**) (See: **Hypothetical Situations (p.1424)**)

### Then your peace and prosperity would have flowed like a river, and your salvation like the waves of the sea

These two phrases share similar meanings. In both, Yahweh speaks of Israel's experiencing abundant blessings as if those blessings flowed like water. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### your salvation like the waves of the sea

The verb may be supplied from the previous phrase. Alternate translation: "your salvation would have flowed like the waves of the sea" (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**) (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**)

## Isaiah 48:19

**Your descendants would have been as numerous as the sand, and the children from your womb as numerous as the grains of sand**

These both mean that the people would have had more descendants than they could count. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

**the children from your womb**

Yahweh speaks of the descendants of the people of Israel as if they were children to which the nation gives birth. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

**their name would not have been cut off nor blotted out**

The people of Israel being destroyed is spoken of as if their name had been cut off, as one would cut a piece of cloth or cut a branch from a tree, or blotted out. This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "I would not have cut off nor blotted out their name" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

**their name**

Here the word "name" refers to the descendants who would carry on the name of Israel. Alternate translation: "they" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

**cut off nor blotted out**

These two expressions in this context refer to destroying the people. Alternate translation: "destroyed" (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**) (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**)

## Isaiah 48:20

### to the ends of the earth

The places on the earth that are very far away are spoken of as if they were the places where the earth ends. This phrase also forms a merism and refers to everywhere in between the ends. Alternate translation: “to all the farthest places of the earth” or “to the entire earth” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-merism\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### his servant Jacob

This refers to the descendants of Jacob. Alternate translation: “the people of Israel, his servants” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)



## **Isaiah 48:21**

### **They did not thirst & the waters gushed out**

This refers to an event in the history of the people of Israel when Yahweh took care of them while they lived in the desert after escaping Egypt.

## Isaiah 48:22

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## Isaiah 49

### Isaiah 49 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in this chapter.

Many scholars believe that there are four songs or poems which Isaiah records about the Messiah. Isaiah 49:1-6 is the second of these songs. They are often called the “servant songs” because they focus on the Messiah being a servant. (See: **Christ, Messiah (p.1497)**)

#### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

##### A day of salvation

It is unclear if this is a reference to the gospel proclaimed by the Messiah or to the day of restoration of all things. The translator should not try to explain its reference to the reader. (See: [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/save\]\]](#), [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/goodnews\]\]](#) and **restore, restoration (p.1530)**)

## Isaiah 49:1

### Listen to me

Here “me” refers to Yahweh’s servant.

### you coastlands

This refers to the people who live on the coastlands. Alternate translation: “you who live on the coastlands” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 49:2

### He has made my mouth like a sharp sword

Here the word "mouth" represents the words that he speaks. His words are compared to a sharp sword to emphasize that they will be effective. Alternate translation: "He has made my words as effective as a sharp sword" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-simile\]\]](#)) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### he hid me in the shadow of his hand

Yahweh protecting his servant and keeping his purpose secret is spoken of as if Yahweh's hand cast a shadow over him. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### he has made me into a polished arrow; in his quiver he has hidden me

Yahweh's servant being able to carry out Yahweh's purposes effectively is spoken of as if the servant were a sharp, new arrow. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### in his quiver he has hidden me

Yahweh protecting his servant and keeping his purpose secret is spoken of as if Yahweh kept him hidden in a quiver. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### quiver

a case used to carry arrows

## **Isaiah 49:3**

### **He said**

Alternate translation: "Yahweh said"

### **You are my servant, Israel**

Alternate translation: "You are my servant, whom I call Israel"

## **Isaiah 49:4**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## Isaiah 49:5

### that Israel would be gathered to him

This part of the sentence means the same as the part before it. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "to bring the people of Israel back to himself" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#)) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### I am honored in the eyes of Yahweh

The eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Yahweh has honored me" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)



## Isaiah 49:6

### I will make you a light to the Gentiles

The servant bringing Yahweh's message to the Gentiles and helping them to understand it is spoken of as if Yahweh made the servant a light that shines among the Gentiles. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Isaiah 42:6](#). (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### to the ends of the earth

The places on the earth that are very far away are spoken of as if they were the places where the earth ends. This phrase also forms a merism and refers to everywhere in between the ends. AT "to all the farthest places of the earth" or "to the entire earth" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-merism\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 49:7

### Redeemer

See how you translated this word in [Isaiah 41:14](#).

### **to the one whose life is despised, hated by the nations, and a slave of rulers**

Here the word "life" represents the person. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "to the one whom people despised, whom the nations hated and held as slaves" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### Holy One of Israel

See how you translated this phrase in [Isaiah 1:4](#).

## Isaiah 49:8

**At a time I decide to show my favor I will answer you, and in a day of salvation I will help you**

These two clauses mean basically the same thing. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### **I will answer you**

Here "you" refers to Yahweh's servant.

### **in a day of salvation**

The word "salvation" can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: "when the time comes for me to save you" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**)

### **give you as a covenant for the people**

Here the word "covenant" is a metonym for the one who establishes or mediates a covenant. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Isaiah 42:6](#). Alternate translation: "make you be the mediator of a covenant with the people" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### **to rebuild the land**

Here the word "land" represents the cities in the land that had been destroyed. Alternate translation: "to rebuild the ruined places in the land" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### **to reassign the desolate inheritance**

Yahweh speaks of the land as if it were an inheritance that the people of Israel received as a permanent possession. It is implied that the servant is to reassign the land to the people of Israel. Alternate translation: "to reassign the desolate land to the people of Israel as their inheritance" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-explicit\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 49:9

**They will graze along the roads, and on all the bare slopes will be their pasture**

Yahweh speaks of the people living freely and prosperously as if they were sheep that had plenty of pasture in which to graze. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 49:10

### They will not

Here “they” refers to God’s people.

### nor will the heat or sun beat on them

Here the word “heat” describes the word “sun.” The people suffering from the sun’s heat is spoken of as if the heat struck them. Alternate translation: “nor will they suffer from the sun’s heat” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-hendiadys\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Hendiadys (p.1413)**)

### for he who has mercy on them & he will guide them

Yahweh speaks of himself in the third person. He speaks of protecting the people and caring for them as if he were their shepherd. Alternate translation: “I, the one who has mercy on them ... I will guide them” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-123person\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1406)**)

## Isaiah 49:11

### **I will make all my mountains into a road, and make my highways level**

Yahweh speaks of guiding his people safely and removing obstacles from their path as if he turned mountains into roads and level highways. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 49:12

### the land of Sinim

The location of this place is uncertain, but it may refer to a region in the southern part of Egypt. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

## Isaiah 49:13

**Sing, heavens, and be joyful, earth; break into singing, you mountains!**

Isaiah turns his attention from the people of Israel and speaks to the heavens, earth, and mountains as if they were people. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-apostrophe\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-personification\]\]](#)) (See: **Apostrophe (p.1377)**)



## Isaiah 49:14

### But Zion said

The word “Zion” is another name for Jerusalem. Isaiah speaks of the city as if it were a woman who complains that Yahweh has forgotten her. (See: **Personification (p.1464)**) (See: **Personification (p.1464)**)

## Isaiah 49:15

**Can a woman forget her baby, nursing at her breast, so she does not have compassion on the son she has borne?**

Yahweh uses a question to help his people understand that he will never forget about them or stop caring for them. Alternate translation: "A woman would not forget her nursing baby or stop caring for the son she bore." (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

## Isaiah 49:16

### I have inscribed your name on my palms

Yahweh speaks of his unwavering devotion to Zion as if he had written her name on the palms of his hands. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### your walls are continually before me

Yahweh speaks of always thinking about Zion as if her walls were always before him. The word "walls" is a metonym for the city. Alternate translation: "I am continually thinking about your walls" or "I am always thinking about you" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 49:17

### Your children are hurrying back

Yahweh speaks of the people who are returning to live in Jerusalem as if they were the city's children. Alternate translation: "Your inhabitants are hurrying back" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 49:18

**you will surely wear them like jewelry, and you will put them on like a bride**

Yahweh speaks of the inhabitants of Zion as if they were jewelry that the city wears to show her beauty and joy.  
(See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

**you will put them on like a bride**

The last part of the phrase can be clarified from the previous line. Alternate translation: “you will put them on, like a bride wears jewelry” (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**) (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**)

## Isaiah 49:19

### Though you were a waste and desolate

The words “a waste” and “desolate” mean basically the same thing and emphasize that the enemy has destroyed Zion and left it empty. Alternate translation: “Though you were completely desolate” (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**) (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**)

### those who devoured you

The enemy destroying Zion is spoken of as if they had devoured it. Alternate translation: “those who destroyed you” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 49:20

### The children born during the time of your bereavement

Yahweh speaks of the time when the people of Jerusalem were in exile as if the city was bereaved of her children. Those who were born while the people were in exile are spoken of as the city's children. Alternate translation: "Those who will inhabit you, who were born while the people were in exile" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### The place is too cramped for us

This means that there will be so many people that the city will be too small for them all to live in it.

## Isaiah 49:21

### Who has borne these children for me?

Zion speaks of the people who are returning to inhabit the city as if those people were her children. Zion's question expresses her surprise that so many children now belong to her. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-rquestion\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### I was bereaved and barren, exiled and divorced

Zion describes herself as a woman incapable of having more children. She indicates the reasons for her great surprise. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### I was bereaved and barren

Alternate translation: "I was mourning over my dead children and unable to have more"

### exiled and divorced

Alternate translation: "I was sent away, without a husband"

### Who has raised these children? Look, I was left all alone; where did these come from?

Again, Zion uses questions to express her surprise. Alternate translation: "Look, I was left all alone; now all of these children that I did not raise have come to me." (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)



## **Isaiah 49:22**

### **I will raise my hand to the nations; I will raise my signal flag to the peoples**

These two clauses mean basically the same thing. Alternate translation: "I will raise my hand and signal with a flag for the people of the nations to come" (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### **They will bring your sons in their arms and carry your daughters on their shoulders**

Yahweh speaks of the people who will inhabit Jerusalem as if they were the city's children. He also speaks of the people of other nations helping the Israelites to return to Jerusalem as if they were carrying the Israelites. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 49:23

### **Kings will be your foster fathers, and their queens your nursemaids**

Yahweh speaks of the people who will inhabit Zion as if they were the city's children. The terms "foster fathers" and "nursemaids" refer to men and women who become responsible for the care of children. Alternate translation: "The kings and queens of other nations will provide for your inhabitants" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### **they will bow down to you with their faces to the earth and lick the dust of your feet**

These phrases describe gestures that people used to express complete submission to a superior.

### **lick the dust of your feet**

This could mean: (1) that this is a literal expression of submission where the person licks the dust off of a superior's foot or from the ground at the superior's foot or (2) that this is an idiom that describes a person prostrating himself before a superior. (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

### **will not be put to shame**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "will not be ashamed" or "will not be disappointed" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 49:24

### Can the spoils be taken from the warrior, or captives be rescued from the fierce?

Isaiah uses a question to express the difficulty of taking anything from a mighty soldier or a very strong warrior. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "A person cannot take the spoils from a warrior or rescue captives from fierce soldiers." (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-rquestion\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### spoils

valuable items taken from the losers in a battle

## Isaiah 49:25

### **the captives will be taken away from the warrior, and spoils will be rescued**

Yahweh says that he will do what is usually impossible for people to do. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "I will take the captives from the warrior, and I will rescue the spoils" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### **I will & save your children**

Yahweh speaks of the people who will inhabit Zion as if they were the city's children. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 49:26

### **I will feed your oppressors with their own flesh**

This could mean: (1) the oppressors will be so hungry that they will eat the flesh of their friends who have died. Alternate translation: "I will cause your oppressors to eat their own flesh" or (2) Yahweh speaks of the oppressors fighting against and destroying themselves as if they were eating themselves. Alternate translation: "I will cause your oppressors to destroy themselves, as if they were eating their own flesh" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### **they will get drunk on their own blood, as if it were wine**

This could mean: (1) the oppressors will be so thirsty that they drink the blood of their friends who have died. Alternate translation: "they will drink their friends' blood and be like weak people who are drunk on wine" or (2) Yahweh speaks of the oppressors fighting against and destroying themselves as if they were drinking their own blood. Alternate translation: "they will shed so much of their friends' blood that it will be as though they were getting drunk with wine" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 50

### Isaiah 50 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in this chapter.

Many scholars believe that there are four songs or poems which Isaiah records about the Messiah. Isaiah 50:4-9 is the third of these songs. They are often called the “servant songs” because they focus on the Messiah being a servant. (See: **Christ, Messiah (p.1497)**)

#### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Rhetorical Questions

There are many rhetorical questions in this chapter. These questions prove Yahweh's point and are intended to convince the readers. (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

## Isaiah 50:1

### Where is the certificate of divorce with which I divorced your mother?

Yahweh speaks of Zion as if the city were the mother of the people who lived there and of sending the people into exile as if he were divorcing their mother. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### Where is the certificate of divorce with which I divorced your mother?

Yahweh asks this rhetorical question so that the people would produce “the certificate of divorce,” which would provide the reason Yahweh sent them into exile. Alternate translation: “Show me the certificate of divorce with which I divorced your mother.” (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### To which of my creditors did I sell you?

Yahweh speaks of sending the people into exile as if he were selling them. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### To which of my creditors did I sell you?

Yahweh asks this question to emphasize that he did not sell them because he owed a debt to a creditor. It is implied that this is what the people had thought. Alternate translation: “I did not sell you because I owed a debt to someone.” (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### you were sold because of your sins, and because of your rebellion, your mother was sent away

Yahweh gives the reason for sending the people into exile, which he speaks of as if he had sold them and divorced their mother. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “I sold you because of your sins, and I divorced your mother because of your rebellion” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 50:2

### Why did I come but there was no one there? Why did I call but no one answered?

These two sentences mean basically the same thing. Yahweh uses questions to emphasize that the people are in exile because they did not respond to him, not because he was unwilling to save them. Alternate translation: "When I came to you, you should have been there, but you were not. When I called you, you should have answered, but you did not." or "When I came to speak to you, you did not respond to me." (See: [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-rquestion\]\]](#)) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### Was my hand too short to ransom you? Was there no power in me to rescue you?

Yahweh uses two similar questions to rebuke the people for believing that he was not strong enough to rescue them. Alternate translation: "My hand was certainly not too short for me to ransom you, and I had the power to rescue you!" or "I certainly have the power to rescue you from your enemies." (See: [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-rquestion\]\]](#)) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### Was my hand too short

Here the word "hand" represents Yahweh's power. Yahweh not being strong enough is spoken of as if his hand were short. Alternate translation: "Was I not strong enough" (See: [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### Was there no power in me

Alternate translation: "Did I not have the power"

### I make the rivers a desert

Yahweh speaks of drying up the rivers as if he were turning them into a desert. Alternate translation: "I make the rivers as dry as a desert" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### their fish die for lack of water and rot

"their fish die and rot for lack of water." The word "their" refers to the sea and the rivers.



**Isaiah 50:3****I clothe the sky with darkness; I cover it with sackcloth**

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. Yahweh speaks of causing the sky to become dark as if he were clothing it with sackcloth. Alternate translation: "I make the sky dark, as if it were wearing dark sackcloth" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 50:4

### General Information:

## General Information:

Yahweh's servant begins to speak.

### The Lord Yahweh has given me a tongue as one of those who are taught

The word "tongue" represents what he says. This could mean: (1) Yahweh has enabled him to speak as one who has learned to speak skillfully. Alternate translation: "The Lord Yahweh has enabled me to be a skillful speaker" or (2) Yahweh has taught him what to say. Alternate translation: "The Lord Yahweh has enabled me to speak what he has taught me" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### he awakens my ear to hear

Here "my ear" refers to Yahweh's servant. Yahweh enabling him to hear and understand what Yahweh teaches him is spoken of as if Yahweh awakened his ear from sleep. Alternate translation: "he has enabled me to understand what he says" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-synecdoche\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### like those who are taught

The servant compares himself with a student who learns from his teacher. This could mean: (1) "like one who learns from his teacher" or (2) "like one whom he has taught" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-simile\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

## Isaiah 50:5

### The Lord Yahweh has opened my ear

Yahweh enabling his servant to hear and understand is spoken of as if Yahweh opened his ear. Alternate translation: "The Lord Yahweh has enabled me to hear and understand him" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### I was not rebellious, nor did I turn away backward

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. Disobeying what Yahweh said is spoken of as if it were turning one's back toward him. This can be stated in positive terms. Alternate translation: "I obeyed what he said" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

## **Isaiah 50:6**

**I gave my back to those who beat me, and my cheeks to those who plucked out my beard**

Allowing people to beat him and pluck out his beard is spoken of as if it were giving his back and cheeks to them. Alternate translation: "I allowed people to beat me on my back and to pluck out my beard from my cheeks" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

**I did not hide my face from acts of shame and spitting**

Hiding one's face means to protect oneself. Alternate translation: "I did not defend myself when they mocked me and spat on me" (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

## Isaiah 50:7

### therefore I am not disgraced

Even though the servant has been mistreated, he will not be ashamed because he has obeyed Yahweh. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “therefore I will not be ashamed” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### so I have made my face like flint

Here “my face” refers to the servant. The servant being steadfastly determined to obey Yahweh is spoken of as if his face were as hard as flint. Alternate translation: “so I am absolutely determined” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-synecdoche\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### for I know that I will not be put to shame

The servant looks to the future with confidence, secure in Yahweh's calling. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “for I know that my enemies will not be able to make me feel shame” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 50:8

### Who will oppose me? Let us stand & Who is my accuser? Let him come

The servant uses these questions to emphasize that there is no one who can legitimately accuse him of wrong.

Alternate translation: "If anyone would oppose me, let us stand ... If anyone would accuse me, let him come" (See:

**Rhetorical Question (p.1475))** (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475))**)

## Isaiah 50:9

### Who will declare me guilty?

The servant uses this question to assert that no one can declare him guilty. Alternate translation: "There is no one who can declare me guilty." (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### they will all wear out like a garment; the moth will eat them up

There being no one left to accuse the servant of being guilty is spoken of as if the accusers were garments that wear thin and are eaten by moths. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 50:10

**Who among you fears Yahweh? Who obeys the voice of his servant? Who walks in deep darkness without light? He should & his God.**

The servant uses these questions to identify those to whom he is speaking. Alternate translation: "If someone among you fears Yahweh and obeys the voice of his servant, but he walks in deep darkness without light, then he should ... his God." (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

**obeys the voice of his servant**

Here the word "voice" represents what the servant says. Alternate translation: "obeys his servant" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

**walks in deep darkness without light**

The servant speaks of people who are suffering and feel helpless as if they were walking in a very dark place. Alternate translation: "is suffering and feels helpless" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

**trust in the name of Yahweh and lean on his God**

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. Here the word "name" represents Yahweh himself. Trusting in God is spoken of as if it were leaning on him. Alternate translation: "trust in Yahweh, his God" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)



## Isaiah 50:11

### all you who light fires & flames that you have ignited

This continues the metaphor from the previous verse of people who walk in darkness. Here people who try to live according to their own wisdom instead of trusting in Yahweh are spoken of as if they lit their own fires and carried about torches in order to see in the dark. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### You will lie down in a place of pain

Here to “lie down” refers to dying. Dying painfully is spoken of as if it were lying down in a place where they will experience pain. Alternate translation: “You will die with great suffering” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-euphemism\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Euphemism (p.1402)**)

## Isaiah 51

### Isaiah 51 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in this chapter.

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Rhetorical Questions

There are many rhetorical questions in this chapter. These questions prove Yahweh's point and are intended to convince the readers. (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

#### Awake

In this chapter the author uses sleeping as a metaphor for sin. The people are told to "awake," meaning they are to repent and return to Yahweh. (See: [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/sin\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/repent\]\]](#))

## Isaiah 51:1

### Listen to me

Here the word "me" refers to Yahweh.

### look at the rock & and to the quarry

Looking at something represents thinking about it. Alternate translation: "think about the rock ... and the quarry" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### the rock from which you were chiseled and to the quarry from which you were cut

God speaks of the nation of Israel as if it were a building made of stones and as if their ancestors were a rock or quarry from which God cut them. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "your ancestors, who are like a rock from which you were chiseled and a quarry from which you were cut" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### the rock from which you were chiseled

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "the rock from which I chiseled you" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### chiseled

Alternate translation: "cut with a chisel" or "cut"

### the quarry from which you were cut

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "the quarry from which I cut you" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 51:2

### Abraham, your father

God speaks of their ancestor as if he were their father. Alternate translation: “Abraham, your forefather” or “Abraham, your ancestor” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### Sarah, who bore you

God speaks of Abraham’s wife as if she were their mother and had given birth to them. Alternate translation: “Abraham’s wife, Sarah, of whom you are all descendants” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### when he was a lone individual

This means when he did not have any children yet. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “when he had no children” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### made him many

God speaks of Abraham’s descendants being many as if Abraham were many. Alternate translation: “made his descendants many” or “made him have many descendants” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 51:3

### Yahweh will comfort Zion

The city of Zion, which is also called Jerusalem, here represents the people of Zion. Alternate translation: “Yahweh will comfort the people of Zion” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### he will comfort all her waste places

Here “waste places” represents the people who live in those desolate areas. Alternate translation: “he will comfort the people who live in all her waste places” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### her waste places & her wilderness & her desert plains

The word “her” refers to Zion. Cities are often spoken of as if they were women. (See: **Personification (p.1464)**) (See: **Personification (p.1464)**)

### waste places

places that have been destroyed

### her wilderness he made like Eden, and her desert plains & like the garden of Yahweh

These phrases mean that God will make the empty places in Israel beautiful. In prophecy, events that will happen in the future are often described as being in the past. This emphasizes that they will certainly happen. Alternate translation: “he will make her wilderness like Eden and her desert plains ... like the garden of Yahweh (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#)) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-pastforfuture\]\]](#)) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### joy and gladness will be found in her

Joy and gladness mean the same thing. Being found there represents being there. Alternate translation: “there will be joy and gladness in Zion again” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-doublet\]\]](#)) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**)

## Isaiah 51:4

### General Information:

## General Information:

Yahweh speaks to the people of Israel.

### Be attentive to me & listen to me

These two phrases mean the same thing. Together they strengthen the command to listen. (See: **Parallelism (p. 1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### I will make my justice to be a light for the nations

Here God's justice represents his law, and a light represents knowledge of what is right. This means the people of the nations will understand and obey God's law. Alternate translation: "my law will teach the nations what is right" or "the nations will know my law" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 51:5

### My righteousness is near

The idea of “near” represents “soon.” God’s righteousness being near represents him soon showing his righteousness. He will do this by fulfilling his promises and saving people. Alternate translation: “I will soon show my righteousness” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### my salvation will go out

God speaks of saving people as if his salvation were a thing that could go out to them. Alternate translation: “I will save people” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### my arm will judge the nations

Here God’s arm represents his power, and judging represents ruling. Alternate translation: “I will rule the nations with my power” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### the coastlands

This refers to the people who live on the coasts of distant lands across the sea. Alternate translation: “the people who live on the coastlands” or “the people who live in the lands across the sea” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### for my arm they will eagerly wait

Here God’s arm represents what he will do. Here it refers to him saving people. Alternate translation: “they will eagerly wait for me to do something” or “they will eagerly wait for me to save them” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-explicit\]\]](#)) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 51:6

### Lift up your eyes to the sky

Lifting the eyes represents looking at something above. Alternate translation: "Look up at the sky" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### like smoke & like a garment & like flies

All of these refer to things that quickly and easily disappear or become useless. (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

### my salvation will continue forever

God's "salvation" here represents the result of his salvation, which is freedom. Alternate translation: "I will save you, you will be free forever" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### my righteousness will never stop working

God's "righteousness" here represents him ruling righteously. Alternate translation: "my righteous rule will never end" or "I will rule righteously forever" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)



## Isaiah 51:7

### who have my law in your heart

Having God's law in the heart represents knowing God's law and wanting to obey it. Alternate translation: "who know and honor my law" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### nor be disheartened by their abuse

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "and do not lose your courage when they hurt you" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

**Isaiah 51:8**

**For the moth will eat them up like a garment, and the worm will eat them like wool**

God speaks of people who abuse those who are righteous as if they were wool garments, and of their being destroyed as if insects ate them. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

**my righteousness will be forever**

God's "righteousness" here represents him ruling righteously. Alternate translation: "my righteous rule will be forever" or "I will rule righteously forever" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

**and my salvation to all generations**

God's "salvation" here represents the result of his salvation, which is freedom. Being "to all generations" represents lasting forever. Alternate translation: "I will save you, and you will be free forever" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 51:9

### Awake, awake, clothe yourself with strength, arm of Yahweh

People urgently ask Yahweh's arm to help them as if his arm were a person. If it would be odd to speak to the arm, this can be addressed directly to Yahweh instead. Alternate translation: "Awake, awake, Yahweh, and clothe your arm with strength" (See: **Personification (p.1464)**) (See: **Personification (p.1464)**)

### Awake, awake & arm of Yahweh

People speak as if Yahweh's arm were asleep because it has not been helping them. Here the "arm of Yahweh" represents Yahweh, specifically him helping people. The word "Awake" is repeated to show that they need God's help urgently. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-synecdoche\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-personification\]\]](#)) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### clothe yourself with strength

Strength is spoken of as if it were some kind of clothing that people would wear to strengthen themselves in battle. Alternate translation: "make yourself strong" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### Is it not you who crushed Rahab, you who pierced the monster?

The speaker uses a question to emphasize Yahweh's power to do mighty things. Alternate translation: "It is you who crushed Rahab, you who pierced the monster." (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### Rahab & the monster

Rahab was the name of this mythological serpent in the sea. Rahab can symbolize either the nation of Egypt or evil and chaos. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

## Isaiah 51:10

### Did you not dry up the sea & for the redeemed to pass through?

Again, the speaker uses questions to emphasize Yahweh's power to do mighty things. This refers to Yahweh opening the Red Sea for the Israelites to cross and escape the army of Egypt. Alternate translation: "You dried up the sea ... for the redeemed to pass through." (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

## Isaiah 51:11

### General Information:

## General Information:

This is very similar to [Isaiah 35:10](#).

### The ransomed of Yahweh

To “ransom” means to “rescue.” This refers to people whom Yahweh has rescued. Alternate translation: “Those whom Yahweh has rescued” (See: **Nominal Adjectives (p.1452)**) (See: **Nominal Adjectives (p.1452)**)

### with gladness forever on their heads

This uses a person’s head to mean the person as a whole. Alternate translation: “they will be glad forever” (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### gladness and joy & sorrow and mourning

The words “gladness” and “joy” mean basically the same thing, as do “sorrow” and “mourning.” Together they emphasize the intensity of these emotions. (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**) (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**)

### gladness and joy will overtake them

This speaks of the people being overwhelmed by gladness and joy by giving these emotions the human quality of being able to overtake someone. Alternate translation: “they will be overwhelmed by joy and gladness” or “they will be extremely glad and joyful” (See: **Personification (p.1464)**) (See: **Personification (p.1464)**)

### sorrow and mourning will flee away

This speaks of the people no longer being sorrowful and mourning by speaking of these emotions as if they could run away. Alternate translation: “they will no longer be sorrowful and mourning” (See: **Personification (p.1464)**) (See: **Personification (p.1464)**)

## Isaiah 51:12

### I, I, am he

The word "I" is repeated for emphasis. If this is unnatural in your language, the repetition does not need to be used. Alternate translation: "I am he"

### Why are you afraid of men & like grass?

This rhetorical question emphasizes that people who have the Lord's protection should not be afraid of human beings. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this question as a statement. Alternate translation: "Do not be afraid of men ... like grass." (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### who are made like grass

This phrase compares men to grass to emphasize that their lives are short and that they die quickly. Alternate translation: "who live and die quickly like grass" or "who will wither and disappear like grass" (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

### who are made like

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "who are like" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 51:13

### Why have you forgotten Yahweh & earth?

Yahweh uses a question to emphasize that they should not forget Yahweh. Alternate translation: "You should not have forgotten Yahweh ... earth." (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### Maker

See how you translated this name for Yahweh in [Isaiah 17:7](#).

### who stretched out the heavens

"who spread out the sky." This speaks of Yahweh having created the heavens as if he had stretched them out in the same way one would stretch out a large garment. Alternate translation: "who stretched out the heavens like a garment" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### the foundations of the earth

The word "foundation" normally refers to a stone structure that gives support to a building from underneath. Here it describes a similar structure that was thought to support and hold the earth in place. See how you translated this phrase in [Isaiah 24:18](#).

### the hot fury of the oppressor when he decides to destroy

Alternate translation: "the oppressor's hot fury when he decides to cause destruction"

### hot fury

Here the word "hot" means "strong" or "great." Alternate translation: "great fury" (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

### Where is the fury of the oppressor?

Yahweh uses a question to emphasize that the people should not fear those who want to oppress them. Their oppressors are no longer a threat to them. Alternate translation: "The fury of the oppressor is not a threat!" (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

## Isaiah 51:14

### The one who is bent down

This refers to the people of Israel who are slaves of the Babylonians. This phrase describes how they work. Alternate translation: "The slave" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### the pit

This refers to Sheol. Alternate translation: "the pit of Sheol" or "the grave" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### nor will he lack bread

Here "bread" represents food in general. This can be written in positive form. Alternate translation: "nor will he be without food" (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)



## Isaiah 51:15

### who churns up the sea

This speaks of Yahweh causing the sea to move and the waves to rise and fall as if he were stirring the sea as one stirs the contents of a bowl with a large spoon. Alternate translation: “who causes the sea to churn” or “who makes the sea move up and down” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### Yahweh of hosts

See how you translated this name for Yahweh in [Isaiah 1:9](#).

## Isaiah 51:16

### I have placed my words in your mouth

This speaks of Yahweh telling Isaiah what to say as if his words were a physical object Yahweh had placed in Isaiah's mouth. Alternate translation: "I have told you what to say" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### I have covered you in the shadow of my hand

Yahweh's "hand" refers to his power. This speaks of Yahweh protecting Isaiah as if his hand were covering him to protect him. Alternate translation: "my power has kept you safe" or "I have protected you and kept you safe" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### that I may plant the heavens

The word "plant" means to establish something in the ground. Here Yahweh firmly establishing the heavens is spoken of as if the heavens were a tent that he would spread out and firmly set it in place with tent pegs. Alternate translation: "that I may establish the heavens" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### lay the foundations of the earth

The word "foundation" normally refers to a stone structure that gives support to a building from underneath. Here it describes a similar structure that was thought to support and hold the earth in place. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Isaiah 24:18](#).

## Isaiah 51:17

### Awake, awake, stand up, Jerusalem

Here “Jerusalem” represents the people who live there. Yahweh speaks to the people of Jerusalem as if they were there listening to him. Alternate translation: “Awake, awake, stand up, you people of Jerusalem” (See: [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-apostrophe\]\]](#)) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### Awake, awake, stand up

“Be alert and arise.” The repetition of the word “awake” emphasizes the urgency of the call to arouse the people of Israel. It is not used to wake them from literal sleep.

### you who have drunk out of the hand of Yahweh & from the cup of staggering

Yahweh speaks of having punished his people as if he had forced them to drink from a bowl that was filled with his anger. And when they drank from the bowl of his anger, they staggered as if they had drank a lot of wine. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### down to the dregs

The word “dregs” means the solid pieces at the very bottom of a container that has a liquid in it. Alternate translation: “down to the very bottom”

### out of the hand of Yahweh

Here Yahweh is referred to by his hand to emphasize that he is the one who gave the bowl to his people. Alternate translation: “that he gave to you” (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### from the cup of staggering

Alternate translation: “from the cup that caused you to stagger as if you were drunk on wine”

### staggering

not walking straight, or stumbling while walking

## Isaiah 51:18

### **There is no one & to guide her; there is no one & to take her by the hand**

These two clauses have the same meaning and can be combined. This speaks of Jerusalem being helpless as if the city were a drunk woman without a son to help her walk safely. Alternate translation: "You have no one to help you! You are like a drunk old woman without a son to take her by the hand and guide her" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

## Isaiah 51:19

### who will grieve with you? & Who will comfort you?

Isaiah uses questions to emphasize that now there is no one to weep with them or comfort them. These questions may be written as statements. Alternate translation: “but there is no one to grieve with you ... There is no one to comfort you.” (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### These two troubles

The two troubles refer to the following two phrases: “desolation and destruction” and “the famine and the sword.”

### desolation and destruction

These words have similar meanings and emphasize the destruction of the land caused by the opposing army. Alternate translation: “your enemies have left your city empty and ruined” (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**) (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**)

### the famine and the sword

The words “famine” and “sword” describe the trouble that will come upon the people. The “sword” refers to “war.” Alternate translation: “many of you have died from hunger and war” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 51:20

### they lie at every street corner

This is generalization. Many children will lie in the street, but not necessarily on every street corner. Alternate translation: “they lie on the street” (See: **Hyperbole (p.1420)**) (See: **Hyperbole (p.1420)**)

### like an antelope in a net

This speaks of the children being exhausted and helpless as if they were an antelope caught in a trap. Alternate translation: “they are helpless, like an antelope caught in a net” or “as helpless as a trapped antelope” (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

### antelope

This is an animal, similar to a deer, that has horns and runs very fast. Alternate translation: “deer” (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1490)**) (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1490)**)

### they are filled with the anger of Yahweh, the rebuke of your God

The “anger of Yahweh” refers to Yahweh punishing his people because of his anger against them. This speaks of the people having been severely punished as if they had become full of Yahweh’s anger. Also, the word “rebuke” can be written as a verb. Alternate translation: “they have been severely punished by Yahweh because he was angry with them and rebuked them” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-abstractnouns\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 51:21

### you oppressed one and drunken one

Yahweh uses the word “one” here to refer to all of the oppressed people. Alternate translation: “you oppressed people and drunken people” (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### drunken one, but not drunk with wine

This speaks of the people acting drunk because they are suffering as if they have become drunk from being forced to drink the bowl of Yahweh's anger. Alternate translation: “you who are drunk from drinking the wine of the bowl of Yahweh's anger” or “you who act drunk, because you have suffered greatly” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-explicit\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 51:22

### **See, I have taken the cup of staggering from your hand—the bowl, which is the cup of my anger—so that**

This speaks of Yahweh no longer being angry with his people as if his anger were the contents of a cup that he was taking away from them. Alternate translation: "I will no longer be angry with you. See, it is like I have taken away from you the cup that made you stagger, that is, the cup that was full of my anger, so that" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### **See**

This is used to draw the listeners' attention to what is said next. Alternate translation: "Listen"

### **the cup of staggering**

The word "cup" refers to what is in the cup. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Isaiah 51:17](#). Alternate translation: "the cup of the wine that makes people stagger" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### **the bowl, which is the cup of my anger**

Yahweh speaks of having punished people as if he had forced them to drink from a bowl that was filled with his anger. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Isaiah 51:17](#). Alternate translation: "the bowl which is filled with my anger" or "the cup which is filled with my anger" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)



## Isaiah 51:23

### I will put it into the hand of your tormentors

This speaks of Yahweh punishing their enemies as if he were going to force them to drink from the cup filled with his anger. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### I will put it into the hand of your tormentors

It is implied that by putting the cup of his anger in their hand Yahweh will be forcing them to drink what is in the cup. Alternate translation: "I will force your tormentors to drink from the wine of the bowl of my anger" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### your tormentors

The word "tormentors" may be expressed with a verb. Alternate translation: "those who have tormented you" or "those who have caused you to suffer"

### you made your back like the ground and like the street for them to walk on

This compares the way their enemies walked on their back to the way people walk on the street. Alternate translation: "you lay in the streets so your enemies could walk on your backs" (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

## Isaiah 52

### Isaiah 52 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in this chapter.

The prophecies of this chapter occur after the exile in Babylon and are not in reference to the people contemporary to Isaiah. (See: **prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess (p.1525)**)

There is an important teaching or prophecy about the Messiah beginning in this chapter and continues through the next chapter. This prophesy begins in 52:13 and scholars usually note that it portrays the Messiah as a "suffering servant." (See: **Christ, Messiah (p.1497)**)

## Isaiah 52:1

### Awake, awake

This word is repeated for emphasis and shows urgency. Isaiah trying to arouse the people is spoken of as if he were trying to wake them up from sleep. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### put on your strength

Being strong again is spoken of as if strength were clothing that a person puts on. Alternate translation: “be strong” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### Zion & Jerusalem

Both of these refer to the people who live in Jerusalem. Isaiah is speaking to the people as if they were there listening to him. Alternate translation: “people of Zion ... people of Jerusalem” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-apostrophe\]\]](#)) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### the uncircumcised or the unclean

These nominal adjectives can be stated as adjectives. Alternate translation: “Those who are uncircumcised or those who are unclean” (See: **Nominal Adjectives (p.1452)**) (See: **Nominal Adjectives (p.1452)**)

### the unclean

This refers to unclean people. A person who God considers spiritually unacceptable or defiled is spoken of as if the person were physically unclean. Alternate translation: “those who are not acceptable to God” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### enter you

Here “you” refers to Jerusalem which represents the people who live there. It is understood that the uncircumcised and unclean people would enter the city to attack the people. Alternate translation: “enter your city to attack you” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#)) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 52:2

### Shake yourself off from the dust; arise and sit, Jerusalem

Here “Jerusalem” represents the people who live there. Alternate translation: “People of Jerusalem, sit up and shake the dirt off of yourself” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### take off the chain from your neck, captive

It is implied that the people of Jerusalem were wearing chains because they were slaves while exiled in Babylon. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-explicit\]\]](#)) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### daughter of Zion

This is an idiom. The “daughter” of a city means the people of the city. See how you translated this in [Isaiah 1:8](#). Alternate translation: “people of Zion” or “people who live in Zion” (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

## Isaiah 52:3

### **You were sold for nothing, and you will be redeemed without money**

This speaks about Yahweh as if he were the owner of the people of Israel. Since he is the rightful owner he can give them away or take them back whenever he wants. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "I sold you for nothing, and I will redeem you without money" (See: [[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor]] and [[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive]]) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## **Isaiah 52:4**

### **In the beginning**

Here “beginning” refers to the start of Israel’s history as they were first becoming a people.

### **went down to & Egypt**

“went to ... Egypt.” It was common to use the phrase “went down” when speaking of traveling from Canaan to Egypt.

### **Assyria has oppressed them**

Assyria refers to the people of Assyria. Alternate translation: “the people of Assyria have treated them badly” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 52:5

### Now what do I have here & seeing that my people are taken away for nothing?

Yahweh uses a question to make the people pay attention to what he is about to say. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this question as a statement. Alternate translation: "Now look at what is happening ... my people are again taken away for nothing." (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### this is Yahweh's declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. Translate as in [Isaiah 30:1](#). Alternate translation: "this is what Yahweh has declared" or "this is what I, Yahweh, have declared" (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1406)**) (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1406)**)

### seeing that my people are taken away for nothing

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "I see the enemy taking my people away for nothing" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### for nothing

This could mean: (1) "for nothing" means the Babylonians took the people unjustly and without cause or (2) this continues the metaphor from [Isaiah 52:3](#) where Yahweh is spoken of as if he owned the people of Israel and could give them away for nothing. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### Those who rule over them mock

This refers to the Babylonians who have conquered the people. However, some versions have, "Those who rule over them wail." For these versions, this passage refers to the leaders of the Israelites in captivity.

### my name is blasphemed continually all day long

Here "name" represents Yahweh's reputation. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "those who watch the enemy take away my people are continually saying evil things about me" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 52:6

### Therefore my people will know my name

Here "name" represents Yahweh's reputation. Alternate translation: "Therefore my people will truly know who I am"  
(See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)



## Isaiah 52:7

### General Information:

## General Information:

Isaiah is speaking to the people of Israel.

### **How beautiful on the mountains are the feet of the messenger who brings good news**

Here “feet” represents a messenger who is walking. Alternate translation: “It is beautiful to see a messenger coming over the mountains to announce good news” (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### **to Zion**

Here “Zion” represents the people of Zion. Alternate translation: “to the people of Zion” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 52:8

### raise their voices

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “shout loudly” (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

### every eye of theirs

Here “eye” represents the whole person. Alternate translation: “every one of them” (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

## Isaiah 52:9

### you ruins of Jerusalem

Isaiah speaks of the ruins of Jerusalem as if they were a person that could rejoice. This represents the people of Jerusalem who were defeated. Alternate translation: “you people who live among the ruins of Jerusalem” (See: **Personification (p.1464)**) (See: **Personification (p.1464)**)

### he has redeemed Jerusalem

Here “Jerusalem” represents the people. Alternate translation: “he has redeemed the people of Jerusalem” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 52:10

### bared his holy arm

Here “arm” represents Yahweh’s power. Yahweh showing all the people of the nations that he is holy and powerful is spoken of as if Yahweh were a warrior who removed his cloak, baring his arms for battle. Alternate translation: “showed his holiness and mighty power” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### all the nations; all the earth

Here “nations” and “earth” represent the people of all the nations all over the earth. (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 52:11

### Leave, leave

This word is repeated to emphasize that the people must indeed leave, although not necessarily right away.

### go out from there

It is assumed knowledge that the people of Israel were slaves in Babylon. This can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: "go out from the land where you are slaves" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p. 1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### touch nothing unclean

Something that Yahweh has stated is unfit to touch or eat is spoken of as if it were physically unclean. Alternate translation: "touch nothing that is unacceptable to Yahweh" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### leave from her midst

Here "her" represents Babylon.

## Isaiah 52:12

### **Yahweh will go before you; and the God of Israel will be your rearguard**

Yahweh protecting his people from their enemies is spoken of as if he were the warriors who go ahead of the people and the warriors who stay behind the people to protect them. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 52:13

### he will be high and lifted up, and he will be exalted

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. These two phrases “high and lifted up” and “will be exalted” have basically the same meaning and emphasize that Yahweh will honor his servant. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Isaiah 33:10](#). Alternate translation: “I will give my servant the greatest honor” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#)) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 52:14

### his appearance was so disfigured beyond that of any man

It is implied that the servant is disfigured because enemies beat him very badly. The full meaning of this can be made clear. Alternate translation: "his enemies beat his body so badly that he did not even look like a human anymore" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)



## Isaiah 52:15

### my servant will sprinkle many nations

The servant causing the people of the nations to be acceptable to Yahweh is spoken of as if the servant were a priest who sprinkles the blood of a sacrifice to make someone or something acceptable to Yahweh. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### will sprinkle

The Hebrew word translated “sprinkle” here can also be translated as “surprise” or “startle,” which some versions of the Bible do.

### many nations

Here “nations” represents the people of the nations. (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### kings will shut their mouths

The phrase “shut their mouths” is an idiom. Alternate translation: “kings will stop talking” or “kings will be silent” (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

### that which they had not been told

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “that which no one had told them” or “something no one had told them” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 53

### Isaiah 53 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in this chapter.

In this chapter there is an important teaching or prophecy about the Messiah and his life and ministry. It begins in 52:13 and scholars usually note that it portrays the Messiah as a “suffering servant.” (See: [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/prophet\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/christ\]\]](#))

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Atonement

This chapter prophesies about the death of Christ for sin. Most scholars believe it teaches that Christ was a righteous man who died for the sins of mankind. This is usually referred to as the atonement. (See: [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/sin\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/righteous\]\]](#) and **atonement, atone, atoned (p.1495)**)

## Isaiah 53:1

### Who has believed what they heard from us

What Isaiah just found out is so amazing that he wonders if the exiles will believe it. The “we” includes him and those in exile. Alternate translation: “It is hard for anyone to believe what we have heard” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-exclusive\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-rquestion\]\]](#)) (See: **Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’ (p.1404)**)

### to whom has the arm of Yahweh been revealed?

Arm refers to God’s power. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “Yahweh has revealed his power to people.” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) and **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)** (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 53:2

### For he grew up before Yahweh like a sapling

Here “he” refers to God’s servant whom Isaiah compares to a very young tree. This emphasizes that he will appear weak. (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

### out of parched earth

“parched earth” is hard and dry ground that will not allow plants to grow and represents where the servant of Yahweh will come. Alternate translation: “out of an impossible situation” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 53:3

### He was despised and rejected by people

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "People considered him as nothing and rejected him" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### a man of sorrows

Alternate translation: "a man knowing all kinds of sadness"

### from whom men hide their faces

"Face" represents a person's attention or fellowship. Hiding one's face means to turn away from someone.

Alternate translation: "from whom people turn away" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### he was despised

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "they considered him to be worthless" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 53:4

### he has borne our sicknesses and carried our sorrows

To “bear” or carry an abstraction like sickness and sorrow represents taking it up. Alternate translation: “he has taken our sicknesses and sorrows upon himself” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### yet we thought he was being punished by God, struck by God, and afflicted

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “yet we thought God was punishing and afflicting him” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-explicit\]\]](#)) (See: **Active or Passive (p. 1374)**)

## Isaiah 53:5

### **But he was pierced because of our rebellious deeds; he was crushed because of our sins**

These two phrases share similar meanings and emphasize that the servant suffered because of the people's sins. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "God allowed the enemy to stab him and kill him because of our sins" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### **The punishment for our peace was on him**

This refers to peace with God. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "He accepted this punishment so we could live in harmony" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### **with his wounds we are healed**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "he healed us by his suffering of the wounds" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 53:6

### We all like sheep have gone astray

Sheep often leave the path on which the shepherd leads them. Isaiah means that we do what we want instead of what God commands. (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

### the iniquity of us all

Our “iniquity” here represents the guilt for our sin. Alternate translation: “the guilt for the sin of every one of us” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)



## Isaiah 53:7

### He was oppressed

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “They treated him harshly” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### he did not open his mouth

“Mouth” represents what a person says. Opening one’s mouth means to speak. Alternate translation: “he did not protest” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### as a lamb that is led to the slaughter, and as a sheep that before its shearers is silent

Isaiah compares the servant to a lamb and a sheep to emphasize that he will remain silent as people harm and humiliate him. (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

### as a lamb that is led to the slaughter

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “just as a lamb is silent as a person slaughters it” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-simile\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

## Isaiah 53:8

### By coercion and judgment he was condemned

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “They treated him harshly, judged him, and condemned him” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### coercion

The Hebrew word translated here as “coercion” is interpreted by some versions as “arrest.” For these versions, the thought is that the Servant will be arrested and then judged and condemned.

### who from that generation thought anymore about him?

This question emphasizes that no one thinks about him. Alternate translation: “no one from his generation cared what happened to him.” or “no one among his contemporaries cared what happened to him.” (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### who from that generation thought anymore about him?

Many versions interpret this passage in Hebrew differently: “Who can say anything about his descendants?” or “Who can say anything about his fate?”

### But he was cut off from the land of the living

“Cut off” here refers to death. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “But he died” or “But death took him away” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-idiom\]\]](#)) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### of my people

Alternate translation: “of the people of Israel”

## Isaiah 53:9

**nor had there been any deceit in his mouth**

“Mouth” represents what a person says. Alternate translation: “nor did he deceive anyone when he spoke” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 53:10

### he will see his offspring

Here, “offspring” means those people that Yahweh has forgiven because of the servant’s sacrifice. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### he will prolong his days

This speaks of making him live for more time. Alternate translation: “Yahweh will make his servant live again” (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

### Yahweh’s purpose will be accomplished through him

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “Yahweh will accomplish his purpose through his servant” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 53:11

### After the suffering of his life

Here “his life” refers to the servant. Alternate translation: “After the servant has suffered” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### he will see light

Many versions understand “light” here to stand for life. That is, the servant will become alive again. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### My righteous servant

Here “my” refers to Yahweh.

### he will bear their iniquities

The word “bear” means carry. This could mean: (1) “their iniquities” is a metonym representing the punishment for their sins. Alternate translation: “he will take their punishment” or “he will be punished for their sins” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) \* or (2) “their iniquities” is a metonym representing their guilt. Alternate translation: “he will take their guilt upon himself” or “he will be guilty for their sins” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 53:12

### Therefore will I give him his portion among the multitudes, and he will divide the spoils with the many

These two clauses mean basically the same thing. "Portion" and "spoils" refer to a king after a victorious battle sharing the plunder or rewards with his army. This means God will greatly honor his servant because of his sacrifice. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### the multitudes

Many versions interpret this expression as "the many" or "the strong."

### because he exposed himself to death

"Exposed" means to be vulnerable or unprotected. The servant of Yahweh put himself in a situation where he would die. Alternate translation: "he willingly accepted the possibility of death" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### was numbered with the transgressors

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "allowed people to treat him as a criminal" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 54

### Isaiah 54 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in this chapter.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Yahweh's covenant faithfulness

This chapter focuses on Yahweh's faithfulness to fulfill his covenants. It references several different covenant promises in this chapter. (See: [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/covenantfaith\]\]](#), [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/faithful\]\]](#), [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/fulfill\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/covenant\]\]](#) and **promise, promised (p.1524)**)

## Isaiah 54:1

### you barren woman & children of the married woman

Yahweh telling the people of Jerusalem to rejoice because there will be many people living in Jerusalem again is spoken of as if Yahweh were telling a barren woman she is going to have many children. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### break into joyful singing and cry aloud, you who have never been in birth labor

This statement means the same thing as the first part of the sentence. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### For the children of the desolate one are more

An event that will happen in the future is spoken of as if it happened in the past. This emphasizes that the event will certainly happen. Alternate translation: "For the children of the desolate woman will be more" (See: **Predictive Past (p.1469)**) (See: **Predictive Past (p.1469)**)

### the desolate one

Here "desolate" means that the woman's husband had rejected and abandoned her



## Isaiah 54:2

### Make your tent larger & strengthen your stakes

This continues the metaphor that began in [Isaiah 54:1](#). Yahweh telling the people of Jerusalem to prepare because Yahweh will greatly increase their people is spoken of as if he is telling a woman to make her tent bigger to make room for many children. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 54:3

### For you will spread out

Here “you” is singular and refers to the barren woman. She represents herself and all of her descendants. Alternate translation: “For you and your descendants will spread out” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-you\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-synecdoche\]\]](#)) (See: **Forms of You (p.1408)**)

### will conquer nations

Here “nations” represents the people. Alternate translation: “will conquer the people of other nations” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 54:4

**you will forget the shame of your youth and the disgrace of your abandonment**

Yahweh telling the people that in the future they will not even think about the shame they experienced when their enemies defeated them is spoken of as if Yahweh were telling a woman that she will no longer think about the shame she experienced from being unable to have children and having her husband abandon her. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 54:5

### For your Maker is your husband

Yahweh loving and taking care of his people is spoken of as if he were their husband. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)  
(See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### Maker

See how you translated this in [Isaiah 17:7](#).

### Yahweh of hosts

See how you translated this in [Isaiah 1:24](#).

### The Holy One of Israel

See how you translated this in [Isaiah 5:16](#).

### Redeemer

See how you translated this in [Isaiah 41:14](#).

### he is called the God of the whole earth

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "he is the God of the whole earth" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 54:6

### **Yahweh has called you back as a wife & like a woman married young and rejected**

Yahweh sending his people away into exile then bringing them back is spoken of as if Yahweh were a husband who had rejected his wife but now accepts her. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-simile\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### **grieved in spirit**

Here "spirit" represents a person's inner being. Alternate translation: "grieved" or "made sad" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## **Isaiah 54:7**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## Isaiah 54:8

### In a flood of anger

Yahweh being very angry is spoken of as if his anger were a flood that overwhelms people. Alternate translation: "When I was very angry" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### I hid my face from you

Here "hid my face" is an idiom that means God abandoned his people and let them suffer. Alternate translation: "I abandoned you" (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

### but with everlasting covenant faithfulness

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **faithfulness**, you can express the same idea with a verbal form such as "faithful." See how you translated "covenant faithfulness" in [Isaiah 16:5](#). Alternate translation: "but because I always am faithful to my covenant with you" or "but because I am always faithful to do what I promise to do" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**)

### says Yahweh, the one who rescues you

Here Yahweh speaks about himself in the third person. It can be stated in first person. Alternate translation: "that is what I, Yahweh, your rescuer, say to you" (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1406)**) (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1406)**)

## Isaiah 54:9

### the waters of Noah

This refers to the flood that Yahweh caused during the time of Noah. (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)



## Isaiah 54:10

### Though the mountains may fall and the hills be shaken, yet my steadfast love

Yahweh describes a hypothetical condition to explain what would happen even if those conditions were met. Alternate translation: “Even if the mountains fell and the hills shook, my steadfast love” (See: **Hypothetical Situations (p.1424)**) (See: **Hypothetical Situations (p.1424)**)

### the hills be shaken

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “the hills may shake” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### my steadfast love will not turn away from you

Yahweh continuing to love his people is spoken of as if his love would not turn away from the people. Alternate translation: “I will not stop loving you” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### nor will my covenant of peace be shaken

Yahweh not canceling his covenant with the people is spoken of as if his covenant were an object that would not be shaken. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “and I will not cancel my covenant of peace” or “and I will surely give you peace as I promised in my covenant” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### says Yahweh, who has mercy on you

Here Yahweh speaks about himself in the third person. It can be stated in first person. Alternate translation: “that is what I, Yahweh, who acts mercifully, say” (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1406)**) (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1406)**)

## Isaiah 54:11

### Afflicted one

Here Yahweh speaks to the city of Jerusalem as if it were listening to him. Here Jerusalem represents the people who live there. Alternate translation: “You afflicted people of Jerusalem” (See: [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-apostrophe\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#)) (See: **Apostrophe (p.1377)**)

### storm-driven

Yahweh speaks of the people as if they were blown around and damaged by the winds and storms. This means the people were hurt and without stability. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### uncomforted one

Alternate translation: “without comfort”

## I will set your pavement in turquoise & lay your foundations with sapphires

Yahweh describes in ideal terms how he will restore Jerusalem and cause it to be beautiful again. Although the language may be exaggerated, you should translate this just as Yahweh described it.

### turquoise & sapphires

These are precious gemstones. Turquoise is light blue-to-green, sapphires are typically dark blue. (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1490)**) (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1490)**)

## Isaiah 54:12

### I will make & beautiful stones

Yahweh describes in ideal terms how he will restore Jerusalem and cause it to be beautiful again. Although the language may be exaggerated, you should translate this just as Yahweh described it.

### rubies

These precious gemstones are red to pink. (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1490)**) (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1490)**)

## Isaiah 54:13

### Then all your children will be taught by Yahweh

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "And Yahweh will teach all your children" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### by Yahweh

Yahweh speaks of himself in the third person. It can be stated in first person. Alternate translation: "by me, Yahweh" (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1406)**) (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1406)**)

## Isaiah 54:14

### In righteousness you will be established

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **righteousness**, you can express the same idea with an adjective such as "right." If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "I will cause you to be strong again because you will do what is right" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-abstractnouns\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**)

### it will not come near to you

No one in the city or outsiders will ever terrify the inhabitants of Jerusalem again.

## Isaiah 54:15

### General Information:

## General Information:

Yahweh continue speaking to the people of Jerusalem.

### **stirs up trouble**

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “causes trouble” or “troubles you” (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

### **will fall in defeat**

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “you will defeat them in battle” (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

## **Isaiah 54:16**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## Isaiah 54:17

### No weapon that is formed against you will succeed

Enemies not succeeding against Yahweh's people is spoken of as if their weapons would not succeed against Yahweh's people. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Enemies may form weapons to attack you but they will not defeat you" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### This is the heritage of the servants of Yahweh

The reward that Yahweh will give to those who serve him is spoken of as if the reward were something they would inherit. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### this is Yahweh's declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. Translate as in [Isaiah 30:1](#). Alternate translation: "this is what Yahweh has declared" or "this is what I, Yahweh, have declared" (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1406)**) (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1406)**)



## Isaiah 55

### Isaiah 55 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in this chapter.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Gentiles

Many scholars believe this chapter prophesies that Gentiles will be able to come to a saving faith in Yahweh. At this time, the Israelites believed that only an Israelite could be saved. (See: [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/prophet\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/save\]\]](#) and **faith (p.1503)**)

## Isaiah 55:1

### General Information:

## General Information:

Yahweh speaks of blessing the people freely as if he were selling food and drink to needy people for free. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues speaking to the people of Jerusalem in exile through Isaiah.

### Come & Come

The repetition of this word four times adds a sense of urgency to the invitation.

### buy wine and milk without money and without cost

There is a sense of irony in this statement since a person usually has to use money to buy something. This emphasizes Yahweh's amazing grace in giving these things freely. (See: **Irony (p.1435)**) (See: **Irony (p.1435)**)

## Isaiah 55:2

### Why do you weigh out & bread, and why do you labor & satisfy?

Yahweh asks these questions to rebuke the people. He speaks of the people seeking happiness apart from Yahweh as if they were purchasing things to eat that were not food and working for things that could not satisfy them. Alternate translation: “You should not weigh out silver ... bread, and you should not labor ... satisfy” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-rquestion\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### weigh out silver

This refers to counting silver coins in order to pay someone for something. Alternate translation: “pay money” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### for what is not bread

Here the word “bread” represents food in general. It is implied that the people were buying things to eat that were not really food. Alternate translation: “for things to eat that are not really food” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-synecdoche\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-explicit\]\]](#)) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### eat what is good, and delight yourselves in fatness

The people trusting Yahweh for blessing and happiness is spoken of as if they are eating good food that is making them happy. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### in fatness

The word “fatness” refers to meat that has plenty of fat on it and is an idiom for fine food. Alternate translation: “with the best foods” (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

## Isaiah 55:3

### Turn your ears

Listening to or paying attention to someone is spoken of as if it were turning one's ears to someone. Alternate translation: "Pay attention" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 55:4

### I have placed him

This could mean: (1) this refers to what Yahweh did for King David in the past or (2) it refers to what God will do through one of David's descendants.

## **Isaiah 55:5**

### **the Holy One of Israel**

See how you translated this in [Isaiah 1:4](#).

## Isaiah 55:6

### Seek Yahweh while he may be found

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Seek Yahweh while you can still find him" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 55:7

### Let the wicked leave his path

The word “wicked” refers to wicked people. Yahweh speaks of wicked people no longer sinning as if they were to stop walking along a path that they had been traveling. Alternate translation: “Let wicked people change the way they live” (See: [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-nominaladj\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Nominal Adjectives (p.1452)**)

### the man of sin his thoughts

The verb may be supplied from the previous phrase. Alternate translation: “let the sinful man leave his thoughts” (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**) (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**)

### his thoughts

This could mean: (1) “the way he thinks” or (2) “his plans”

### he will pity him

Alternate translation: “Yahweh will pity him”

### to our God

The verb may be supplied from the first phrase in this sentence. Alternate translation: “let him return to our God” (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**) (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**)



## **Isaiah 55:8**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## Isaiah 55:9

**for as the heavens are higher than the earth, so are my ways higher than your ways, and my thoughts than your thoughts**

Yahweh speaks of the things that he does and how he thinks as being far superior to or higher than what people do and think, just like the sky is much higher than the earth. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## **Isaiah 55:10**

**For as the rain and snow & do not return there**

This is likely a description of the rain and snow evaporating.

## Isaiah 55:11

### so also my word & it will achieve the purpose for which I sent it

Yahweh speaks of his word as if it were a person whom he sends out as his messenger to accomplish a task. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-personification\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Personification (p.1464)**)

### my word will be that goes from my mouth

Here the word “mouth” represents Yahweh himself. Alternate translation: “the word that I speak” (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### it will not return to me empty

Here the description of the word returning to Yahweh means that it has completed the task that Yahweh had sent it to complete. That it will not return “empty” means that it will not fail to accomplish its task. Alternate translation: “it will not fail to complete its task” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

## Isaiah 55:12

### be led along peacefully

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "I will lead you along peacefully" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### the mountains and the hills will break out in joyful shouts before you, and all the trees of the fields will clap their hands

Yahweh speaks of the mountains, hills, and trees as if they were people with voices and hands, celebrating as Yahweh rescues his people. (See: **Personification (p.1464)**) (See: **Personification (p.1464)**)

## Isaiah 55:13

### **Instead of the thornbushes, the cypress will grow; and instead of the brier, the myrtle tree will grow**

The words “thornbushes” and “brier” refer to species of plants that have sharp thorns growing on them. The words “cypress” and “myrtle” refer to species of evergreen trees. The thorny plants symbolize desolation, while the evergreens symbolize life and prosperity. (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1490)**) (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1490)**)

### **for his name**

Here the word “name” represents Yahweh’s fame. Alternate translation: “for his fame” or “for his honor” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### **that will not be cut off**

Something ceasing to exist is spoken of as if it were cut off, as a branch is cut off of a tree or a piece of fabric is cut off of clothing. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “that will never end” or “that will last forever” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 56

### Isaiah 56 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in this chapter.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Gentiles

Many scholars believe this chapter prophesies that Gentiles will be able to come to a saving faith in Yahweh. At this time, the Israelites believed that only an Israelite could be saved. (See: [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/prophet\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/save\]\]](#) and **faith (p.1503)**)

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Beasts

The Israelites are compared to beasts and dogs in this chapter. This would have been very offensive to them. (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

## Isaiah 56:1

**for my salvation is near, and my righteousness is about to be revealed.**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "I will soon save you and show you that I am righteous" (See:

**Active or Passive (p.1374))** (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374))**)



## Isaiah 56:2

### who holds it tightly

Here “holds it tightly” is an idiom that means to continue to observe something. Alternate translation: “who is careful to always do this” (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

### keeps his hand from doing any evil

Here the “hand” represents the whole person and emphasizes the person’s actions or behaviors. Alternate translation: “does not do evil things” (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

## Isaiah 56:3

### See, I am a dry tree

This means eunuchs may have thought they could not be a part of God's people because they were deformed by castration (and for this reason could not have children). Israelites did not practice castration; foreigners did, sometimes for punishment. Eunuchs who had accepted the Hebrew faith knew that normally they were not allowed to worship in the temple (Deut. 23:1). The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-explicit\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## **Isaiah 56:4**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## Isaiah 56:5

### in my house and within my walls

These two phrases mean the same thing. Alternate translation: “inside the walls of my temple” (See: **Doublet (p. 1397)**) (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**)

### that will never be cut off

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “that will never end” or “that will never be forgotten” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 56:6

### who love the name of Yahweh

Yahweh's "name" represents himself. Alternate translation: "who love Yahweh" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 56:7

### holy mountain

See how you translated this in [Isaiah 11:9](#).

### will be accepted on my altar

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “I will accept on my altar” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### my house will be called a house of prayer

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “my house will be a house of prayer” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## **Isaiah 56:8**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## Isaiah 56:9

**All you wild beasts of the field, come and devour, all you beasts in the forest**

God is calling armies of other nations by comparing them to animals to come and attack the people of Israel. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)



## **Isaiah 56:10**

### **All their watchmen are blind**

This means Israel's leaders cannot or perhaps do not want to see what is going on in society.

### **They are all silent dogs**

The leaders are supposed to open their mouths and warn the people, but they do not. Comparing someone to a dog in this society is a great insult. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### **They dream, and lying down they love to sleep**

This means the leaders are not bringing God's word of warning to Israel but prefer their own comfort.

## **Isaiah 56:11**

### **The dogs have big appetites**

Yahweh continues comparing Israel's bad leaders to dogs. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## **Isaiah 56:12**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## Isaiah 57

### Isaiah 57 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in this chapter.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Child sacrifice

This chapter references the killing of children. Some religions in the ancient Near East practiced the sacrificing of their children. This was considered evil by Yahweh. (See: **evil, wicked, unpleasant (p.1501)**)

#### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

##### Mocking

The people abandoned the worship of Yahweh in favor of other gods. When they needed help, he tells them to ask these false gods. This is mocking the power of the false gods and shows the people the uselessness of their worship of these gods. (See: **god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry (p.1510)**)

## Isaiah 57:1

### the people of covenant faithfulness

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **faithfulness**, you can express the same idea with a verbal form such as “faithful.” See how you translated “covenant faithfulness” in [Isaiah 16:5](#).

Alternate translation: “the people who are faithful to the covenant” or “the people who are faithful” (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**)

### are gathered away & is gathered away

“die and go away ... dies and goes away” (See: **Euphemism (p.1402)**) (See: **Euphemism (p.1402)**)

### that the righteous is gathered away from the evil

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “that the righteous people die, and Yahweh takes them away from all that is evil” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## **Isaiah 57:2**

### **He enters into peace**

Alternate translation: "The righteous enter into peace"

### **they rest**

they die (See: **Euphemism (p.1402)**) (See: **Euphemism (p.1402)**)

### **those who walk in their uprightness**

Alternate translation: "those who have done what is right"

## **Isaiah 57:3**

### **But come here**

God is calling all of the unfaithful people to come before him so he can judge them in a strong contrast to the promises for the righteous that came before.

### **sons of the sorceress**

This is a strong insult against the people who practice sorcery because sorcery and magic includes idolatry. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### **children of the adulterer and the woman who has prostituted herself**

This refers to actual and spiritual adultery. They have abandoned the worship of God and now worship other gods and idols along with actual prostitution in pagan Canaanite ceremonies.

## Isaiah 57:4

### **Whom are you merrily mocking? Against whom are you opening the mouth and sticking out the tongue?**

Yahweh uses questions to scold the people who are mocking him through false worship. Alternate translation: "You are mocking me and making fun of me by opening your mouth wide and sticking out the tongue!" (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### **Are you not children of rebellion, children of deceit?**

Yahweh uses another question to scold the people. This does not refer to their birth but to their spiritual state. Alternate translation: "You are children of rebellion, children of deceit!" (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)



## Isaiah 57:5

### You heat yourselves & under the rocky overhangs

All of these actions are associated with worshiping idols. The oaks were sacred trees to the Canaanites. People thought such activity would increase fertility for people and the land. (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

## Isaiah 57:6

### that have been assigned to you

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. The exact meaning in Hebrew is unclear. Alternate translation: “that is your lot” or “that is your inheritance” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### In these things should I take pleasure?

Yahweh uses a question to scold the people. Alternate translation: “Certainly, these things do not please me.” (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

## Isaiah 57:7

### You prepared your bed

This refers to sleeping with prostitutes as a part of worshiping false gods. (See: **Euphemism (p.1402)**) (See: **Euphemism (p.1402)**)

### on a high mountain

People often went on top of hills and mountains to worship false gods. They thought those were the best places for worship. This might even refer to Jerusalem, too. (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

## **Isaiah 57:8**

### **You made a covenant with them**

Alternate translation: "You made a contract with them"

## Isaiah 57:9

### you went down to Sheol

The people did not literally go to Sheol, the world of the dead. Instead, Yahweh is indicating by exaggeration that the people were willing to go anywhere to find new gods to worship. (See: **Hyperbole (p.1420)**) (See: **Hyperbole (p.1420)**)

## Isaiah 57:10

### You found life in your hand

After trying so hard, the idolators found they still had strength to keep going. Here "hand" equals "strength" or "capacity." (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 57:11

**Whom are you worried about? Whom do you fear so much that has caused you to act so deceitfully & about me?**

Yahweh uses these questions to scold the people. Alternate translation: "You must really fear these idols for you to act so deceitfully ... about me!" (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

**so much that you would not remember me or think about me**

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize that, although the people should have remembered Yahweh, they did not. (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**) (See: **Doublet (p.1397)**)

## Isaiah 57:12

**I will proclaim all your righteous acts and tell all that you have done**

Yahweh is being sarcastic, calling their evil deeds so-called righteousness. (See: **Irony (p.1435)**) (See: **Irony (p.1435)**)



## Isaiah 57:13

### let your collection of idols rescue you

Yahweh is mocking the people and their idols. He tells the idols to save the people though he knows they cannot. (See: **Irony (p.1435)**) (See: **Irony (p.1435)**)

### the wind will carry them all away, a breath will carry them all away

This is saying the same thing in two ways to emphasize that idols are helpless and worthless. Alternate translation: “the wind, or even a breath, will blow them away” (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### holy mountain

The “holy mountain” is Mount Zion, in Jerusalem. See how you translated this in [Isaiah 11:9](#).

## Isaiah 57:14

**Build, build! Clear a way! Remove all the stumbling blocks from the path of my people**

Yahweh is emphatic and urgent that a clear and level road be available for the people to return to him and free of obstacles to worshiping Yahweh. This echoes [Isaiah 40:3](#). (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 57:15

### For this is what the high and elevated One says

The words “high” and “elevated” have basically the same meaning here and emphasize Yahweh being exalted. See how you translated this in [Isaiah 6:1](#) and [Isaiah 33:10](#). See how you translated a similar phrase in [Isaiah 52:13](#).

### to revive the spirit of the humble ones, and to revive the heart of the contrite ones

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize that Yahweh will strengthen and encourage those who humble themselves before him. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### spirit & heart

Here these refer to a person’s thoughts and emotions, not the spirit and heart literally. (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## **Isaiah 57:16**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## Isaiah 57:17

### I hid my face

This means God gave up on his people and no longer helped or blessed them. (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

### he went backward in the way of his heart

This means the Israelites kept rejecting the true God for false ones. Here “backward” and “way” are location words representing motivations and feelings. (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## **Isaiah 57:18**

### **his ways**

“their ways.” Here “his” refers to the people of Israel.

### **comfort and console those who mourn for him**

Alternate translation: “I will soothe and calm those who feel sad for the people’s suffering because of their sinful behavior”

## **Isaiah 57:19**

### **I create the fruit of the lips**

Here “fruit of the lips” refers to what a person says. Alternate translation: “I cause them to praise and thank me” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### **Peace, peace, to those who are far off**

“I have made peace with them who are far off.” The word “Peace” is repeated for emphasis.

## **Isaiah 57:20**

### **But the wicked are like the tossing sea & mire and mud**

This compares the wicked to rough water on the shore that makes the water dirty. (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)



## **Isaiah 57:21**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## Isaiah 58

### Isaiah 58 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in this chapter.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Fasting

The practice of fasting became more common after the exile. This was intended to bring people into a right relationship with God by creating a designated time to concentrate on him. It may have been believed that Yahweh heard people better when they fasted. The significance of fasting is derived from the faster's attitude of repentance and faith in Yahweh and not the practice itself. (See: [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/repent\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/faith\]\]](#))

#### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

##### “Yet they seek me daily”

The people did not truly seek Yahweh every day. They practiced the outward aspects of the Jewish religion, but their hearts were far from Yahweh. (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

## Isaiah 58:1

### Lift up your voice like a trumpet

This means shout loudly. Here “your” refers to Isaiah. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-simile\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-you\]\]](#)) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

### Confront my people with their rebellion, and the house of Jacob with their sins

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. Together they strengthen the urgency to confront Yahweh's people. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

## **Isaiah 58:2**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## Isaiah 58:3

**‘Why have we fasted,’ they say, ‘but you do not see it? Why have we humbled ourselves, but you do not notice?’**

The people of Israel use questions to complain to God because they feel he is ignoring them. (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

## Isaiah 58:4

### Look

“Behold!” or “Pay attention.” Yahweh confronts their questioning by telling them to pay attention.

### fist of wickedness

“wicked fist.” This shows that they fight viciously. “Fist” represents anger that is physically violent. (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 58:5

### Is this really the kind of fast that I would want & under himself?

Yahweh uses a question to scold the people. They act like they are humble before God, but they are hurting other people. Alternate translation: "This is not the kind of fast I want ... under himself." (See: **Rhetorical Question (p. 1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### A day for anybody to humble himself, for him to bow down his head like a reed

This means the person is bowing down, but he is not truly humble. "A reed" represents a weak plant that bends easily. (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

### Do you really call this a fast, a day that pleases Yahweh?

Yahweh uses a question to scold the people. Alternate translation: "Surely you do not think this kind of fast pleases me!" (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

**Isaiah 58:6****Is not this the fast that I choose & break every yoke?**

Yahweh uses a question to teach the people about the kind of fast that pleases him. Alternate translation: "This is the fast that I choose ... break every yoke." (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

**To release wicked bonds, to undo the ropes of the yoke, to set the crushed ones free, and to break every yoke**

All of these phrases mean they should help those people whom the wicked are hurting and oppressing. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#)) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)



## Isaiah 58:7

### Is it not to & your house?

Yahweh uses another question to teach the people. Alternate translation: "It is to ... your house." (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### break your bread

This phrase represents starting the meal by the host tearing the loaf of bread apart. (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

## Isaiah 58:8

### Then your light would be broken open like the sunrise

“Break open” here is an idiom that means when a light begins to shine brightly. This means that if they help people in need, their deeds will be like lights others will see, as when the sun comes up after a dark night. Or the light may refer to the light of the Lord, shining on them and blessing them. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-idiom\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

### your healing would quickly sprout up

This means God will bless and restore them quickly, as a wound heals quickly. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### your righteousness would go before you, and the glory of Yahweh would be your rearguard

This refers to the time when God protected the people of Israel as they escaped from Egypt. This means God will again protect them from their enemies if they will do what is right.

### your righteousness

This expression in Hebrew can also be interpreted as the one who gives righteousness or even victory. In this context, this expression would refer to God. A few modern versions have this interpretation.

## **Isaiah 58:9**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## Isaiah 58:10

**then your light will rise in the darkness, and your darkness will be like the noonday**

“Your light” represents the acts of kindness that will be examples to everyone, and the “darkness,” the bad deeds, will be overcome by their good deeds. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## **Isaiah 58:11**

### **satisfy you in regions where there is no water**

“Water” represents all they need for an abundant life even when their surroundings do not have enough. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### **You will be like a watered garden**

“A watered garden” represents abundance and plenty so they will have all they need. (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

### **like a spring of water, whose waters never fail**

“A spring of water” represents a source of abundance in a land where water is precious. (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

## Isaiah 58:12

### you will be called

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “people will call you” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 58:13

**you turn back your feet from traveling on the Sabbath day, and from doing your own pleasure on my holy day**

Here the people are represented by their "feet." God did not allow long travels or work on the day of rest. Alternate translation: "you stop traveling and doing what you want to do on the Sabbath, my holy day" (See: **Synecdoche (p. 1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

## Isaiah 58:14

### I will make you ride on the heights of the earth

This refers to God exalting the nation in reputation and power in response to living righteously. (See: **Metaphor (p. 1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### for the mouth of Yahweh has spoken

The word “mouth” symbolizes what Yahweh says. Alternate translation: “for Yahweh has spoken it” (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)



## Isaiah 59

### Isaiah 59 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in this chapter.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Yahweh's deliverance

When Israel was conquered, they were being punished for their sin. Yahweh is strong enough to deliver them, but he did not because he desired to refine them through the experience of the exile. (See: [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/other/deliverer\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/sin\]\]](#))

## Isaiah 59:1

### Look

“Behold!” or “You should know!” Yahweh tells the people to pay attention.

### Yahweh’s hand is not so short

“Hand” represents power and ability. A “short” hand does not have power and ability. Alternate translation: “Yahweh is fully able” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 59:2

### **your & you**

These plural pronouns refer to the people of Israel as a single group. (See: **Forms of You (p.1408)**) (See: **Forms of You (p.1408)**)

### **your sins have made him hide his face from you**

“Face” represents being present and looking upon. Alternate translation: “your sins have made him turn away from you” (See: **Personification (p.1464)**) (See: **Personification (p.1464)**)

## Isaiah 59:3

### For your hands are stained with blood and your fingers with sin

Here “hands” and “fingers” refers to their actions. This means they are guilty of doing violent and sinful things. “Your” is plural. Alternate translation: “For you have committed violent sins” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-you\]\]](#)) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### Your lips speak lies and your tongue speaks maliciously

The parts of the body that make speech represent what people say. Alternate translation: “You speak lies and malicious things” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 59:4

### they conceive trouble and give birth to sin

“Conceiving” and “giving birth” emphasize how carefully they plan to do sinful things. Here “they” still refers to the people of Israel. Alternate translation: “they work hard to do sinful things” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 59:5

### They hatch eggs of a poisonous snake

Eggs of a poisonous snake hatch into more dangerous snakes. "Poisonous snakes" represents evil the people do that harms more and more. Alternate translation: "They make evil that spreads out to make more evil" (See:

**Metaphor (p.1442))** (See: **Metaphor (p.1442))**)

### weave a spider's web

This represents the deeds of the people that are useless. Alternate translation: "produce things and activities that are useless" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442))** (See: **Metaphor (p.1442))**)

### Whoever eats of their eggs dies, and if an egg is crushed, it hatches into a poisonous snake

Eating a poisonous egg will kill the one that eats it and represents self-destruction. Breaking the egg allows the young poisonous snake to hatch and represents spreading destruction. Alternate translation: "The activities they do will destroy them and will spread destruction to others" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442))** (See: **Metaphor (p.1442))**)

### if an egg is crushed

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "if someone crushes an egg" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374))** (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374))**)

## Isaiah 59:6

### **Their webs cannot be used for garments, nor can they cover themselves with their works**

This means their sinful deeds cannot be covered and hidden, just as a web cannot serve as clothing and cover someone. Alternate translation: "Their evil deeds will be exposed as useless" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### **Their webs cannot be used for garments**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "They cannot clothe themselves with their webs" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### **deeds of violence are in their hands**

"Hands" represents the ability and power to do these things and therefore their responsibility. Alternate translation: "they are fully responsible for the violence they do" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 59:7

### Their feet run to evil

Here people are represented by their “feet.” This speaks of them doing something quickly as their feet running to it. Alternate translation: “They are quick to do evil things” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-synecdoche\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### are their roads

“roads” represents their way of life. Alternate translation: “are all they do” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)



## Isaiah 59:8

### there is no justice in their paths

“paths” represents their way of life. Alternate translation: “they never do what is just” or “everything they do is unjust” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### They have made crooked paths

“Crooked paths” represents the way of life that is corrupt. Alternate translation: “They say and do dishonest things. They are devious” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 59:9

### justice is far from us

Here “us” refers to Isaiah and the people of Israel. “Far” represents that justice is gone and difficult to get. Alternate translation: “justice is gone and very difficult to get” (See: [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-exclusive\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’ (p.1404)**)

### We wait for light, but see darkness; we look for brightness, but we walk in darkness

Each of these phrases means that the people are waiting for God’s goodness, but it seems like he has abandoned them. (See: [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

## Isaiah 59:10

### We grope for the wall like the blind & like dead men

This means that because God is not coming to them, they feel helpless, not finding the right path and despairing of the future, with no hope for a vibrant life. (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

## Isaiah 59:11

### We growl like bears and moan like doves

These refer to the sounds the people made because they were distressed and mourning. (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)  
(See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

## Isaiah 59:12

### our many transgressions

Here “our” refers to Isaiah and the people of Israel. (See: **Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’ (p.1404)**) (See: **Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’ (p.1404)**)

### before you

Here “you” refers to Yahweh. (See: **Forms of You (p.1408)**) (See: **Forms of You (p.1408)**)

### our sins testify against us

Isaiah describes the sins as a person who goes before God to declare that the people are guilty. (See: **Personification (p.1464)**) (See: **Personification (p.1464)**)

### for our transgressions are with us

“With us” represents being aware of them. Alternate translation: “for we are aware of our transgressions” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## **Isaiah 59:13**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## Isaiah 59:14

### Justice is driven back

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "The people drive justice back" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### Justice & righteousness & truth & right

These are ideas that Isaiah describes as acting like persons. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-personification\]\]](#)) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-abstractnouns\]\]](#)) (See: **Personification (p.1464)**)

## Isaiah 59:15

### Trustworthiness

Isaiah describes this idea as acting like a person. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-personification\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-abstractnouns\]\]](#)) (See: **Personification (p.1464)**)



## Isaiah 59:16

**He saw that there was no man, and wondered that there was no one to intervene.**

Alternate translation: "Yahweh was appalled that no one came to help those who were suffering." or "Yahweh was astonished that no one came to help those who were suffering."

**Therefore his own arm brought salvation for him**

Yahweh's "arm" represents his ability and power. Alternate translation: "Yahweh used his own power to save the people" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

**his righteousness sustained him**

"Righteousness" here is a quality that acts like a person. The word can be translated as an adjective. Alternate translation: "he did right as he always would do" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-personification\]\]](#)) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-abstractnouns\]\]](#)) (See: **Personification (p.1464)**)

**Isaiah 59:17**

**He put on righteousness as a breastplate and a helmet of salvation upon his head. He clothed himself with garments of vengeance and wore zeal as a mantle**

“breastplate,” “helmet,” “garments,” and “mantle” are clothing for war and fighting. Isaiah describes Yahweh as putting these on to punish his people. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-simile\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

**mantle**

a loose, flowing robe

## **Isaiah 59:18**

### **He repaid them**

Isaiah is describing a future event as if it happened in the past. This means that it will certainly happen.

## Isaiah 59:19

### fear the name of Yahweh

Here “name” refers to Yahweh’s reputation and character. Alternate translation: “fear Yahweh” (See: **Metonymy (p. 1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p. 1449)**)

### from the west & from the sun’s rising

Isaiah combines these words to mean people in all places of the world. (See: **Merism (p. 1440)**) (See: **Merism (p. 1440)**)

### for he will come as a rushing stream

Narrow valleys in Judah were dry most of the year until a sudden, heavy rain turned them into fast-moving water. When that happened there was a lot of noise and wind. (See: **Simile (p. 1479)**) (See: **Simile (p. 1479)**)

### driven by the breath of Yahweh

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “which the breath of Yahweh drives” (See: **Active or Passive (p. 1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p. 1374)**)

## Isaiah 59:20

### this is Yahweh's declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. Translate as in [Isaiah 30:1](#). Alternate translation: "this is what Yahweh has declared" or "this is what I, Yahweh, have declared" (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1406)**) (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1406)**)

## **Isaiah 59:21**

**my words which I have put in your mouth**

Alternate translation: "the message I have given you to speak"

## Isaiah 60

### Isaiah 60 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in this chapter.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Israel's restoration

This chapter pictures a time when Israel will be fully restored to Yahweh. They will be everything Yahweh intended them to be. All the nations will look to Israel and acknowledge her special relationship to Yahweh. (See: **restore, restoration (p.1530)**)

## Isaiah 60:1

**Arise, shine; for your light has come, and the glory of Yahweh has risen on you**

This refers to the glorious things Yahweh has done for the inhabitants of Jerusalem. They are now to show that glory through what they do and say and have hope in the future. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)



## Isaiah 60:2

### Though darkness will cover the earth, and thick darkness the nations

Both of these phrases mean the same thing and are combined for emphasis. They refer to “spiritual darkness.” This means all the other people of the world will not know Yahweh or how to please him. This is a metaphor for divine judgment. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### yet Yahweh will arise upon you

This means the light of God’s presence will appear for the people of Israel, and it will show the way they should go. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### his glory will be seen on you

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “the people of the nations will see his glory on you” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## **Isaiah 60:3**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## Isaiah 60:4

### General Information:

## General Information:

Here Yahweh begins speaking.

### **They all gather themselves**

“They” refers to the rest of the people of Israel who will come together to return to Jerusalem.

### **your daughters will be carried in their arms**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “they will carry your daughters in their arms” or “they will carry your daughters on their hips” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 60:5

### **Then you will look and be radiant, and your heart shall rejoice and overflow**

These phrases share similar meanings and emphasize that they will be very happy because of what will happen in Jerusalem. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### **the abundance of the sea**

This refers to the riches and goods that will come to Jerusalem by way of shipping, perhaps from along the Mediterranean Sea.

### **be poured out to you**

This describes that the abundance will be like water that gushes out. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## **Isaiah 60:6**

### **the dromedaries**

Alternate translation: “the young camels”

### **Ephah**

an area in Arabia (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

## Isaiah 60:7

### Kedar & Nebaioth

These are the names of areas in Arabia. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

### All the flocks of Kedar will be gathered together to you

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "The people of Kedar will gather their flocks for you" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### the rams of Nebaioth will serve your needs

This refers to their need for sacrifices.

### they will be acceptable offerings on my altar

Alternate translation: "I, Yahweh, will accept them on my altar"

## Isaiah 60:8

### Who are these who fly along like a cloud, and like the doves to their shelters?

Yahweh uses questions and poetic images to draw attention here. He compares the sails of the ships to clouds and doves. This is also a picture of the Israelites returning to the country where they belong. Alternate translation: "Look, I see something like clouds moving quickly and like doves returning to their shelters." (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-rquestion\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-simile\]\]](#)) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

## Isaiah 60:9

### The coastlands

This refers to the people who live on the coastlands and describes the area of coastlands as if it was people looking out. Alternate translation: “The people from the coastlands” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-personification\]\]](#)) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### the ships of Tarshish

This expression usually means large merchant ships suitable for long voyages.

### Holy One of Israel

See how you translated this in [Isaiah 1:4](#).

### he has honored you

Alternate translation: “Yahweh has honored you, the people of Israel”



## **Isaiah 60:10**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## Isaiah 60:11

### they will not be shut day or night

Here “day” and “night” together mean “all the time.” If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “no one will ever shut them” (See: [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-merism\]\]](#)) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### so that the wealth of the nations may be brought, with their kings being led

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “so that the people of the nations may bring their wealth, along with their kings” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 60:12

### **those nations will be completely destroyed**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "I will completely destroy the people of those nations" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## **Isaiah 60:13**

### **The glory of Lebanon**

This refers to Lebanon being famous for its beautiful trees, especially cypress and cedar. The exact identification of all the trees is not known.

### **the place of my feet**

This refers to Yahweh's temple. (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 60:14

### Holy One of Israel

See how you translated this in [Isaiah 1:4](#).

## **Isaiah 60:15**

**with no one passing through you**

Alternate translation: “with everyone avoiding your land” or “with all the foreigners avoiding your land”

## Isaiah 60:16

### **You will also drink the milk of the nations, and will nurse at the breast of kings**

This refers to the wealth and plenty that will be drained from foreign nations. Both clauses repeat the same idea for emphasis. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### **Redeemer**

See how you translated this in [Isaiah 41:14](#).

### **the Mighty One of Jacob**

See how you translated this in [Isaiah 49:26](#).

## **Isaiah 60:17**

### **instead of wood, bronze, and instead of stones, iron**

Yahweh will give more valuable building materials to them now. Alternate translation: “instead of wood, I will bring bronze, and instead of stones, I will bring iron” (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**) (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**)

### **I will appoint peace as your governors, and justice your rulers**

Yahweh describes “peace” and “justice” as human rulers. This means there will be complete peace and justice in the land of Israel. (See: **Personification (p.1464)**) (See: **Personification (p.1464)**)



## Isaiah 60:18

### Violence will no longer be heard in your land

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "There will no longer be reports of violence in your land" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### but you will call your walls Salvation, and your gates Praise

The physical objects have the names of spiritual qualities. The city of Jerusalem will be a safe place, and the people there will praise Yahweh. (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## **Isaiah 60:19**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## **Isaiah 60:20**

### **for Yahweh will be your everlasting light**

Both verses repeat this same idea for emphasis. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### **Your sun will no longer set, nor will your moon withdraw and disappear**

The moon will not literally disappear. This exaggeration is saying that the light of the sun and the moon will be much less bright than the light of Yahweh. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-hyperbole\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 60:21

### the branch of my planting, the work of my hands

These phrases mean approximately the same and are repeated for emphasis. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### the branch of my planting

Yahweh is comparing the people to young shoots coming up that he planted as if he was a gardener. Yahweh has placed his people in the land of Israel. This gives hope to the people. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### the work of my hands

Yahweh compares the people of Israel to something made by the skill of his handicraft. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### that I may be glorified

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "so that all people may glorify me" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 60:22

### a thousand

"1,000" (See: **Numbers (p.1454)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1454)**)

# Isaiah 61

## Isaiah 61 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in this chapter.

The first part of this chapter is probably a prophecy about the coming Messiah and not Isaiah because this was different than the message Isaiah delivered. (See: **Christ, Messiah (p.1497)**)

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Restoration

This chapter prophesies concerning a future time of peace and restoration. It is unlikely to have been fulfilled in Isaiah's day. (See: [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/restore\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/prophet\]\]](#) and **fulfill, fulfilled, carried out (p.1507)**)

## Isaiah 61:1

### The Spirit of the Lord Yahweh is on me

“Spirit” here is the Holy Spirit of Yahweh who compels or motivates the person. See how you translated this in [Isaiah 11:2](#) or in [Isaiah 42:1](#).

### the afflicted

This refers to poor people, those in great sorrow, or oppressed people who have problems they cannot overcome by themselves.

### liberty to the captives, and the opening of the prison for those who are bound

These two phrases mean the same thing. They state that God will certainly give freedom to captives. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

## Isaiah 61:2

### the year of Yahweh's favor, the day of vengeance

Both of these phrases refer to the same span of time. "Year" and "day" are both specific examples that represent the greater whole. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#)) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### year of Yahweh's favor

Alternate translation: "time when Yahweh will act kindly toward his people"



## **Isaiah 61:3**

### **to give & to give**

Isaiah repeats this for emphasis.

### **a turban**

“a headdress” or “a beautiful head covering.” This is a long piece of cloth that is wrapped around the head.

### **oil of joy & a mantle of praise**

People put oil on themselves and dressed in beautiful, long robes during times of celebration and joy. (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### **in place of a spirit of dullness**

Alternate translation: “in place of sadness” or “in place of mourning”

### **oaks of righteousness, the planting of Yahweh**

This means Yahweh has caused the people to be strong and sturdy. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### **that he may be glorified**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “so that the people’s lives may glorify him” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## **Isaiah 61:4**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## **Isaiah 61:5**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## Isaiah 61:6

### You will be called

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "People will call you" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## **Isaiah 61:7**

### **you will have double**

This probably refers to a double portion of land.

### **they will rejoice over their share & they will & their land & will be theirs**

This still refers to the people of Israel. This can be stated in second person. Alternate translation: “you will rejoice over your share ... you will ... your land ... will be yours” (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1406)**) (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1406)**)

## **Isaiah 61:8**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## Isaiah 61:9

### **Their descendants will be known among the nations, and their offspring among the peoples**

These two clauses mean the same thing. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "People from other nations will know their descendants" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#)) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### **their offspring among the peoples**

This clause assumes the same verb as the previous one. Alternate translation: "their offspring will be known among the peoples" (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**) (See: **Ellipsis (p.1399)**)

## Isaiah 61:10

### I will greatly rejoice in Yahweh

"I" refers to the people of God speaking as one person whom Yahweh has restored.

### clothed me with the garments of salvation; he has clothed me with the robe of righteousness

The people of God speaking as one person now have salvation and righteousness as their distinct appearance visible to all. "Garments" and "robe" are clothing that everyone can see. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### as a bridegroom adorns himself with a turban, and as a bride adorns herself with her jewels

This comparison emphasizes that the speaker is extremely happy, joyful, celebrating. (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

### turban

See how you translated this in [Isaiah 61:3](#).



## Isaiah 61:11

### **For as the earth produces its sprouting plants, and as the garden makes its planting grow**

This is saying the same thing in two ways. The fact that whatever God says he will do is certainly going to happen is compared to the fact that seeds sprout after planting. Alternate translation: "Just as seeds sown in a garden sprout from the soil and grow" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-simile\]\]](#)) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### **righteousness and praise to sprout up**

This expression describes these virtues as growing from seed like plants do. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 62

### Isaiah 62 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in this chapter.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Restoration

This chapter prophesies concerning a future time of peace and restoration. It is unlikely to have been fulfilled in Isaiah's day. (See: [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/restore\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/prophet\]\]](#) and **fulfill, fulfilled, carried out (p.1507)**)

## Isaiah 62:1

### **For Zion's sake I will not be silent, and for Jerusalem's sake I will not be quiet**

Both of these statements mean the same thing. Here "Zion" and "Jerusalem" both represent the people who live in Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "For the sake of the people of Jerusalem I will not be silent" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#)) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### **I will not be silent**

It is most likely that "I" refers to Isaiah.

### **until her righteousness proceeds brightly, and her salvation as a burning torch**

Both clauses reassure the people that God will eventually come and save the people of Israel and that it will be as apparent as light is. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-simile\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#)) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

## **Isaiah 62:2**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

**Isaiah 62:3**

**You will also be a crown of beauty in the hand of Yahweh, and a turban of kingship in the hand of your God**

These mean the same thing and are combined for emphasis. They say that Jerusalem will become a royal city under the power and authority of God. Yahweh's hand is a metonym for his power and authority. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#)) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

## Isaiah 62:4

### **It will no more & will it be said, “Desolate.”**

These mean the same thing are combined for emphasis. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### **It will no more be said of you**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “People will no longer say about you” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### **nor of your land any longer will it be said**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “nor will people any longer say about your land” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### **your land will be married**

This means Yahweh will love the people of Israel and will always be with them as is a husband. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 62:5

**as a young man marries a young woman, so your sons will marry you**

Here “sons” refers to the people of Israel and “you” refers to Judah, the land of Israel. This means the people will take possession of the land as a man takes possession of his young wife. (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

**as a bridegroom rejoices over his bride, your God will rejoice over you**

This emphasizes God’s happiness about his relationship with his people. (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

## Isaiah 62:6

### I have put

Here "I" may refer to Isaiah or to Yahweh.

### watchmen on your walls

This refers to prophets, officials, or possibly angels, who are constantly praying for the people of Jerusalem like watchmen who constantly guard the city. See how you translated "watchmen" in [Isaiah 52:8](#) and [Isaiah 56:10](#). (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### they are not silent day or night

This means they are continually pleading to Yahweh or calling to each other. Alternate translation: "they are earnestly praying to Yahweh throughout the entire day" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-litotes\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-merism\]\]](#)) (See: **Litotes (p.1438)**)



## **Isaiah 62:7**

### **Do not allow him to rest**

Here “him” refers to Yahweh.

## **Isaiah 62:8**

### **by his right hand and by the arm of his strength**

The right hand and arm represent power and authority. Alternate translation: "by his power and authority" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### **Surely I will no longer give your grain as food for your enemies**

This means Yahweh will not let enemies conquer the people of Israel and take their grain anymore. Perhaps enemies took the grain in the past as a tax or to feed their own armies.

### **I will no longer give your grain as food for your enemies & Foreigners will not drink your new wine**

These statements are set together for emphasis and completion. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

## Isaiah 62:9

### those who harvest the grain & those who pick the grapes

These statements are set together for emphasis and completion. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

## Isaiah 62:10

### Come through, come through the gates

The phrase “come through” is repeated to show urgency.

### Build it, build the highway

The word “build” is repeated to emphasize that Yahweh urgently wants the road prepared. The “highway” represents the way the people can return. This is similar to [Isaiah 40:3](#) and [Isaiah 57:14](#). (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### Gather out the stones

“Take the stones out of the road to make it smooth.” Stones represent all the obstacles to quick travel. (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### Raise up a signal flag for the nations

A signal flag represents something to draw the attention of others. This means Yahweh is calling the people of the other nations to take notice of the land of Israel and to see what Yahweh has accomplished as he said he would. (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 62:11

### Look

Alternate translation: "Take notice!"

### the ends of the earth

The places on the earth that are very far away are spoken of as if they were the places where the earth ends. This phrase also forms a merism and refers to everywhere in between the ends. See how you translated this in [Isaiah 40:28](#). AT "the farthest places of the earth" or "the entire earth" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-merism\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### the daughter of Zion

"Daughter" represents the people of Jerusalem (Zion). See how you translated this in [Isaiah 1:8](#). (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

### See, his reward is with him, and his recompense is going before him

These clauses represent the same idea for emphasis. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Isaiah 40:10](#). (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

## Isaiah 62:12

### you will be called

This can be stated actively, “they will call you” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 63

### Isaiah 63 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in this chapter.

#### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Imagery

The imagery of judgment in this chapter is intended to be rather vivid. The translator should avoid euphemisms, if possible. Overall, this chapter prophesies a day of great judgment and God's wrath. (See: [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/judge\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/prophet\]\]](#) and **wrath, fury (p.1534)**)

## Isaiah 63:1

### Who is this who comes from Edom & Bozrah

Isaiah speaks as a watchman using the question and answer format to present this information about Yahweh's judgment on Edom, an enemy of Israel. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this question as a statement. Alternate translation: "I, Yahweh, am coming from Edom, clothed in red from Bozrah" (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### Bozrah

This is the capital city of Edom. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

### It is I

Here "I" refers to Yahweh.



## Isaiah 63:2

### Why are your clothes red, and why & winepress?

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this question as a statement. Alternate translation: "The red on your clothing looks makes you look like you have been treading on grapes in a winepress." (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### winepress

A winepress is a low place carved out of rock in the ground where workers step on the grapes to crush them with their feet, in order to remove the grape juice.

## Isaiah 63:3

### I have trodden grapes

Here "I" refers to Yahweh. This imagery refers to Yahweh destroying his enemies. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## **Isaiah 63:4**

### **the day of vengeance**

Alternate translation: “the time of vengeance” or “the time for vengeance”

### **vengeance**

Yahweh will punish in an appropriate way to bring about justice. His kind of vengeance differs from man’s vengeance.

### **the year for my redemption**

Here “year” refers to a specific time appointed by Yahweh for restoring Israel. Alternate translation: “the time for my redemption” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 63:5

### but my own arm

Here “arm” represents power. (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 63:6

### made them drunk in my wrath

This means Yahweh made them stunned and senseless by his full wrath and punishment. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### I poured out their blood

Here “blood” represents the life of Yahweh’s enemies that was gushing out so they would die. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 63:7

### I will tell of the acts of Yahweh's covenant faithfulness

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **faithfulness**, you can express the same idea with a verbal form such as "faithfully" or "faithful." See how you translated "covenant faithfulness" in [Isaiah 16:5](#). Alternate translation: "I will tell about how God has acted faithfully to his covenant" or "I will tell about all the faithful things God has done for his people" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.1372)**)

### I will tell

Here "I" refers to Isaiah.

### done for us

Here "us" refers to Isaiah and the people of Israel. (See: **Exclusive and Inclusive 'We' (p.1404)**) (See: **Exclusive and Inclusive 'We' (p.1404)**)

## **Isaiah 63:8**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

**Isaiah 63:9****Through all their suffering**

“Through all our suffering.” Here “their” refers to the people of Israel. Isaiah included himself as a member of the people.

**he suffered too**

Here “he” refers to Yahweh.

**the angel from his presence**

This is a representative who is sent from God's presence.

**he lifted them up and carried them**

This refers to when God protected and saved the people of Israel from the Egyptians many years earlier. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-explicit\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)



## **Isaiah 63:10**

### **But they rebelled**

“but we rebelled.” Here “they” refers to the people of Israel. Isaiah included himself as a member of the people.

### **his Holy Spirit**

Alternate translation: “Yahweh’s Holy Spirit”

## Isaiah 63:11

### They said

“we said.” Here “they” refers to the people of Israel. Isaiah included himself as a member of the people.

### who brought them up out of the sea

The story of Yahweh miraculously splitting the waters of the Sea of Reeds so that the Israelites could cross and escape the Egyptians is assumed knowledge. (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### the shepherds of his flock

Leaders are sometimes referred to as “shepherds.” Alternate translation: “the leaders of his people” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 63:12

### General Information:

## General Information:

The people of Israel continue speaking.

### **who made his glorious power go with the right hand of Moses**

Here “right hand” represents the power of Yahweh through Moses. This means it was God’s power that enabled Moses to divide the water of the Reed Sea. (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 63:13

### Like a horse running on flat land, they did not stumble

This means that the people of Israel were sure-footed as horses in open country on their travels toward Israel from Egypt. (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

## Isaiah 63:14

### General Information:

## General Information:

The people of Israel continue speaking.

### As the cattle that go down into the valley & rest

This image pictures cattle going into a valley where there is green grass and water and emphasizes that God led the people of Israel and took care of them. (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

### to make yourself a name of praise

Here “name of praise” refers to honor and one’s reputation. Alternate translation: “to make sure you have an honored reputation for yourself” (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 63:15

### General Information:

## General Information:

The people of Israel continue speaking.

### Where are your zeal and your mighty acts?

The writer uses a question to express deep emotion and concern because it seems God is not helping them. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this question as a statement. Alternate translation: "We do not see your zeal and your mighty acts!" (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

### Your pity and your compassionate actions are kept from us

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "You keep your pity and compassion from us" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 63:16

**though Abraham does not know us, and Israel does not recognize us**

These ancestors of the nation of Israel would not be able to identify their descendants because they changed so much. "Abraham" and "Israel" represent the people from the distant past. (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### Israel

This refers to the name also called "Jacob."

## Isaiah 63:17

### General Information:

## General Information:

The people of Israel continue speaking.

**Yahweh, why do you make us wander from your ways and harden our hearts, so we do not obey you?**

Here the writer uses a question to express a complaint of the people to God. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this question as a statement. Alternate translation: "Yahweh, you have made us wander from your ways and become stubborn so that we do not obey you." (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

**why do you make us wander from your ways**

To not do what Yahweh commands is spoken of as if a person wanders off of the correct path. Alternate translation: "why do you make do what is wrong" (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

**harden our hearts**

This means to become resistant to Yahweh's teaching by refusing to listen and obey. Here "heart" represents their motives, feelings and desires. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)



## Isaiah 63:18

### General Information:

### General Information:

The people of Israel continue speaking.

## Isaiah 63:19

### who were never called by your name

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. The word “name” refers to a family relationship. Alternate translation: “who never belonged to your family” (See: [[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive]] and [[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy]]) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### We have become & called by your name

Some modern versions interpret this passage differently: “We are like the people over whom you have not ruled, like those who have not been called by your name.”

## Isaiah 64

### Isaiah 64 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in this chapter.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Repentance

This chapter records the repentance of the righteous remnant of Judah. (See: [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/repent\]\]](#), [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/righteous\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/remnant\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/prophet\]\]](#))

## Isaiah 64:1

### General Information:

## General Information:

The people of Israel continue speaking to Yahweh ([Isaiah 63:11](#)).

### Oh, if you had

Isaiah introduces this desire for Yahweh's presence in their past history with a strong exclamation. (See: **Hypothetical Situations (p.1424)**) (See: **Hypothetical Situations (p.1424)**)

### if you had split open the heavens

If Yahweh had shown himself very dramatically by tearing open the sky. The words "split open" refer to ripping a piece of cloth apart. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### mountains would have shaken

The mountains would have trembled as in an earthquake. (See: **Hypothetical Situations (p.1424)**) (See: **Hypothetical Situations (p.1424)**)

## Isaiah 64:2

**as when fire kindles the brushwood, or the fire makes water boil**

This possibly emphasizes how easily God's presence would have caused the mountains and the people to tremble.  
(See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-simile\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-hypo\]\]](#)) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

## **Isaiah 64:3**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## Isaiah 64:4

### nor eye seen

Here the “eye” refers to the whole person. Alternate translation: “nor has anyone seen” (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)  
(See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

## Isaiah 64:5

### General Information:

## General Information:

The people of Israel continue speaking to Yahweh.

### call to mind

This is an idiom that means “remember.” (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)



## Isaiah 64:6

### General Information:

## General Information:

The people of Israel continue speaking to Yahweh.

### **all our righteous deeds are like a menstrual rag**

A “menstrual rag” is a cloth that a woman uses during the time of month when she bleeds from her womb. This means all their attempts to please God fail. This sentence was meant to be shocking. (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

### **We have all withered like leaves**

Isaiah compares the people of Israel to leaves that dry up when dead. (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

### **our iniquities, like the wind, carry us away**

This means their sins, as a community, are the reason for their failure. Isaiah compares the iniquities to the wind as the force for their suffering Yahweh's punishment. (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

## Isaiah 64:7

### **you have hidden your face from us**

This means God gave up on his people and let them suffer. (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

### **in the hand of our iniquities**

Here the word "hand" is a metonym for the power of those who are punishing the people for their iniquities.

Alternate translation: "as you punish us for our iniquities" (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

## Isaiah 64:8

### General Information:

## General Information:

The people of Israel continue speaking to Yahweh.

**we are the clay. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand**

This means God created the people of Israel. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 64:9

### call to mind

This refers to remembering the past. (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

### look at us all

Isaiah asks Yahweh to pay attention to their situation. (See: **Personification (p.1464)**) (See: **Personification (p.1464)**)

## **Isaiah 64:10**

### **General Information:**

### **General Information:**

The people of Israel continue speaking to Yahweh.

### **Your holy cities have become a wilderness**

This emphasizes that the cities have been destroyed and no one lives there.

## Isaiah 64:11

**Our holy and beautiful temple, where our fathers praised you, has been destroyed by fire**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "The enemy has destroyed our holy and beautiful temple, where our fathers praised you, by fire" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 64:12

**How can you still hold back, Yahweh? How can you remain silent and continue to humiliate us?**

They use questions to express their frustration because God has not yet come to help them. Alternate translation: "Please do not hold back, Yahweh! Please do not remain silent and continue to humiliate us!" (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

## Isaiah 65

### Isaiah 65 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in this chapter.

This chapter is Yahweh's response to the repentance of the people. (See: **repent, repentance (p.1528)**)

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Judgment and hope

This chapter records that Yahweh's judgment on the people must come. Despite this, there is hope that in the end, Yahweh will make all things new and restore them to himself. (See: [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/judge\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/hope\]\]](#) and **restore, restoration (p.1530)**)



## **Isaiah 65:1**

### **I was ready**

Here "I" refers to Yahweh.

## Isaiah 65:2

### **I have spread out my hands all day to a stubborn people**

“Spreading out my hands” here is a person’s gesture to show imploring or a strong request. Alternate translation: “I have continually begged a stubborn people to receive my help” (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

## Isaiah 65:3

### in gardens & on brick tiles

These refer to Canaanite places for worshiping idols. Their sacred altars were made of bricks, which Yahweh forbid for his altars. Yahweh's altars were made of stone. (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)  
(See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

## Isaiah 65:4

### **sit among the graves and keep watch all night**

This is a reference to consulting the dead, a practice that Yahweh prohibited. (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### **eat pork**

Yahweh did not allow the people of Israel to eat meat from pigs. (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

## Isaiah 65:5

### These things are smoke in my nose

Yahweh compares these people who are continually annoying him to smoke that irritates a person's breathing.  
(See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### a fire that burns all day long

Yahweh compares the people of Israel to a slow-burning fire that sends out smoke without stopping as it irritates.  
(See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 65:6

### Look, it is written

Alternate translation: "Take notice and pay attention"

### into their laps

This means God will punish them to the fullest extent. This expression compares Yahweh punishing the people to dumping on their legs as they are sitting. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-idiom\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)

## **Isaiah 65:7**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## Isaiah 65:8

### As when juice is found in a cluster of grapes

Yahweh compares the people of Israel to a cluster of grapes that still has some good juice in it. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### when juice is found in a cluster

This can be stated in an active way. Alternate translation: “when you find juice in a cluster” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### I will not ruin them all

This can be expressed positively. Alternate translation: “I will spare some of them who are righteous” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-litotes\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-explicit\]\]](#)) (See: **Litotes (p.1438)**)



## **Isaiah 65:9**

### **my mountains**

This refers to the highest locations of Jerusalem and all of Judea.

## Isaiah 65:10

### Sharon

This was a fertile grazing area. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

### Valley of Achor

This is the name of a valley that possibly ran from Jerusalem to south of Jericho. This was also a fertile grazing area. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

## **Isaiah 65:11**

### **holy mountain**

See how you translated this in [Isaiah 11:9](#).

### **who prepare a table & and fill wine glasses of mixed wine**

People would bring food and drink and place it in front of the idol as part of their worship.

### **mixed wine**

wine mixed with spices

### **Fortune & Destiny**

These are names of false gods. They are also called "Gad" and "Meni."

## Isaiah 65:12

### **appoint you for the sword**

“The sword” represents various weapons of war that Yahweh will use to punish those who do not respond to Yahweh’s call. (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### **when I called, you did not answer; when I spoke, you did not listen**

Both clauses mean the same and are repeated for emphasis. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

## Isaiah 65:13

### Look, my servants

“Take notice and pay attention” Yahweh repeats this for emphasis. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

## Isaiah 65:14

**but you will cry because of the pain of the heart, and will wail because of the crushing of the spirit**

These clauses mean the same and the repetition is for emphasis. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

**crushing of the spirit**

This expression compares the feeling of terrible disappointment and sorrow to something becoming deformed due to high pressure. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## **Isaiah 65:15**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## Isaiah 65:16

### **will be blessed by me, the God of truth**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "I, the God who always speaks the truth, will bless him" (See:

**Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### **the former troubles will be forgotten & will be hidden**

These clauses can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they will forget the former troubles, for these troubles will be out of my memory" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### **they will be hidden from my eyes**

"hidden from my eyes" represents the attention and memory of Yahweh. Alternate translation: "I will not even think about them again" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-idiom\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-personification\]\]](#)) (See: **Idiom (p.1427)**)



## Isaiah 65:17

### For see

Alternate translation: "Notice! Pay attention!"

### new heavens and a new earth

Both are extremes that also represent everything between. (See: **Merism (p.1440)**) (See: **Merism (p.1440)**)

### the former things will not be remembered or be brought to mind

Both of these clauses mean the same thing and are combined for emphasis. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language.

Alternate translation: "you will not even think about what happened in the past" (See: [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

## **Isaiah 65:18**

### **But you will be glad**

Here “you” refers to all of God’s servants. (See: **Forms of You (p.1408)**) (See: **Forms of You (p.1408)**)

## Isaiah 65:19

### **weeping and cries of distress will no longer be heard in her**

You can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "no one will hear weeping and cries of distress any longer in her" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 65:20

### one hundred years

“100 years” (See: **Numbers (p.1454)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1454)**)

### will be considered a young person

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “people will consider him a young person” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### will be considered cursed

This can be stated this in active form. Alternate translation: “people will consider this person as cursed” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## **Isaiah 65:21**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## **Isaiah 65:22**

**for as the days of trees will be the days of my people**

Alternate translation: "for my people will live as long as trees live"

## Isaiah 65:23

### they are the children of those blessed by Yahweh

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “they are the children of those whom Yahweh blessed” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## **Isaiah 65:24**

(There are no notes for this verse.)



## Isaiah 65:25

### holy mountain

See how you translated this in [Isaiah 11:9](#).

## Isaiah 66

### Isaiah 66 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 66:1-17, 21-24.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### In the end

In the end, Yahweh will enact his perfect justice. This is the true hope of this world. The new heaven and the new earth are an important part of this. In the end, this will be the perfect creation of Yahweh and will last forever. (See: [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/justice\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/hope\]\]](#) and **eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever (p. 1499)**)

## **Isaiah 66:1**

### **Heaven is my throne, and the earth is my footstool**

Yahweh compares heaven to a throne and the earth to a footstool to emphasize how great he is. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### **Where then is the house you will build for me? Where is the place where I may rest?**

Yahweh uses questions to emphasize that humans cannot build a place for him to dwell. (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

## Isaiah 66:2

### My hand has made all these things

Yahweh is represented by his hand which emphasizes his power and authority. Alternate translation: "I have made all these things" (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### this is Yahweh's declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. Translate as in [Isaiah 30:1](#). Alternate translation: "this is what Yahweh has declared" or "this is what I, Yahweh, have declared" (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1406)**) (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1406)**)

### the broken and contrite in spirit

Here "broken" and "contrite" refers to a person who is truly humble and who suffers for his faith.

## **Isaiah 66:3**

### **He who slaughters & also blesses wickedness**

These four clauses all describe different ways evil people act and come to the same meaning for emphasis. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### **They have chosen their own ways**

Alternate translation: "They have chosen to do evil things that violate the ways of Yahweh"

## Isaiah 66:4

### what was evil in my sight

Here sight represents judgment or evaluation. Alternate translation: “what I consider to be evil” or “what is evil in my judgement” (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 66:5

### May Yahweh be glorified

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “Glorify Yahweh” or “May Yahweh glorify himself” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

### but they will be put to shame

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “but I will put them to shame” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 66:6

### General Information:

## General Information:

Yahweh describes the punishment for the hypocrisy of the worshipers.

### A sound of battle tumult

The sound represents the real fighting that is going on in the temple as Yahweh is carrying out the punishment.  
(See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)



## Isaiah 66:7

**Before she goes into labor, she gives birth; before pain is upon her, she gave birth to a son**

Yahweh speaks about Zion as if it were a woman who is about to give birth. Although Zion was destroyed and the people no longer lived there, Yahweh promises that without delay and with little effort an entire nation will come from her. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 66:8

**Who has heard of such a thing? Who has seen such things? Will a land be born in one day? Can a nation be established in one moment?**

Yahweh uses questions to emphasize how unique this event will be. The series of questions builds tension until Zion is finally mentioned. (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1475)**)

## Isaiah 66:9

### Do I bring a baby to the birth opening & born?

Yahweh uses questions to emphasize that he will not fail to fulfill his promises to the people of Jerusalem. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-rquestion\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p. 1475)**)

## **Isaiah 66:10**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## Isaiah 66:11

### **For you will nurse and be satisfied; with her breasts you will be comforted**

This means Jerusalem will be a place of safety and comfort for God's people. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language.

Alternate translation: "For she will satisfy you with her milk; she will comfort you with her breasts" (See: [[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor]] and [[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive]]) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

## Isaiah 66:12

### like a river & like an overflowing stream

This means God will cause the people of the nations to bring a very large amount of riches, which will be permanent like a river and abundant. (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

### You will nurse at her side, be carried in her arms, and be dandled on her knees

This means Jerusalem will be a place of safety and comfort for God's people. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### be carried in her arms, and be dandled on her knees

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "she will carry you in her arms and bounce you on her knees with delight" (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 66:13

**so I will comfort you, and you will be comforted in Jerusalem**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “so I will comfort you in Jerusalem” (See: **Active or Passive (p. 1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 66:14

### General Information:

### General Information:

Isaiah is speaking to God's faithful people.

### **your bones will sprout**

"Bones" refers to the whole body. (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### **will sprout like the tender grass**

"Tender grass" grows fast and strong and compares to the health and vigor of God's faithful people. (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

### **The hand of Yahweh will be made known to his servants**

Here "hand" refers to his power. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Yahweh will reveal his power to his servants" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#)) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)



## Isaiah 66:15

### coming with fire

Yahweh's appearances in the Old Testament are often accompanied by fire that represents Yahweh's anger and judgment. (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1442)**)

### like the windstorm

Storms represent Yahweh's powerful actions to make his judgment effective. (See: **Simile (p.1479)**) (See: **Simile (p.1479)**)

## Isaiah 66:16

### with his sword

“Sword” is one weapon that represents all of warfare and killing. (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1486)**)

### Those killed by Yahweh will be many

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “Yahweh will kill many people” (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.1374)**)

## Isaiah 66:17

### They consecrate themselves

“They” are those who worship Yahweh but go against his laws.

### enter the gardens

This is a place where people would go to worship idols. (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.1379)**)

### the one in the middle

This describes the leader of those of go to worship idols.

### this is Yahweh’s declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. Translate as in [Isaiah 30:1](#). Alternate translation: “this is what Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, Yahweh, have declared” (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1406)**) (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1406)**)

## **Isaiah 66:18**

### **For I know**

Here "I" refers to Yahweh.

### **their deeds & their thoughts**

Here "their" refers to the worshipers that are hypocrites whom Yahweh has described before.

## Isaiah 66:19

### Put & Lud & Tubal & Javan

These are names of areas that are far from the land of Israel. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1416)**)

## **Isaiah 66:20**

### **They will bring**

Here “they” refers to the foreigners who survived and witnessed to the nations. They will return to Jerusalem with exiled Israelites.

### **holy mountain**

See how you translated this in [Isaiah 11:9](#).

## **Isaiah 66:21**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## **Isaiah 66:22**

### **the new heavens and the new earth**

See how you translated this in [Isaiah 65:17](#).



## **Isaiah 66:23**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## Isaiah 66:24

### General Information:

## General Information:

Yahweh finishes speaking.

### They will go out

Here “they” refers to all the people, the faithful Israelites and foreigners, who come to worship Yahweh.

### the worms & and the fire

Both clauses describe the same idea to emphasize Yahweh’s punishment. (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1461)**)

### the worms that eat them

The worms represent the horror of decay and rot that are Yahweh’s punishment on the wicked. (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### the fire that consumes

Fire also represents Yahweh’s judgment. (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)

### will not be quenched

This can be expressed positively. Alternate translation: “will burn forever” (See: **Litotes (p.1438)**) (See: **Litotes (p.1438)**)

### all flesh

This expression represents all created living beings that shrink from the dead. (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1449)**)



# **unfoldingWord® Translation Academy**

**Version 78**

# Abstract Nouns

## Description

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, or situations. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it.

This page answers the question: *What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Parts of Speech* ([UTA PDF](#))

*Sentence Structure* ([UTA PDF](#))

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. Abstract nouns are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships between those ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, weight, and many, many more.

Some languages, such as Biblical Greek and English, use abstract nouns a lot. They provide a way of giving names to actions or qualities. With names, people who speak these languages can talk about the concepts as though they were things. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin." But some languages do not use abstract nouns very much. In these languages, speakers may not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," but they would express the same meaning in other ways. For example, they would express, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned," by using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas. Instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun. For example, "What is its **weight**?" could be expressed as "How much does it **weigh**?" or "How **heavy** is it?"

## Examples From the Bible

From **childhood** you have known the sacred writings ... (2 Timothy 3:15a ULT)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone was a child.

But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

The abstract nouns "godliness" and "contentment" refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun "gain" refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

The abstract noun "salvation" here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be (2 Peter 3:9a ULT)

The abstract noun "slowness" refers to the lack of speed with which something is done.

He will both bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5b ULT)

The abstract noun "purposes" refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

## Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun. Alternative translations are indented below the Scripture example.

... from **childhood** you have known the sacred writings ... (2 Timothy 3:15a ULT)

Ever since **you were a child** you have known the sacred writings.

But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

But **being godly** and **content** is very **beneficial**. But we **benefit** greatly when we **are godly** and **content**. But we **benefit** greatly when we **honor and obey God** and when we are **happy with what we have**.

Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

Today the people in this house **have been saved** ... Today God **has saved** the people in this house ...

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be. (2 Peter 3:9a ULT)

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **moving slowly** to be.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5b ULT)

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal **the things that people want to do and the reasons that they want to do them**.

"

**Referenced in:** [Isaiah 1:7](#); [Isaiah 1:13](#); [Isaiah 2:10](#); [Isaiah 2:17](#); [Isaiah 5:7](#); [Isaiah 5:12](#); [Isaiah 7:11](#); [Isaiah 7:22](#); [Isaiah 10:16](#); [Isaiah 10:25](#); [Isaiah 10:33](#); [Isaiah 11:13](#); [Isaiah 12:4](#); [Isaiah 13:9](#); [Isaiah 13:19](#); [Isaiah 14:21](#); [Isaiah 15:5](#); [Isaiah 19:3](#); [Isaiah 19:20](#); [Isaiah 22:8](#); [Isaiah 24:12](#); [Isaiah 25:1](#); [Isaiah 26:16](#); [Isaiah 26:18](#); [Isaiah 26:20](#); [Isaiah 27:5](#); [Isaiah 28:6](#); [Isaiah 28:12](#); [Isaiah 28:22](#); [Isaiah 30:1](#); [Isaiah 30:2](#); [Isaiah 30:3](#); [Isaiah 30:13](#); [Isaiah 31:9](#); [Isaiah 33:15](#); [Isaiah 34:6](#); [Isaiah 35:4](#); [Isaiah 37:28](#); [Isaiah 42:25](#); [Isaiah 43:28](#); [Isaiah 44:26](#); [Isaiah 45:3](#); [Isaiah 49:8](#); [Isaiah 54:8](#); [Isaiah 54:14](#); [Isaiah 57:1](#); [Isaiah 63:7](#)

## Active or Passive

Some languages use both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects bolded:

- Active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- Passive: **The house** was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not use passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

This page answers the question: *What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Sentence Structure* ([UTA PDF](#))

*Verbs* ([UTA PDF](#))

## Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the active form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the passive form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is not always mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have bolded the subject.

- active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- passive: **The house** was built by my father in 2010.
- passive: **The house** was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All languages use active forms. Some languages use passive forms, and some do not. Some languages use passive forms only for certain purposes, and the passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that use it.

## Purposes for the Passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

## Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

## Examples From the Bible

Then their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants **were killed**, and your servant Uriah the Hittite **was killed** too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULT)

This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

When the men of the city arose early in the morning, and see, the altar of Baal **was torn down**.  
(Judges 6:28a ULT)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

## Translation Strategies

If your language would use a passive form for the same purpose as in the passage that you are translating, then use a passive form. If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies that you might consider.

(1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action. (2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone." (3) Use a different verb.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21b ULT)

**The king's servants gave** Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

(2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."

It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)

It would be better for him if **they were to put** a millstone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea. It would be better for him if **someone were to put** a heavy stone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

(3) Use a different verb in an active sentence.

A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

He **received** a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Next we recommend you learn about:

*Abstract Nouns* ([UTA PDF](#))  
*Word Order* ([UTA PDF](#))

**Referenced in:** Isaiah 1:7; Isaiah 1:8; Isaiah 1:26; Isaiah 1:27; Isaiah 1:28; Isaiah 2:2; Isaiah 2:11; Isaiah 2:12; Isaiah 2:17; Isaiah 3:5; Isaiah 4:3; Isaiah 5:5; Isaiah 5:6; Isaiah 5:16; Isaiah 6:4; Isaiah 6:5; Isaiah 6:10; Isaiah 6:13; Isaiah 7:2; Isaiah 7:8; Isaiah 7:20; Isaiah 7:25; Isaiah 8:4; Isaiah 8:9; Isaiah 8:10; Isaiah 8:15; Isaiah 8:22; Isaiah 9:5; Isaiah 9:6; Isaiah 9:19; Isaiah 10:22; Isaiah 10:23; Isaiah 10:27; Isaiah 10:33; Isaiah 11:13; Isaiah 13:10; Isaiah 13:16; Isaiah 13:19; Isaiah 14:15; Isaiah 14:20; Isaiah 14:25; Isaiah 14:26; Isaiah 16:5; Isaiah 17:2; Isaiah 19:3; Isaiah 19:18; Isaiah 20:6; Isaiah 21:2; Isaiah 21:3; Isaiah 22:2; Isaiah 22:3; Isaiah 22:14; Isaiah 22:19; Isaiah 23:8; Isaiah 23:14; Isaiah 23:15; Isaiah 23:16; Isaiah 23:18; Isaiah 24:3; Isaiah 24:6; Isaiah 24:10; Isaiah 24:18; Isaiah 24:19; Isaiah 24:22; Isaiah 25:1; Isaiah 25:5; Isaiah 25:9; Isaiah 26:1; Isaiah 26:10; Isaiah 26:11; Isaiah 27:7; Isaiah 27:9; Isaiah 27:10; Isaiah 27:11; Isaiah 27:12; Isaiah 27:13; Isaiah 28:3; Isaiah 28:13; Isaiah 28:18; Isaiah 28:27; Isaiah 28:28; Isaiah 29:4; Isaiah 29:12; Isaiah 29:13; Isaiah 29:20; Isaiah 30:1; Isaiah 30:14; Isaiah 30:24; Isaiah 30:29; Isaiah 30:31; Isaiah 30:32; Isaiah 30:33; Isaiah 31:3; Isaiah 31:8; Isaiah 32:5; Isaiah 32:10; Isaiah 32:14; Isaiah 32:15; Isaiah 32:19; Isaiah 32:20; Isaiah 33:1; Isaiah 33:3; Isaiah 33:5; Isaiah 33:8; Isaiah 33:10; Isaiah 33:23; Isaiah 33:24; Isaiah 34:3; Isaiah 34:4; Isaiah 35:2; Isaiah 35:8; Isaiah 35:9; Isaiah 36:15; Isaiah 38:10; Isaiah 38:12; Isaiah 38:14; Isaiah 38:16; Isaiah 39:2; Isaiah 39:6; Isaiah 40:2; Isaiah 40:4; Isaiah 40:5; Isaiah 40:15; Isaiah 40:17; Isaiah 40:21; Isaiah 42:22; Isaiah 43:2; Isaiah 43:26; Isaiah 44:9; Isaiah 44:11; Isaiah 44:21; Isaiah 44:26; Isaiah 44:28; Isaiah 45:14; Isaiah 45:17; Isaiah 45:18; Isaiah 45:22; Isaiah 45:25; Isaiah 46:5; Isaiah 47:1; Isaiah 47:3; Isaiah 47:5; Isaiah 48:1; Isaiah 48:8; Isaiah 49:5; Isaiah 49:7; Isaiah 49:23; Isaiah 49:25; Isaiah 50:7; Isaiah 51:1; Isaiah 51:7; Isaiah 51:12; Isaiah 52:5; Isaiah 52:13; Isaiah 52:15; Isaiah 53:3; Isaiah 53:4; Isaiah 53:5; Isaiah 53:7; Isaiah 53:8; Isaiah 53:10; Isaiah 53:12; Isaiah 54:5; Isaiah 54:10; Isaiah 54:13; Isaiah 55:6; Isaiah 55:12; Isaiah 56:1; Isaiah 56:5; Isaiah 56:7; Isaiah 57:1; Isaiah 57:6; Isaiah 58:12; Isaiah 59:5; Isaiah 59:6; Isaiah 59:14; Isaiah 59:19; Isaiah 60:2; Isaiah 60:4; Isaiah 60:7; Isaiah 60:11; Isaiah 60:12; Isaiah 60:18; Isaiah 60:21; Isaiah 61:3; Isaiah 61:6; Isaiah 62:4; Isaiah 62:12; Isaiah 63:15; Isaiah 63:19; Isaiah 64:11; Isaiah 65:8; Isaiah 65:16; Isaiah 65:19; Isaiah 65:20; Isaiah 65:23; Isaiah 66:5; Isaiah 66:12; Isaiah 66:13; Isaiah 66:14; Isaiah 66:16



# Apostrophe

## Description

An apostrophe is a figure of speech in which a speaker turns his attention away from his listeners and speaks to someone or something that he knows cannot hear him. He does this to tell his listeners his message or feelings about that person or thing in a very strong way.

This page answers the question: *What is the figure of speech called an apostrophe?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Figures of Speech* ([UTA PDF](#))

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Many languages do not use apostrophe, and readers could be confused by it. They may wonder who the speaker is talking to, or think that the speaker is crazy to talk to things or people who cannot hear.

## Examples from the Bible

Mountains of Gilboa, let there not be dew or rain on you. (2 Samuel 1:21a ULT)

King Saul was killed on Mount Gilboa, and David sang a sad song about it. By telling these mountains that he wanted them to have no dew or rain, he showed how sad he was.

Jerusalem, Jerusalem, who kills the prophets and stones those sent to you. (Luke 13:34a ULT)

Jesus was expressing his feelings for the people of Jerusalem in front of his disciples and a group of Pharisees. By speaking directly to Jerusalem as though its people could hear him, Jesus showed how deeply he cared about them.

He cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh: "**Altar, altar!** This is what Yahweh says, 'See, ... on you they will burn human bones.'" (1 Kings 13:2 ULT)

The man of God spoke as if the altar could hear him, but he really wanted the king, who was standing there, to hear him.

## Translation Strategies

If apostrophe would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. But if this way of speaking would be confusing to your people, let the speaker continue speaking to the people that are listening to him as he tells **them** his message or feelings about the people or thing that cannot hear him. See the example below.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

He cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh: "**Altar, altar!** This is what Yahweh says, 'See, ... on you they will burn human bones.'" (1 Kings 13:2 ULT)

He said this about the altar: "This is what Yahweh says **about this altar**. 'See, ... they will burn people's bones on **it**.'"

**Mountains of Gilboa**, let there not be dew or rain on **you**. (2 Samuel 1:21a ULT)

**As for these mountains of Gilboa**, let there not be dew or rain on **them**.

"

**Referenced in:** [Isaiah 1:2](#); [Isaiah 8:9](#); [Isaiah 21:2](#); [Isaiah 23:2](#); [Isaiah 44:23](#); [Isaiah 45:8](#); [Isaiah 49:13](#); [Isaiah 54:11](#)

## Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

Assumed knowledge is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker does not give the audience this information because he believes that they already know it.

This page answers the question: *How can I be sure that my translation communicates the assumed knowledge and implicit information along with the explicit information of the original message?*

When the speaker does give the audience information, he can do so in two ways. The speaker gives explicit information in what he states directly. Implicit Information is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from other things he says.

### Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is explicit information.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called assumed knowledge.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Implicit information is information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly.

Often, the audience understands this implicit information by combining what they already know (assumed knowledge) with the explicit information that the speaker tells them directly.

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different from the biblical languages and is made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the assumed knowledge or the implicit information is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, it is helpful if you include this information in the text or in a footnote.

### Examples From the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in **Tyre and Sidon** which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But

I say to you, it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the **day of judgment** than for you.  
(Matthew 11:21-22 ULT)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that the people he was speaking to would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged **because** they did not repent.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands when they eat bread**. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

## Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

- (1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.
- (2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes to live in**, and the birds of the sky **have nests to live in**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep."

It will be more tolerable for **Tyre and Sidon** at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.

At the day of judgment, it will be more tolerable for **those cities of Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked**, than it will be for you. or At the day of judgment, It will be more tolerable for those **wicked cities, Tyre and Sidon**, than for you.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands** when they eat bread. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness** when they eat bread.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

The implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, then, like Jesus, he would have to live without a house.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but **I, the Son of Man, have no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live.**"

It will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT)

The implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.

At the day of judgment, God will **punish Tyre and Sidon**, cities whose people were very wicked, **less severely than he will punish you.** or: At the day of judgment, God will **punish you more severely** than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.

Next we recommend you learn about:

*Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit* ([UTA PDF](#))

**Referenced in:** [Isaiah 1:9](#); [Isaiah 1:18](#); [Isaiah 2:19](#); [Isaiah 2:22](#); [Isaiah 3:4](#); [Isaiah 5:2](#); [Isaiah 5:8](#); [Isaiah 5:10](#); [Isaiah 5:13](#); [Isaiah 6:8](#); [Isaiah 7:9](#); [Isaiah 7:15](#); [Isaiah 7:24](#); [Isaiah 8:6](#); [Isaiah 8:12](#); [Isaiah 9:5](#); [Isaiah 9:9](#); [Isaiah 9:10](#); [Isaiah 10:7](#); [Isaiah 10:20](#); [Isaiah 10:24](#); [Isaiah 11:3](#); [Isaiah 11:8](#); [Isaiah 12:1](#); [Isaiah 13:3](#); [Isaiah 13:12](#); [Isaiah 13:16](#); [Isaiah 14:8](#); [Isaiah 14:13](#); [Isaiah 14:18](#); [Isaiah 14:31](#); [Isaiah 17:9](#); [Isaiah 18:3](#); [Isaiah 18:4](#); [Isaiah 18:5](#); [Isaiah 19:8](#); [Isaiah 19:19](#); [Isaiah 19:20](#); [Isaiah 19:21](#); [Isaiah 19:23](#); [Isaiah 20:4](#); [Isaiah 21:1](#); [Isaiah 21:5](#); [Isaiah 21:13](#); [Isaiah 21:16](#); [Isaiah 22:9](#); [Isaiah 22:16](#); [Isaiah 24:14](#); [Isaiah 24:21](#); [Isaiah 27:11](#); [Isaiah 28:21](#); [Isaiah 28:29](#); [Isaiah 29:9](#); [Isaiah 29:15](#); [Isaiah 29:21](#); [Isaiah 29:22](#); [Isaiah 29:24](#); [Isaiah 30:15](#); [Isaiah 30:16](#); [Isaiah 30:33](#); [Isaiah 31:3](#); [Isaiah 31:4](#); [Isaiah 32:10](#); [Isaiah 32:11](#); [Isaiah 32:12](#); [Isaiah 32:14](#); [Isaiah 33:3](#); [Isaiah 33:7](#); [Isaiah 33:14](#); [Isaiah 34:8](#); [Isaiah 35:7](#); [Isaiah 36:11](#); [Isaiah 36:12](#); [Isaiah 37:4](#); [Isaiah 37:16](#); [Isaiah 37:17](#); [Isaiah 37:24](#); [Isaiah 37:26](#); [Isaiah 37:29](#); [Isaiah 38:1](#); [Isaiah 38:8](#); [Isaiah 38:14](#); [Isaiah 38:15](#); [Isaiah 38:17](#); [Isaiah 38:20](#); [Isaiah 38:21](#); [Isaiah 39:2](#); [Isaiah 40:9](#); [Isaiah 43:9](#); [Isaiah 43:10](#); [Isaiah 43:14](#); [Isaiah 43:16](#); [Isaiah 43:17](#); [Isaiah 44:11](#); [Isaiah 51:2](#); [Isaiah 51:23](#); [Isaiah 52:11](#); [Isaiah 52:14](#); [Isaiah 53:5](#); [Isaiah](#)

54:9; Isaiah 55:2; Isaiah 55:11; Isaiah 56 General Notes; Isaiah 57:5; Isaiah 57:7; Isaiah 58 General Notes; Isaiah 63:11; Isaiah 65:3; Isaiah 65:4; Isaiah 66:17

# Background Information

## Description

When people tell a story, they normally tell the events in the order that they happened. This sequence of events makes up the storyline. The storyline is full of action verbs that move the story along in time. But sometimes a writer may take a break from the storyline and give some information to help his listeners understand the story better. This type of information is called background information. The background information might be about things that happened before the events he has already told about, or it might explain something in the story, or it might be about something that would happen much later in the story.

This page answers the question: *What is background information, and how can I show that some information is background information?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Order of Events* ([UTA PDF](#))

*Writing Styles* ([UTA PDF](#))

**Example** — The bolded phrases in the story below are all background information.

Peter and John went on a hunting trip because **their village was going to have a feast the next day. Peter was the best hunter in the village. He once killed three wild pigs in one day!** They walked for hours through low bushes until they heard a wild pig. The pig ran, but they managed to shoot the pig and kill it. Then they tied up its legs with some rope **they had brought with them** and carried it home on a pole. When they brought it to the village, Peter's cousin saw the pig and realized that it was his own pig. Peter had mistakenly killed his cousin's pig.

Background information often tells about something that had happened earlier or something that would happen much later. Examples of these are: "their village was going to have a feast the next day," "He once killed three wild pigs in one day," and "that they had brought with them."

Often background information uses "be" verbs like "was" and "were," rather than action verbs. Examples of these are "their village was going to have a feast the next day," and "Peter **was** the best hunter in the village."

Background information can also be marked with words that tell the reader that this information is not part of the event line of the story. In this story, some of these words are "because," "once," and "had."

## A writer may use background information:

- to help their listeners be interested in the story
- to help their listeners understand something in the story
- to help the listeners understand why something is important in the story
- to tell the setting of a story

- Setting includes:
  - where the story takes place
  - when the story takes place
  - who is present when the story begins
  - what is happening when the story begins

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Languages have different ways of marking background information and storyline information.
- You (the translator) need to know the order of the events in the Bible, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.
- You will need to translate the story in a way that marks the background information in a way that your own readers will understand the order of events, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.

## Examples From the Bible

Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram **was 86 years old** when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:15-16 ULT)

The first sentence tells about two events. Hagar gave birth and Abraham named his son. The second sentence is background information about how old Abram was when those things happened.

And Jesus himself **was beginning about 30 years old**. He **was the son** (as it was assumed) of Joseph, of Heli, (Luke 3:23 ULT)

The verses before this tell about when Jesus was baptized. This sentence introduces background information about Jesus' age and ancestors. The story resumes in chapter 4 where it tells about Jesus going to the wilderness.

Then **it happened on a Sabbath** that he **was going through the grain fields**, and his disciples **were picking and eating the heads of grain, rubbing them in their hands**. But some of the Pharisees said ... (Luke 6:1-2a ULT)

These verses give the setting of the story. The events took place in a grain field on the Sabbath day. Jesus, his disciples, and some Pharisees were there, and Jesus' disciples were picking heads of grain and eating them. The main action in the story starts with the phrase, "But some of the Pharisees said ...."

## Translation Strategies

To keep translations clear and natural you will need to study how people tell stories in your language. Observe how your language marks background information. You may need to write down some stories in order to study this. Observe what kinds of verbs your language uses for background information and what kinds of words or other markers signal that something is background information. Do these same things when you translate, so that your translation is clear and natural and people can understand it easily.

- (1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information.
- (2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first. (This is not always possible when the background information is very long.)

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information. The examples below explain how this was done in the ULT English translations.

**And** Jesus himself **was** beginning about 30 years old. He **was** the son (as it was assumed) of Joseph, of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

As here, English sometimes uses the word "and" to show that there is some kind of change in the story. The verb "was" shows that it is background information.

Therefore, also exhorting many other things, he preached the good news to the people. But Herod the tetrarch, having been rebuked by him concerning Herodias, the wife of his brother, and **concerning all the evil things that Herod had done**, added even this to them all: He locked John up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The bolded phrase happened before John rebuked Herod. In English, the helping verb "had" in "had done" shows that Herod did those things before John rebuked him.

- (2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first.



Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael.  
**Abram was 86 years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram.** (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

"**When Abram was 86 years old**, Hagar gave birth to his son, and Abram named his son Ishmael."

Therefore, also exhorting many other things, he preached the good news to the people. But Herod the tetrarch, having been rebuked by him concerning Herodias, the wife of his brother, and **concerning all the evil things that Herod had done**, added even this to them all: He locked John up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The translation below reorders John's rebuke and Herod's actions.

"Now Herod the tetrarch married his brother's wife, Herodias, and **he did many other evil things**, so John rebuked him. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison."

Next we recommend you learn about:

*Connecting Words and Phrases* ([UTA PDF](#))

*Introduction of a New Event* ([UTA PDF](#))

**Referenced in:** [Isaiah 38:21](#)

# Biblical Volume

## Description

The following terms are the most common units of volume used in the Bible to state how much a certain container could hold. The containers and measurements are given for both liquids (such as wine) and dry solids (such as grain). The metric values are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the measures of volume that are in the Bible?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-decimal\]\]](#)

Type	Original Measure	Liters
Dry	omer	2 liters
Dry	ephah	22 liters
Dry	homer	220 liters
Dry	cor	220 liters
Dry	seah	7.7 liters
Dry	lethek	114.8 liters
Liquid	metrete	40 liters
Liquid	bath	22 liters
Liquid	hin	3.7 liters
Liquid	kab	1.23 liters
Liquid	log	0.31 liters

## Translation Principles

- The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
- Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
- Whatever measures you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kinds of measures in the text or a footnote.
- If you do not use the biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one hin as “3.7 liters,” readers might think that the measurement is exactly 3.7 liters, not 3.6 or 3.8. It would be better to use a more approximate measure such as “three and a half liters” or “four liters.”
- When God tells people how much of something to use, and when people use those amounts in obedience to him, do not say “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much they used.

## When the unit of measure is stated

### Translation Strategies

- (1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)
- (2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
- (3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
- (4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
- (5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

### Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Isaiah 5:10 below.

For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only one bath, and one homer of seed will yield only an ephah. (Isaiah 5:10 ULT)

- (1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)

"For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only one **bat**, and one **homer** of seed will yield only an **efa**."

- (2) Use the measurements given in the UST. Usually they are metric measurements. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

"For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **22 liters** and **220 liters** of seed will yield only **22 liters**."

"For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **22**, and **ten baskets** of seed will yield only **one basket**."

- (3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

"For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **six gallons**, and **six and a half bushels** of seed will yield only **20 quarts**."

- (4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

"For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **one bath (six gallons)**, and **one homer (six and a half bushels)** of seed will yield only **an ephah (20 quarts)**."

- (5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULT measurements in footnotes.

"For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only 22 liters<sup>1</sup>, and 220 liters<sup>2</sup> of seed will yield only 22 liters<sup>3</sup>."

The footnotes would look like:

[1] one bath [2] one homer [3] one ephah

## When the unit of measure is implied

Sometimes the Hebrew does not specify a particular unit of volume but only uses a number. In these cases, many English versions, including the ULT and UST, add the word “measure.”

When you came to a heap of **20 measures** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50 measures** of wine, there were only 20. (Haggai 2:16 ULT)

## Translation Strategies

- (1) Translate literally by using the number without a unit.
- (2) Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount.”
- (3) Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.
- (4) Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

## Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Haggai 2:16 below.

When you came to a heap of **20 measures** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty measures** of wine, there were only **20**. (Haggai 2:16 ULT)

- (1) Translate literally by using the number without a unit.

When you came to a heap of **20** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50** of wine, there were only **20**.

- (2) Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount.”

When you came to a heap of **20 amounts** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty amounts** of wine, there were only **20**.

- (3) Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.

When you came to a heap of **20 baskets** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50 jars** of wine, there were only **20**.

- (4) Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

When you came to a heap for **20 liters** of grain, there were only **ten liters**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50 liters** of wine, there were only **20 liters**.

Next we recommend you learn about:

*Fractions* ([UTA PDF](#))

*Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit* ([UTA PDF](#))

Referenced in: [Isaiah 5:10](#)

# Direct and Indirect Quotations

## Description

There are two kinds of quotations: direct quotations and indirect quotations.

A direct quotation occurs when someone reports what another person said from the viewpoint of that original speaker. People usually expect that this kind of quotation will represent the original speaker's exact words. In the example below, John would have said "I" when referring to himself, so the narrator, who is reporting John's words, uses the word "I" in the quotation to refer to John. To show that these are John's exact words, many languages put the words between quotation marks: "".

- John said, "I do not know at what time I will arrive."

An indirect quotation occurs when a speaker reports what someone else said, but in this case, the speaker is reporting it from his own point of view instead and not from the original person's point of view. This kind of quotation usually contains changes in pronouns, and it often includes changes in time, in word choices, and in length. In the example below, the narrator refers to John as "he" in the quotation and uses the word "would" to replace the future tense, indicated by "will."

- John said that he did not know at what time he would arrive.

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In some languages, reported speech can be expressed by either direct or indirect quotations. In other languages, it is more natural to use one than the other. There may be a certain meaning implied by using one rather than the other. So for each quotation, translators need to decide whether it is best to translate it as a direct quotation or as an indirect quotation.

## Examples From the Bible

The verses in the examples below contain both direct and indirect quotations. In the explanation below the verse, we have marked in bold the words that are quoted.

And he commanded him to tell no one, but, "Go, show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them."  
(Luke 5:14 ULT)

- Indirect quote: He commanded him **to tell no one**,
- Direct quote: but told him, "**Go, show yourself to the priest ...**"

And being asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God was coming, he answered them and said, "The kingdom of God is not coming with careful observation. Neither will they say, 'Look, here it is!' or 'There it is!' For indeed, the kingdom of God is among you." (Luke 17:20-21 ULT)

- Indirect quote: Being asked by the Pharisees **when the kingdom of God was coming**,
- Direct quote: he answered them and said, "**The kingdom of God is not coming with careful observation. Neither will they say, 'Look, here it is!' or 'There it is!' For indeed, the kingdom of God is among you.**"
- Direct quotes: Neither will they say, '**Look, here it is!**' or, '**There it is!**'

This page answers the question: *What are direct and indirect quotations?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Pronouns* ([UTA PDF](#))

*Verbs* ([UTA PDF](#))

*Quotations and Quote Margins* ([UTA PDF](#))

## Translation Strategies

If the kind of quote used in the source text would work well in your language, consider using it. If the kind of quote used in that context is not natural for your language, follow these strategies.

- (1) If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.
- (2) If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.

And he commanded him to tell no one, but, **“Go, show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”** (Luke 5:14 ULT)

He commanded him to tell no one, but **to go and show himself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for his cleansing according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.**

- (2) If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

And he commanded him **to tell no one**, but, “Go, show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.” (Luke 5:14 ULT)

He commanded him, **“Tell no one.** But go and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”

You may also want to watch the video at [https://ufw.io/figs\\_quotations](https://ufw.io/figs_quotations).

Next we recommend you learn about:

*Quotes within Quotes* ([UTA PDF](#))

**Referenced in:** [Isaiah 8:11](#); [Isaiah 8:13](#); [Isaiah 36:7](#)

# Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding

## Description

In some languages, phrases that modify a noun can be used with the noun for two different purposes. They can either (1) distinguish the noun from other similar items, or (2) they can give more information about the noun. That information could be new to the reader, or a reminder about something the reader might already know. Other languages use modifying phrases with a noun only for distinguishing the noun from other similar things. When people who speak these languages hear a modifying phrase along with a noun, they assume that its function is to distinguish one item from another similar item.

This page answers the question: *When a phrase is used with a noun, what is the difference between phrases that distinguish the noun from others and phrases that simply inform or remind?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Parts of Speech* ([UTA PDF](#))

*Sentence Structure* ([UTA PDF](#))

When the phrase that modifies a noun is a relative clause (a phrase that starts with a word such as “who” or “which”), some languages use a comma to mark the difference between (1) making a distinction between similar items and (2) giving more information about an item. Without the comma, the sentence below communicates that the added phrase is making a distinction:

- Mary gave some of the food to **her sister who was very thankful**.
  - If her sister was usually thankful, the phrase “who was thankful” could distinguish this sister of Mary’s from another sister who was not usually thankful.

With the comma, the phrase is giving more information:

- Mary gave some of the food to **her sister, who was very thankful**.
  - This same phrase can be used to give us more information about Mary’s sister. It tells us about how Mary’s sister responded when Mary gave her the food. In this case it does not distinguish one sister from another sister.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Many source languages of the Bible use phrases that modify a noun both for distinguishing the noun from another similar item and also for giving more information about the noun. You (the translator) must be careful to understand which meaning the author intended in each case.
- Some languages use phrases that modify a noun only for distinguishing the noun from another similar item. When translating a phrase that is used for giving more information, translators who speak these languages will need to separate the phrase from the noun. Otherwise, people who read it or hear it will think that the phrase is meant to distinguish the noun from other similar items.

## Examples From the Bible

### Examples of words and phrases that are used to distinguish one item from other possible items:

(These usually do not cause any problem in translation.)

■ The curtain is to separate **the holy place** from **the most holy place**. (Exodus 26:33b ULT)

The words “holy” and “most holy” distinguish two different places from each other and from any other place.

■ A foolish son is a grief to his father, and bitterness to **the woman who bore him**. (Proverbs 17:25 ULT)

The phrase “who bore him” distinguishes which woman the son is bitterness to. He is not bitterness to all women, but to his mother.

## Examples of words and phrases that are used to give added information or a reminder about an item:

(These are a translation issue for languages that do not use these.)

... for **your righteous judgments** are good. (Psalm 119:39b ULT)

The word “righteous” simply reminds us that God’s judgments are righteous. It does not distinguish his righteous judgments from his unrighteous judgments, because all of his judgments are righteous.

You must surely open your hand to your brother, **to your needy and to your poor** in your land. (Deuteronomy 15:11 ULT)

The phrases “to your needy and to your poor” give further information about “your brother.” They do not refer to a separate group of people.

How can Sarah, **who is 90 years old**, bear a son? (Genesis 17:17b ULT)

The phrase “who is 90 years old” is a reminder of Sarah’s age. It tells why Abraham was asking the question. He did not expect that a woman who was that old could bear a child. He was not distinguishing one woman named Sarah from another woman named Sarah who was a different age.

I will wipe away mankind **whom I have created** from the surface of the earth. (Genesis 6:7 ULT)

The phrase “whom I have created” is a reminder of the relationship between God and mankind. It is the reason God had the right to wipe away mankind. There is not another mankind that God did not create.

I hate those who serve **worthless** idols (Psalm 31:6 ULT)

By saying “worthless idols,” David was commenting about all idols and giving his reason for hating those who serve them. He was not distinguishing worthless idols from valuable idols.

## Translation Strategies

If readers would understand the purpose of a phrase with a noun, then consider keeping the phrase and the noun together. For languages that use words or phrases with a noun only to distinguish one item from another, here are some strategies for translating phrases that are used to inform or remind.

(1) Put the information in another part of the sentence and add words that show its purpose. (2) Use one of your language’s ways for expressing that this is just added information. It may be by adding a small word, or by changing the way the voice sounds. Sometimes changes in the voice can be shown with punctuation marks, such as parentheses or commas.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Put the information in another part of the sentence and add words that show its purpose.

I hate those who serve **worthless** idols (Psalm 31:6 ULT)

**Because idols are worthless**, I hate those who serve them.

... for your **righteous** judgments are good. (Psalm 119:39b ULT)



... for your judgments are good **because they are righteous**.

Can Sarah, **who is 90 years old**, bear a son? (Genesis 17:17b ULT)

Can Sarah bear a son **even when she is 90 years old**?

You must surely open your hand to your brother, **to your needy and to your poor** in your land. (Deuteronomy 15:11 ULT)

You must surely open your hand to any of **your needy and poor brothers** in your land.

(2) Use one of your language's ways for expressing that this is just added information.

You are my Son, **whom I love**. I am pleased with you. (Luke 3:22 ULT)

You are my Son. **I love you** and I am pleased with you.

**Receiving my love**, you are my Son. I am pleased with you.

You must surely open your hand to your brother, **to your needy and to your poor** in your land. (Deuteronomy 15:11 ULT)

You must surely open your hand to your brother **who is needy and poor** in your land.

Next we recommend you learn about:

*Double Negatives* ([UTA PDF](#))

Referenced in: [Isaiah 44:10](#)

## Double Negatives

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each express the meaning of “not.” Double negatives mean very different things in different languages. To translate sentences that have double negatives accurately and clearly, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express this idea in your language.

This page answers the question: *What are double negatives?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Parts of Speech* ([UTA PDF](#))

*Sentence Structure* ([UTA PDF](#))

## Description

Negative words are words that have in them the meaning “not.” Examples in English are “no,” “not,” “none,” “no one,” “nothing,” “nowhere,” “never,” “nor,” “neither,” and “without.” Also, some words have prefixes or suffixes that mean “not,” such as the bolded parts of these words: “**un**happy,” “**im**possible,” and “**useless**.” Some other kinds of words also have a negative meaning, such as “lack” or “reject,” or even “fight” or “evil.”

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each have a negative meaning.

We did this **not** because we have **no** authority ... (2 Thessalonians 3:9a ULT)

And this was **not** done **without** an oath! (Hebrews 7:20a ULT)

Be sure of this—the wicked person will **not** go **un**punished. (Proverbs 11:21a ULT)

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages.

- In some languages, such as English, a second negative in a clause cancels the first one, creating a positive sentence. So, “He is not unintelligent” means “He is intelligent.”
- In some languages, such as French and Spanish, two negative words in a clause do not cancel each other to become a positive. The Spanish sentence, “No vi a nadie,” literally says “I did not see no one.” It has both the word ‘no’ next to the verb and ‘nadie,’ which means “no one.” The two negatives are seen as in agreement with each other, and the sentence means, “I did not see anyone.”
- In some languages, a double negative creates a stronger negative statement.
- In some languages, a double negative creates a positive sentence, but it is a weak statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” means, “He is somewhat intelligent.”
- In some languages, including the languages of the Bible, a double negative can produce a stronger positive meaning than a simple positive statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” can mean “He is very intelligent.” In this case, the double negative is actually the figure of speech called [litotes](#).

Biblical Greek can do all of the above. So to translate sentences with double negatives accurately and clearly in your language, you need to know what each double negative means in the Bible and how to express the same idea in your language.

## Examples From the Bible

The Greek of John 15:5 says:

χωρὶς ἐμοῦ οὐ δύνασθε ποιεῖν οὐδέν  
Without me **not** you can do **nothing**

We cannot reproduce this double negative in the English ULT because in English, a second negative in a clause cancels the first one. In English, and perhaps in your language, we need to choose only one of the negatives and say either:

Without me, you can do **nothing**.

or:

Without me, you **cannot** do anything.

... in order **not** to be **unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14b ULT)

This means "in order to be fruitful."

A prophet is **not without** honor (Mark 6:4 ULT)

This means "a prophet is honored."

I do **not** want you to be **ignorant**. (1 Corinthians 12:1)

This means "I want you to be knowledgeable."

## Translation Strategies

If the way that the double negative is used in the Bible is natural and has the same meaning as in your language, consider using it in the same way. Otherwise, you could consider these strategies:

- (1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.
- (2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives.
- (3) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a stronger negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives and add a strengthening word.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.

For we do **not** have a high priest who **cannot** feel sympathy for our weaknesses. (Hebrews 4:15a ULT)

"For we have a high priest who can feel sympathy for our weaknesses."

... in order **not** to be **unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14b ULT)

"... so that they may be fruitful."

- (2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives.

χωρὶς ἐμοῦ οὐ δύνασθε ποιεῖν οὐδέν  
Without me **not** you can do **nothing** (John 15:5)

Without me, you can do **nothing**.

or:

Without me, you **cannot** do anything.

(3) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a stronger negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives and add a strengthening word.

...ἰῶτα ἓν ἢ μία κεραία οὐ μὴ παρέλθῃ ἀπὸ τοῦ νόμου (Matthew 5:18)

...iota one or one serif **not not** may pass away from the law

...**not even** one iota or one serif may pass away from the law

or:

...**certainly no** iota or serif may pass away from the law

Next we recommend you learn about:

Verbs ([UTA PDF](#))

**Referenced in:** [Isaiah 1:6](#); [Isaiah 7:9](#); [Isaiah 34:16](#); [Isaiah 39:2](#); [Isaiah 39:4](#); [Isaiah 48:16](#)

# Doublet

## Description

We are using the word “doublet” to refer to two words or phrases that are used together and either mean the same thing or mean very close to the same thing. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Unlike [Hendiadys](#), in which one of the words modifies the other, in a doublet the two words or phrases are equal and are used to emphasize or intensify the one idea that is expressed by the two words or phrases.

This page answers the question: *What are doublets and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Figures of Speech* ([UTA PDF](#))

A very similar issue is the repetition of the same word or phrase for emphasis, usually with no other words between them. Because these figures of speech are so similar and have the same effect, we will treat them here together.

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. People might think that the verse is describing two ideas or actions, when it is only describing one. In this case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

## Examples From the Bible

He has one people **scattered** and **dispersed** among the peoples (Esther 3:8 ULT)

The bolded words mean the same thing. Together they mean the people were spread out.

He attacked two men **more righteous** and **better** than himself. (1 Kings 2:32b ULT)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words. (Daniel 2:9b ULT)

This means that they had decided to lie, which is another way of saying that they intended to deceive people.

... like of a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19b ULT)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any defect—not even one.

Then they approached {and} woke him up, saying, “**Master! Master!** We are perishing!” (Luke 8:24 ULT)

The repetition of “Master” means that the disciples called to Jesus urgently and continually.

## Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, consider these strategies.

- (1) Translate only one of the words or phrases.
- (2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words or phrases and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
- (3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

## Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate only one of the words.

You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words. (Daniel 2:9b ULT)

"You have decided to prepare **false** things to say."

(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as "very" or "great" or "many."

He has one people **scattered** and **dispersed** among the peoples (Esther 3:8 ULT)

"He has one people **very spread out**."

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.

... like a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19b ULT)

• English can emphasize this with "any" and "at all."

"... like a lamb **without any blemish at all**."

Then they approached {and} woke him up, saying, "**Master! Master!** We are perishing!" (Luke 8:24 ULT)

Then they approached {and} woke him up, **urgently shouting, "Master!**  
We are perishing!"

"

**Referenced in:** Isaiah 2:12; Isaiah 5:26; Isaiah 6:1; Isaiah 7:4; Isaiah 7:23; Isaiah 8:14; Isaiah 8:15; Isaiah 9:18; Isaiah 10:7; Isaiah 10:17; Isaiah 13:20; Isaiah 15:1; Isaiah 16:2; Isaiah 28:5; Isaiah 28:21; Isaiah 29:2; Isaiah 29:7; Isaiah 30:13; Isaiah 31:4; Isaiah 35:2; Isaiah 35:10; Isaiah 40:26; Isaiah 40:27; Isaiah 41:4; Isaiah 41:5; Isaiah 41:11; Isaiah 41:14; Isaiah 42:14; Isaiah 42:22; Isaiah 43:4; Isaiah 43:7; Isaiah 43:11; Isaiah 43:25; Isaiah 44:8; Isaiah 45:4; Isaiah 45:13; Isaiah 45:16; Isaiah 47:1; Isaiah 48:12; Isaiah 48:15; Isaiah 48:19; Isaiah 49:19; Isaiah 51:3; Isaiah 51:11; Isaiah 51:19; Isaiah 56:5; Isaiah 57:11

# Ellipsis

## Description

An ellipsis<sup>1</sup> occurs when a speaker or writer leaves out one or more words that normally should be in the sentence. The speaker or writer does this because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and supply the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. For example:

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, **nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous.**  
(Psalm 1:5 ULT)

There is ellipsis in the second part because “nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause. With the action filled in, the complete sentence would read:

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **will** sinners **stand** in the assembly of the righteous.

## Two Types of Ellipsis

A Relative Ellipsis happens when the reader has to supply the omitted word or words from the context. Usually the word is in the previous sentence, as in the example above.

An Absolute Ellipsis happens when the omitted word or words are not in the context, but the phrases are common enough in the language that the reader is expected to supply what is missing from this common usage or from the nature of the situation.

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know that there is information missing that the writer expects them to fill in. Or readers may understand that there is information missing, but they may not know what information is missing because they do not know the original biblical language, culture, or situation as the original readers did. In this case, they may fill in the wrong information. Or readers may misunderstand the ellipsis if they do not use ellipsis in the same way in their language.

## Examples From the Bible

### Relative Ellipsis

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox.** (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. The full sentence with the information filled in would be:

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk—**not as unwise but as wise.** (Ephesians 5:15b ULT)

This page answers the question: *What is ellipsis ?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Figures of Speech* ([UTA PDF](#))

*Sentence Structure* ([UTA PDF](#))

The information that the reader must understand in the second parts of these sentences can be filled in from the first parts:

Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk—**walk** not as unwise but **walk** as wise,

## Absolute Ellipsis

Then when he had come near, he asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” And so he said, “Lord, **that I might recover my sight.**” (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)

It seems that the man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him. The complete sentence would be:

“Lord, **I want you to heal me so** that I might receive my sight.”

To Titus, a true son in our common faith. Grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior. (Titus 1:4 ULT)

The writer assumes that the reader will recognize this common form of a blessing or wish, so he does not need to include the full sentence, which would be:

To Titus, a true son in our common faith. **May you receive** grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior.

## Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **sinner in the assembly** of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5 ULT)

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and **sinner will not stand in the assembly** of the righteous.

Then when he had come near, he asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” And so he said, “Lord, **that I might recover my sight.**” (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)

Then when the man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, **I want you to heal me** that I might receive my sight.”

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox.** (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.



English has a punctuation symbol which is also called an ellipsis. It is a series of three dots (...) used to indicate an intentional omission of a word, phrase, sentence or more from text without altering its original meaning. This translationAcademy article is not about the punctuation mark, but about the concept of omission of words that normally should be in the sentence. ↩

"

**Referenced in:** [Isaiah 1:3](#); [Isaiah 5:7](#); [Isaiah 6:2](#); [Isaiah 6:9](#); [Isaiah 11:5](#); [Isaiah 11:6](#); [Isaiah 13:4](#); [Isaiah 13:16](#); [Isaiah 13:22](#); [Isaiah 14:4](#); [Isaiah 16:11](#); [Isaiah 17:3](#); [Isaiah 17:6](#); [Isaiah 19:2](#); [Isaiah 19:22](#); [Isaiah 19:23](#); [Isaiah 21:2](#); [Isaiah 24:2](#); [Isaiah 27:4](#); [Isaiah 27:13](#); [Isaiah 29:5](#); [Isaiah 30:13](#); [Isaiah 30:17](#); [Isaiah 33:2](#); [Isaiah 33:6](#); [Isaiah 34:1](#); [Isaiah 35:6](#); [Isaiah 37:24](#); [Isaiah 37:30](#); [Isaiah 42:8](#); [Isaiah 43:20](#); [Isaiah 44:2](#); [Isaiah 44:3](#); [Isaiah 44:22](#); [Isaiah 48:18](#); [Isaiah 49:18](#); [Isaiah 55:7](#); [Isaiah 60:17](#); [Isaiah 61:9](#)

# Euphemism

## Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private.

This page answers the question: *What is a euphemism?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Figures of Speech* ([UTA PDF](#))

... they found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa.  
(1 Chronicles 10:8b ULT)

This means that Saul and his sons “were dead.” It is a euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages use different euphemisms. If the target language does not use the same euphemism as in the source language, readers may not understand what it means and they may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

## Examples From the Bible

... where there was a cave. Saul went inside to **cover his feet**. (1 Samuel 24:3b ULT)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so **he did not say specifically** what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

But Mary said to the angel, “How will this be, since I have not **known a man?**” (Luke 1:34 ULT)

In order **to be polite**, Mary uses a euphemism to say that she has never had sexual intercourse with a man.

## Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.
- (2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.

... where there was a cave. Saul went inside to **cover his feet**. (1 Samuel 24:3b ULT) — Some languages might use euphemisms like these:

“... where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to **dig a hole**”

“... where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to **have some time alone**”

But Mary said to the angel, “How will this be, since I have not **known a man?**” (Luke 1:34 ULT)

But Mary said to the angel, "How will this be, since I have not **slept with a man?**"

(2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

They found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8b ULT)

"They found Saul and his sons **dead** on Mount Gilboa."

"

**Referenced in:** [Isaiah 7:20](#); [Isaiah 8:3](#); [Isaiah 26:19](#); [Isaiah 47:3](#); [Isaiah 50:11](#); [Isaiah 57:1](#); [Isaiah 57:2](#); [Isaiah 57:7](#)

# Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

## Description

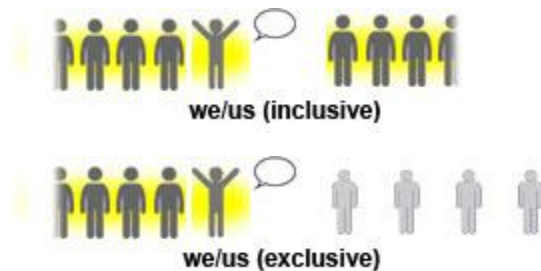
Some languages have more than one form of "we": an inclusive form that means "I and you" and an exclusive form that means "I and someone else but not you." The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for "us," "our," "ours," and "ourselves." Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for these words will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form to use.

This page answers the question: *What are the exclusive and inclusive forms of "we"?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Pronouns \(UTA PDF\)](#)

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive "we" and the exclusive "we" refer to.



## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for "we." If your language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of "we," then you will need to understand what the speaker meant so that you can decide which form of "we" to use.

## Examples From the Bible

### Exclusive

They said, "There are not more than five loaves of bread and two fish with **us**—unless **we** go and buy food for all these people." (Luke 9:13 ULT)

In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food. They were speaking to Jesus, but Jesus was not going to buy food. So languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" would use the **exclusive** form there.

**We** have seen it, and **we** bear witness to it. **We** are announcing to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and which has been made known to **us**. (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **exclusive** forms in this verse.

### Inclusive

The shepherds said one to each other, "Let **us** now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to **us**." (Luke 2:15b ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said “us,” they were including the people they were speaking to, so languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of “we” and “us” would use the **inclusive** form in this verse.

Now it happened that on one of those days, he indeed got into a boat with his disciples, and he said to them, “Let **us** go over to the other side of the lake.” So they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)

When Jesus said “us,” he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of “we” and “us” would use the **inclusive** form in this verse.

Next we recommend you learn about:

*When Masculine Words Include Women* ([UTA PDF](#))

**Referenced in:** [Isaiah 1:9](#); [Isaiah 1:18](#); [Isaiah 6:8](#); [Isaiah 24:16](#); [Isaiah 26:8](#); [Isaiah 26:12](#); [Isaiah 33:21](#); [Isaiah 33:22](#); [Isaiah 38:20](#); [Isaiah 42:24](#); [Isaiah 47:4](#); [Isaiah 53:1](#); [Isaiah 59:9](#); [Isaiah 59:12](#); [Isaiah 63:7](#)

## First, Second or Third Person

Normally a speaker refers to himself as “I” and the person he is speaking to as “you.” Sometimes in the Bible a speaker refers to himself or to the person he is speaking to with terms other than “I” or “you.”

### Description

- First person — This is how a speaker normally refers to himself. English uses the pronouns “I” and “we.” (Also: me, my, mine; us, our, ours)
- Second person — This is how a speaker normally refers to the person or people he is speaking to. English uses the pronoun “you.” (Also: your, yours)
- Third person — This is how a speaker refers to someone else. English uses the pronouns “he,” “she,” “it,” and “they.” (Also: him, his, her, hers, its; them, their, theirs) Noun phrases like “the man” or “the woman” are also third person.

This page answers the question: *What are first, second, and third person, and how do I translate when a third person form does not refer to the third person?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit* ([UTA PDF](#))

*Pronouns* ([UTA PDF](#))

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses the third person to refer to himself or to the people he is speaking to. Readers might think that the speaker was referring to someone else. They might not understand that he meant “I” or “you.”

### Examples From the Bible

Sometimes people used the third person instead of “I” or “me” to refer to themselves.

But David said to Saul, “**Your servant** used to keep **his** father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34 ULT)

David referred to himself in the third person as “your servant” and used “his.” He was calling himself Saul’s servant in order to show his humility before Saul.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like **God’s**? Can you thunder with a voice like **his**?” (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

God referred to himself in the third person with the words “God’s” and “his.” He did this to emphasize that he is God, and he is powerful.

Sometimes people use the third person instead of “you” or “your” to refer to the person or people they are speaking to.

Abraham answered and said, “Look, I have undertaken to speak to my Lord, even though I am only dust and ashes!” (Genesis 18:27 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as “My Lord” rather than as “you.” He did this to show his humility before God.

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

After saying “each of you,” Jesus used the third person “his” instead of “your.”

## Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean “I” or “you” would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

- (1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”
- (2) Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”

But David said to Saul, “**Your servant** used to keep **his** father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34)

But David said to Saul, “**I, your servant**, used to keep **my** father’s sheep.”

- (2) Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like **God’s**? Can you thunder with a voice like **his**?” (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like **mine**? Can you thunder with a voice like **mine**?”

So also my heavenly Father will do to you if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

So also my heavenly Father will do to you if **each of you** does not forgive **your** brother from your heart.

Next we recommend you learn about:

*Forms of You (UTA PDF)*

**Referenced in:** [Isaiah 1:24](#); [Isaiah 3:15](#); [Isaiah 6:12](#); [Isaiah 14:22](#); [Isaiah 17:3](#); [Isaiah 17:6](#); [Isaiah 19:4](#); [Isaiah 25:12](#); [Isaiah 26:16](#); [Isaiah 29:23](#); [Isaiah 30:1](#); [Isaiah 30:12](#); [Isaiah 37:34](#); [Isaiah 40:2](#); [Isaiah 41:14](#); [Isaiah 48:2](#); [Isaiah 49:10](#); [Isaiah 52:5](#); [Isaiah 54:8](#); [Isaiah 54:10](#); [Isaiah 54:13](#); [Isaiah 54:17](#); [Isaiah 59:20](#); [Isaiah 61:7](#); [Isaiah 66:2](#); [Isaiah 66:17](#)

## Forms of You

### Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for “you” based on how many people the word “you” refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some languages have other forms that refer to three or four people.

This page answers the question: *What are the different forms of you?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Forms of ‘You’ — Singular* ([UTA PDF](#))

*Forms of ‘You’ — Dual/Plural* ([UTA PDF](#))

You may also want to watch the video at [https://ufw.io/figs\\_younum](https://ufw.io/figs_younum).

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of “you” even though he is speaking to a crowd. For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- [Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups](#)

### Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of “you” based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he or she is talking to. People use the **formal** form of “you” when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend.

You may also want to watch the video at [https://ufw.io/figs\\_youform](https://ufw.io/figs_youform).

For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- [Forms of “You” — Formal or Informal](#)

### Masculine and Feminine

Some languages have a **masculine** form and a **feminine** form of the word for “you.” People use the **masculine** form when speaking to a man or boy and the **feminine** form when speaking to a woman or girl.

English does not make any of the above distinctions, so they are absent in the ULT. Please be aware of this and use the appropriate forms of “you” if your language does make any of these distinctions.

”

**Referenced in:** [Isaiah 1:5](#); [Isaiah 3:14](#); [Isaiah 7:5](#); [Isaiah 7:16](#); [Isaiah 8:19](#); [Isaiah 9:3](#); [Isaiah 10:22](#); [Isaiah 14:3](#); [Isaiah 27:8](#); [Isaiah 29:6](#); [Isaiah 37:30](#); [Isaiah 38:12](#); [Isaiah 38:18](#); [Isaiah 40:1](#); [Isaiah 40:18](#); [Isaiah 41:24](#); [Isaiah 42:6](#); [Isaiah 42:9](#); [Isaiah 42:18](#); [Isaiah 42:23](#); [Isaiah 43:10](#); [Isaiah 45:14](#); [Isaiah 48:17](#); [Isaiah 54:3](#); [Isaiah 59:2](#); [Isaiah 59:12](#); [Isaiah 65:18](#)



## Generic Noun Phrases

### Description

Generic noun phrases refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things. This happens frequently in proverbs, because proverbs tell about things that are true about people in general.

This page answers the question: *What are generic noun phrases and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Parts of Speech* ([UTA PDF](#))

Can **a man** walk on hot coals without scorching his feet? So is **the man who goes in to his neighbor's wife; the one who touches her** will not go unpunished. (Proverbs 6:28-29 ULT)

The phrases in bold above do not refer to a specific man. They refer to any man who does these things.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages have different ways of showing that noun phrases refer to something in general. You (the translator) should refer to these general ideas in ways that are natural in your language.

### Examples From the Bible

The **righteous person** is kept away from trouble and it comes upon **the wicked** instead. (Proverbs 11:8 ULT)

The bold phrases above do not refer to a specific person but to anyone who does what is right or anyone who is wicked.

People curse **the man who refuses to sell grain**. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

This does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who refuses to sell grain.

Yahweh gives favor to **a good man**, but he condemns **a man who makes evil plans**. (Proverbs 12:2 ULT)

The phrase "a good man" does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who is good. The phrase "a man who makes evil plans" does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who makes evil plans.

### Translation Strategies

If your language can use the same wording as in the ULT to refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things, consider using the same wording. If not, here are some strategies you might use.

- (1) Use the word "the" in the noun phrase.
- (2) Use the word "a" in the noun phrase.
- (3) Use the word "any," as in "any person" or "anyone."
- (4) Use the plural form, as in "people."
- (5) Use any other way that is natural in your language.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the word "the" in the noun phrase.

Yahweh gives favor to **a good man**, but he condemns **a man who makes evil plans**. (Proverbs 12:2 ULT)

"Yahweh gives favor to **the good man**, but he condemns **the man who makes evil plans**." (Proverbs 12:2)

(2) Use the word "a" in the noun phrase.

People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

"People curse **a man** who refuses to sell grain."

(3) Use the word "any," as in "any person" or "anyone."

People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

"People curse **any man** who refuses to sell grain."

(4) Use the plural form, as in "people" (or in this sentence, "men").

People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

"People curse **men** who refuse to sell grain"

(5) Use any other way that is natural in your language.

People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

"People curse **whoever** refuses to sell grain."

Next we recommend you learn about:

*When Masculine Words Include Women* ([UTA PDF](#))

**Referenced in:** [Isaiah 3:2](#); [Isaiah 3:3](#); [Isaiah 3:10](#); [Isaiah 5:3](#); [Isaiah 5:7](#); [Isaiah 11:6](#); [Isaiah 11:7](#); [Isaiah 11:8](#); [Isaiah 13:20](#); [Isaiah 19:23](#); [Isaiah 23:2](#); [Isaiah 24:2](#); [Isaiah 24:12](#); [Isaiah 25:2](#); [Isaiah 26:5](#); [Isaiah 26:10](#); [Isaiah 27:10](#); [Isaiah 28:7](#); [Isaiah 30:6](#)

## Go and Come

### Description

This page answers the question: *What do I do if the word "go" or "come" is confusing in a certain sentence?*

Different languages have different ways of determining whether to use the words "go" or "come" and whether to use the words "take" or "bring" when talking about motion. For example, when saying that they are approaching a person who has called them, English speakers say "I'm coming," while Spanish speakers say "I'm going." You will need to study the context in order to understand what is meant by the words "go" and "come" (and also "take" and "bring"), and then translate those words in a way that your readers will understand which direction people are moving in.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages have different ways of talking about motion. The biblical languages or your source language may use the words "go" and "come" or "take" and "bring" differently than your language uses them. If these words are not translated in the way that is natural in your language, your readers may be confused about which direction people are moving.

### Examples From the Bible

Yahweh said to Noah, "**Come**, you and all your household, into the ark." (Genesis 7:1 ULT)

In some languages, this would lead people to think that Yahweh was in the ark.

But you will be free from my oath if you **come** to my relatives and they will not give her to you.  
Then you will be free from my oath. (Genesis 24:41 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to his servant. Abraham's relatives lived far away from where he and his servant were standing and he wanted his servant to **go** to them, not **come** toward Abraham.

When you have **come** to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it ... (Deuteronomy 17:14a ULT)

Moses is speaking to the people in the wilderness. They had not yet gone into the land that God was giving them. In some languages, it would make more sense to say, "When you have **gone** into the land ..."

They **brought** him up to the temple in Jerusalem to present him to the Lord. (Luke 2:22b ULT)

In some languages, it might make more sense to say that they **took** or **carried** Jesus to the temple.

Then see, there was a man whose name was Jairus, and he was a leader of the synagogue. And falling at the feet of Jesus, he begged him to come to his house. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

The man was not at his house when he spoke to Jesus. He wanted Jesus to **go** with him to his house.

What did you go out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind? (Luke 7:24b ULT)

In some languages, it might make more sense to ask what did you come out to see.

### Translation Strategies

If the word used in the ULT would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other strategies.

- (1) Use the word “go,” “come,” “take,” or “bring” that would be natural in your language.
- (2) Use another word that expresses the right meaning.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the word “go,” “come,” “take,” or “bring” that would be natural in your language.

But you will be free from my oath if you **come** to my relatives and they will not give her to you.  
(Genesis 24:41 ULT)

But you will be free from my oath if you **go** to my relatives and they will not give her to you.

What did you go out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind? (Luke 7:24b ULT)

What did you come out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind?

- (2) Use another word that expresses the right meaning.

When you have **come** to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it ... (Deuteronomy 17:14 ULT)

“When you have **arrived** in the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it ...”

Yahweh said to Noah, “**Come**, you and all your household, into the ark ...” (Genesis 7:1 ULT)

Yahweh said to Noah, “**Enter**, you and all your household, into the ark ...”

What did you go out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind? (Luke 7:24b ULT)

What did you travel out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind?

”

Referenced in: [Isaiah 30:4](#)

# Hendiadys

## Description

In a hendiadys, a speaker uses two words that mean different things and that are connected with “and.” These two words work together to express a single idea. Usually one of the words is the primary idea and the other word further describes the primary one.

This page answers the question: *What is hendiadys and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Figures of Speech* ([UTA PDF](#))

*Parts of Speech* ([UTA PDF](#))

... his own **kingdom and glory**. (1 Thessalonians 2:12b ULT)

Though “kingdom” and “glory” are both nouns, “glory” actually tells what kind of kingdom it is: it is a **kingdom of glory** or **a glorious kingdom**.

Two phrases connected by “and” can also be a hendiadys when they refer to a single person, thing, or event.

while we look forward to receiving **the blessed hope and appearing of the glory of our great God and Savior Jesus Christ**. (Titus 2:13b ULT)

Titus 2:13 contains two hendiadyses. “The blessed hope” and “appearing of the glory” refer to the same thing and serve to strengthen the idea that the return of Jesus Christ is greatly anticipated and wonderful. Also, “our great God” and “Savior Jesus Christ” refer to one person, not two.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Often a hendiadys contains an abstract noun. Some languages may not have a noun with the same meaning.
- Many languages do not use the hendiadys, so people may not understand that the second word is further describing the first one.
- Many languages do not use the hendiadys, so people may not understand that only one person or thing is meant, not two.

## Examples From the Bible

For I will give you **a mouth and wisdom** ... (Luke 21:15a ULT)

“A mouth” and “wisdom” are nouns, but in this figure of speech “wisdom” describes what comes from the mouth.

If you are willing and obedient ... (Isaiah 1:19a ULT)

“Willing” and “obedient” are adjectives, but “willing” describes “obedient.”

## Translation Strategies

If the hendiadys would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Substitute the describing noun with an adjective that means the same thing.
- (2) Substitute the describing noun with a phrase that means the same thing.
- (3) Substitute the describing adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.
- (4) Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word or phrase describes the

other.

(5) If it is unclear that only one thing is meant, change the phrase so that this is clear.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Substitute the describing noun with an adjective that means the same thing.

For I will give you **a mouth and wisdom** ... (Luke 21:15a ULT)

For I will give you **wise words** ...

Walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you into **his own kingdom and glory**. (1 Thessalonians 2:12b ULT)

You should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to **his own glorious kingdom**.

(2) Substitute the describing noun with a phrase that means the same thing.

For I will give you **a mouth and wisdom** ... (Luke 21:15a ULT)

for I will give you **words of wisdom**.

You should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you into **his own kingdom and glory**. (1 Thessalonians 2:12b ULT)

You should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to **his own kingdom of glory**.

(3) Substitute the describing adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.

If you are willing and obedient ... (Isaiah 1:19a ULT)

If you are **willingly obedient** ...

(4) Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word or phrase describes the other.

If you are willing and obedient ... (Isaiah 1:19a ULT)

The adjective "obedient" can be substituted with the verb "obey."

if you **obey willingly** ...

(4) and (5) If it is unclear that only one thing is meant, change the phrase so that this is clear.

We look forward to receiving **the blessed hope and appearing of the glory of our great God and Savior Jesus Christ**. (Titus 2:13b ULT)

The noun "glory" can be changed to the adjective "glorious" to make it clear that Jesus' appearing is what we hope for. Also, "Jesus Christ" can be moved to the front of the phrase and "great God and Savior" put into a relative clause that describes the one person, Jesus Christ.

We look forward to receiving **what we are longing for, the blessed and glorious appearing of Jesus Christ, who is our great God and Savior**.

Next we recommend you learn about:

*Doublet* ([UTA PDF](#))

**Referenced in:** [Isaiah 1:19](#); [Isaiah 2:19](#); [Isaiah 49:10](#)

## How to Translate Names

### Description

The Bible contains the names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate names that are new to my culture?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Translate Unknowns* ([UTA PDF](#))

### Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to, but sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

For this **Melchizedek**, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, was the one who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULT)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

His name first indeed means “king of righteousness,” and then also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace.” (Hebrews 7:2b ULT)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see [Borrow Words](#).
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

### Examples From the Bible

Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** ... fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

She said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beer Lahai Roi” means “Well of the Living One who sees me.”



And she called his name **Moses** and she said, "For out of the water I drew him." (Exodus 2:10b ULT)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words "pull out."

**Saul** was in agreement with his execution. (Acts 8:1a ULT)

But when the apostles, Barnabas and **Paul**, heard of it, they tore their clothing. (Acts 14:14a ULT)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

## Translation Strategies

- (1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
- (2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
- (3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
- (4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
- (5) Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** ... fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

You went over the **Jordan River** and came to the **city of Jericho**. The men of Jericho fought against you, along with **the tribe of the Amorites**.

At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, "Leave and go away from here, because **Herod** wants to kill you." (Luke 13:31 ULT)

At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, "Go and leave here, because **King Herod** wants to kill you."

- (2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

And she called his name **Moses** and she said, "For out of the water I drew him." (Exodus 2:10b ULT)

She called his name **Moses (which sounds like 'drawn out')**, and she said, "For out of the water I drew him."

- (3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

She said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)

She said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?”  
Therefore, the well was called **Well of the Living One who sees me**.

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called “Saul” before Acts 13 and “Paul” after Acts 13. You could translate his name as “Paul” all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

... a young man named **Saul**. (Acts 7:58b ULT)

... a young man named **Paul** <sup>1</sup>

The footnote would look like:

<sup>[1]</sup> Most versions say “Saul” here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called “Paul.”

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

(5) Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write “Saul” where the source text has “Saul” and “Paul” where the source text has “Paul.”

a young man named **Saul** (Acts 7:58 ULT)

a young man named **Saul**

The footnote would look like:

<sup>[1]</sup> This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

Then after the story has explained the name change, you could translate this way.

It came about in Iconium that **Paul** and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

It came about in Iconium that **Paul**<sup>1</sup> and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue

The footnote would look like:

<sup>[1]</sup> This is the same man who was called Saul before Acts 13.

Next we recommend you learn about:

Copy or Borrow Words ([UTA PDF](#))

**Referenced in:** Introduction to Isaiah; Isaiah 1:1; Isaiah 7:1; Isaiah 7:3; Isaiah 7:6; Isaiah 7:14; Isaiah 9:11; Isaiah 10:9; Isaiah 10:26; Isaiah 10:28; Isaiah 10:29; Isaiah 11:11; Isaiah 13:1; Isaiah 13:12; Isaiah 15:1; Isaiah 15:2; Isaiah 15:4; Isaiah 15:5; Isaiah 15:6; Isaiah 15:8; Isaiah 15:9; Isaiah 16:1; Isaiah 16:7; Isaiah 16:8; Isaiah 17:1; Isaiah 17:5; Isaiah 19:11; Isaiah 19:13; Isaiah 20:1; Isaiah 21:11; Isaiah 21:13; Isaiah 21:14; Isaiah 21:16; Isaiah 22:6; Isaiah 22:15; Isaiah 22:20; Isaiah 23:1; Isaiah 23:3; Isaiah 29:1; Isaiah 30:4; Isaiah 30:7; Isaiah 34:6; Isaiah 36:1; Isaiah 36:2; Isaiah 36:3; Isaiah 36:11; Isaiah 36:19; Isaiah 36:22; Isaiah 37:2; Isaiah 37:8; Isaiah 37:9; Isaiah 37:12; Isaiah 37:13; Isaiah 37:17; Isaiah 37:37; Isaiah 37:38; Isaiah 39:1; Isaiah 42:11; Isaiah 43:3; Isaiah 44:2; Isaiah 45:14; Isaiah 46:1; Isaiah 49:12; Isaiah 60:6; Isaiah 60:7; Isaiah 63:1; Isaiah 65:10; Isaiah 66:19

# Hyperbole

## Description

A speaker or writer can use exactly the same words to say something that he means as completely true, or as generally true, or as a hyperbole. This is why it can be hard to decide how to understand a statement. For example, the sentence below could mean three different things.

It rains here every night.

The speaker means this as literally true if he means that it really does rain here every night.

The speaker means this as a **generalization** if he means that it rains here most nights.

The speaker means this as a **hyperbole** if he wants to say that it rains more than it actually does, usually in order to express a strong attitude toward the amount or frequency of rain, such as being annoyed or being happy about it.

This page answers the question: *What are hyperboles? What are generalizations? How can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Figures of Speech* ([UTA PDF](#))

## Hyperbole

In hyperbole, a figure of speech that uses exaggeration, a speaker deliberately describes something with an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it. He expects people to understand that he is exaggerating.

They will not leave **stone upon stone in you**. (Luke 19:44b ULT)

This is an exaggeration. It means that the enemies will completely destroy Jerusalem.

Moses was educated in **all the wisdom of the Egyptians**. (Acts 7:22a ULT)

This hyperbole means that he had learned everything an Egyptian education could offer.

## Generalization

This is a statement that is true most of the time or in most situations that it could apply to.

The one who ignores instruction **will have poverty and shame**, but **honor will come** to him who learns from correction. (Proverbs 13:18)

These generalizations tell about what normally happens to people who ignore instruction and what normally happens to people who learn from correction. There may be some exceptions to these statements, but they are generally true.

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as **the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words**. (Matthew 6:7)

This generalization tells about what Gentiles were known for doing. Many Gentiles did this. It does not matter if a few did not. The point was that the hearers should not join in this well-known practice.

Even though a hyperbole or a generalization may have a strong-sounding word like "all," "always," "none," or "never," it does not necessarily mean **exactly** "all," "always," "none," or "never." It simply means "most," "most of the time," "hardly any," or "rarely."

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Readers need to be able to understand whether or not a statement is literally true.

If readers realize that a statement is not literally true, they need to be able to understand whether it is a hyperbole, a generalization, or a lie. (Though the Bible is completely true, it tells about people who did not always tell the truth.)

## Examples From the Bible

### Examples of Hyperbole

If your hand causes you to stumble, **cut it off**. It is better for you to enter into life maimed ... (Mark 9:43a ULT)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should **do whatever extreme things** we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel with 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5a ULT)

The bolded phrase is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that the Philistine army was overwhelming in number. It means that there were **many, many** soldiers in the Philistine army.

But as his anointing teaches you **everything** and is true and is not a lie, and just as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27b ULT)

This is a hyperbole. It expresses the assurance that God's Spirit teaches us about **all things that we need to know**. God's Spirit does not teach us about everything that it is possible to know.

When they found him, they also said to him, "**Everyone** is looking for you." (Mark 1:37 ULT)

The disciples probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for Jesus, but that **many people** were looking for him, or that all of Jesus' closest friends there were looking for him. This is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that they and many others were worried about him.

### Examples of Generalization

Can **any good thing** come out of Nazareth? (John 1:46b ULT)

This rhetorical question is meant to express the generalization that there is nothing good in Nazareth. The people there had a reputation for being uneducated and not strictly religious. Of course, there were exceptions.

One of them, of their own prophets, has said, "**Cretans are always liars, evil beasts, lazy bellies**." (Titus 1:12 ULT)

This is a generalization that means that Cretans had a reputation to be like this because, in general, this is how Cretans behaved. It is possible that there were exceptions.

**A lazy hand causes a person to be poor, but the hand of the diligent person gains riches**. (Proverbs 10:4 ULT)

This is generally true, and it reflects the experience of most people. It is possible that there are exceptions in some circumstances.

## Caution

- Do not assume that something is an exaggeration just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

They saw Jesus **walking on the sea** and coming near the boat. (John 6:19b ULT)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

- Do not assume that the word “all” is always a generalization that means “most.”

Yahweh is righteous in **all** his ways and gracious in **all** he does. (Psalms 145:17 ULT)

Yahweh is always righteous. This is a completely true statement.

## Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole or generalization would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here are other options.

- (1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
- (2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”
- (3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.
- (4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5a ULT)

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and **a great number of troops**.

- (2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”

**The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame.** (Proverbs 13:18a ULT)

**In general**, the one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame

When you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the **Gentiles do**, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words. (Matthew 6:7 ULT)

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles **generally** do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.

- (3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.

The **whole** country of Judea and **all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5a ULT)

**Almost all** the country of Judea and **almost all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him. or:

**Many** of the country of Judea and **many** of the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like "all," "always," "none," or "never," consider deleting that word.

The **whole** country of Judea and **all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5a ULT)

The country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

"

**Referenced in:** [Isaiah 32:14](#); [Isaiah 34:12](#); [Isaiah 37:18](#); [Isaiah 37:25](#); [Isaiah 39:4](#); [Isaiah 41:2](#); [Isaiah 51:20](#); [Isaiah 57:9](#)

## Hypothetical Situations

Consider these phrases: “If the sun stopped shining ...” “What if the sun stopped shining ...” “Suppose the sun stopped shining ...” and “If only the sun had not stopped shining.” We use such expressions to set up hypothetical situations, imagining what might have happened or what could happen in the future but probably will not. We also use them to express regret or wishes. Hypothetical expressions occur often in the Bible. You (the translator) need to translate them in a way that people will know that the event did not actually happen and so that they will understand why the event was imagined.

This page answers the question: *What is a hypothetical situation?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Writing Styles* ([UTA PDF](#))

## Description

Hypothetical situations are situations that are not real. They can be in the past, present, or future. Hypothetical situations in the past and present have not happened, are not happening now, and ones in the future are not expected to happen.

People sometimes tell about conditions and what would happen if those conditions were met, but they know that these things have not happened or probably will not happen. (The conditions comprise a phrase that starts with “if.”)

- If he had lived to be 100 years old, he would have seen his grandson’s grandson. (But he did not.)
- If he lived to be 100 years old, he would still be alive today. (But he is not.)
- If he lives to be 100 years old, he will see his grandson’s grandson. (But he probably will not.)

People sometimes express wishes about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- I wish he had come.
- I wish he were here.
- I wish he would come.

People sometimes express regrets about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- If only he had come.
- If only he were here.
- If only he would come.

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Translators need to recognize the different kinds of hypothetical situations in the Bible and understand that they are unreal.
- Translators need to know their own language’s ways of talking about different kinds of hypothetical situations.

## Examples From the Bible

### Hypothetical Situations in the Past

“Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! **If the mighty deeds had been done** in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, **they would have repented** long ago in sackcloth and ashes.” (Matthew 11:21 ULT)



Here in Matthew 11:21, Jesus said that **if** the people living in the ancient cities of Tyre and Sidon had been able to see the miracles that he performed, they would have repented long ago. The people of Tyre and Sidon did not actually see his miracles, and they did not repent. He said this to rebuke the people of Chorazin and Bethsaida who had seen his miracles and yet did not repent.

Martha then said to Jesus, “Lord, **if you had been here, my brother would not have died.**” (John 11:21 ULT)

Martha said this to express her wish that Jesus would have come sooner so that her brother would not have died. But Jesus did not come sooner and her brother did die.

## Hypothetical Situations in the Present

And no man puts new wine into old wineskins. **But if he did do that, the new wine would burst the wineskins, and it would be spilled out, and the wineskins would be destroyed.** (Luke 5:37 ULT)

Jesus told about what would happen if a person were to put new wine into old wineskins. But no one would do that. He used this imaginary situation as an example to show that there are times when it is unwise to mix new things with old things. He did this so that people could understand why his disciples were not fasting as people traditionally did.

Jesus said to them, “What man would there be among you, who, **if he had just one sheep, and if this sheep fell into a deep hole on the Sabbath, would not grasp hold of it and lift it out?**” (Matthew 12:11 ULT)

Jesus asked the religious leaders what they would do on the Sabbath if one of their sheep fell into a hole. He was not saying that their sheep would fall into a hole. He used this imaginary situation to show them that they were wrong to judge him for healing people on the Sabbath.

## Hypothetical Situation in the Future

**Unless those days are shortened, no flesh would be saved.** But for the sake of the elect, those days will be shortened. (Matthew 24:22 ULT)

Jesus was talking about a future time when very bad things would happen. He told what would happen if those days of trouble were to last a long time. He did this to show how bad those days will be—so bad that if they lasted a long time, no one would be saved. But then he clarified that God will shorten those days of trouble so that the elect (those he has chosen) will be saved.

## Expressing Emotion About a Hypothetical Situation

People sometimes talk about hypothetical situations in order to express regrets and wishes. Regrets are about the past and wishes are about the present and future.

The Israelites said to them, “**If only we had died by Yahweh’s hand in the land of Egypt when we were sitting by the pots of meat and were eating bread to the full.** For you have brought us out into this wilderness to kill our whole community with hunger.” (Exodus 16:3 ULT)

Here the Israelites were afraid that they would have to suffer and die of hunger in the wilderness, and so they wished that they had stayed in Egypt and died there with full stomachs. They were complaining, expressing regret that this had not happened.

I know what you have done, and that you are neither cold nor hot. **I wish that you were either cold or hot!** (Revelation 3:15 ULT)

Jesus wished that the people were either hot or cold, but they are neither. He was rebuking them, expressing anger at this.

## Translation Strategies

Find out how people speaking your language show:

- that something could have happened, but did not.
- that something could be true now, but is not.
- that something could happen in the future, but will not unless something changes.
- that they wish for something, but it does not happen.
- that they regret that something did not happen.

Use your language's ways of showing these kinds of things.

You may also want to watch the video at [https://ufw.io/figs\\_hypo](https://ufw.io/figs_hypo).

"

**Referenced in:** [Isaiah 1:9](#); [Isaiah 48:18](#); [Isaiah 54:10](#); [Isaiah 64:1](#)

## Idiom

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg. (This means, “You are teasing me by telling me something that is not true.”)
- Do not push the envelope. (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme.”)
- This house is under water. (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value.”)
- We are painting the town red. (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely.”)

This page answers the question: *What are idioms and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Figures of Speech* ([UTA PDF](#))

## Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

He **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided.”

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you would **come under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)

The phrase “come under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house.”

Put these words **into your ears**. (Luke 9:44a ULT)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say.”

**Purpose:** An idiom is probably created in a culture somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

## Examples From the Bible

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your **flesh and bone**.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

■ The children of Israel went out **with a high hand**. (Exodus 14:8b ASV)

This means, "The Israelites went out defiantly."

■ the one who **lifts up my head** (Psalm 3:3b ULT)

This means, "the one who helps me."

## Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

- (1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
- (2) Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your **flesh and bone**." (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

■ Look, we all **belong to the same nation**.

Then he **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)

■ He started to travel to Jerusalem, **determined to reach it**.

I am not worthy that you would come **under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)

■ I am not worthy that you should enter **my house**.

- (2) Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Put these words **into your ears**. (Luke 9:44a ULT)

■ **Be all ears** when I say these words to you.

My **eyes grow dim** from grief. (Psalm 6:7a ULT)

■ I am crying my **eyes out**

"

**Referenced in:** [Isaiah 1:1](#); [Isaiah 1:8](#); [Isaiah 1:15](#); [Isaiah 2:11](#); [Isaiah 2:14](#); [Isaiah 4:1](#); [Isaiah 6:11](#); [Isaiah 7:1](#); [Isaiah 8:11](#); [Isaiah 9:2](#); [Isaiah 9:4](#); [Isaiah 9:8](#); [Isaiah 9:11](#); [Isaiah 9:19](#); [Isaiah 10:20](#); [Isaiah 10:30](#); [Isaiah 10:32](#); [Isaiah 13:10](#); [Isaiah 13:20](#); [Isaiah 15:2](#); [Isaiah 16:1](#); [Isaiah 17:7](#); [Isaiah 22:8](#); [Isaiah 23:2](#); [Isaiah 24:14](#); [Isaiah 26:16](#); [Isaiah 28:6](#); [Isaiah 28:19](#); [Isaiah 28:21](#); [Isaiah 29:16](#); [Isaiah 29:22](#); [Isaiah 30:12](#); [Isaiah 31:2](#); [Isaiah 31:4](#); [Isaiah 32:8](#); [Isaiah 33:3](#); [Isaiah 33:15](#); [Isaiah 34:8](#); [Isaiah 34:10](#); [Isaiah 34:17](#); [Isaiah 35:8](#); [Isaiah 36:11](#); [Isaiah 36:16](#); [Isaiah 36:22](#); [Isaiah 37:2](#); [Isaiah 37:7](#); [Isaiah 37:16](#); [Isaiah 37:22](#); [Isaiah 37:23](#); [Isaiah 37:26](#); [Isaiah 37:36](#); [Isaiah 38:3](#); [Isaiah 38:4](#); [Isaiah 38:15](#); [Isaiah 41:25](#); [Isaiah 47:8](#); [Isaiah 49:23](#); [Isaiah 51:13](#); [Isaiah 52:2](#); [Isaiah 52:8](#); [Isaiah 52:15](#); [Isaiah 53:10](#); [Isaiah 54:8](#); [Isaiah 54:15](#); [Isaiah 55:2](#); [Isaiah 56:2](#); [Isaiah 57:17](#); [Isaiah 58:7](#); [Isaiah 58:8](#); [Isaiah 62:11](#); [Isaiah 64:5](#); [Isaiah 64:7](#); [Isaiah 64:9](#); [Isaiah 65:2](#); [Isaiah 65:6](#); [Isaiah 65:16](#)

## Imperatives — Other Uses

### Description

Imperative sentences are mainly used to express a desire or requirement that someone do something. In the Bible, sometimes imperative sentences have other uses.

This page answers the question: *What other uses are there for imperative sentences in the Bible?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Sentence Types* ([UTA PDF](#))

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages would not use an imperative sentence for some of the functions that they are used for in the Bible.

### Examples From the Bible

Speakers often use imperative sentences to tell or ask their listeners to do something. In Genesis 26, God spoke to Isaac and told him not to go to Egypt but to live where God would tell him to live.

Now Yahweh appeared to him and said, “**Do not go down** to Egypt; **live** in the land that I tell you to live in.” (Genesis 26:2 ULT)

Sometimes imperative sentences in the Bible have other uses.

### Imperatives that make things happen

God can make things happen by commanding that they happen. Jesus healed a man by commanding that the man be healed. The man could not do anything to obey the command, but Jesus caused him to be healed by commanding it. (In this context, the command “Be clean” means to “be healed” so that others around would know that it was safe to touch the man again.)

“I am willing. **Be clean.**” Immediately he was cleansed of his leprosy. (Matthew 8:3b ULT)

In Genesis 1, God commanded that there should be light, and by commanding it, he caused it to exist. Some languages, such as the Hebrew of the Bible, have commands that are in the third person. English does not do that, and so it must turn the third-person command into a general, second-person command, as in the ULT:

God said, “**Let there be** light,” and there was light. (Genesis 1:3 ULT)

Languages that have third-person commands can follow the original Hebrew, which translates into English as something like “light must be.”

### Imperatives that function as blessings

In the Bible, God blesses people by using imperatives. This indicates what his will is for them.

God blessed them and said to them, “**Be fruitful**, and **multiply**. **Fill** the earth, and **subdue** it. **Have dominion** over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the sky, and over every living thing that moves upon the earth.” (Genesis 1:28 ULT)

## Imperatives that function as conditions

An imperative sentence can also be used to tell the **condition** under which something will happen. The proverbs mainly tell about life and things that often happen. The purpose of Proverbs 4:6 below is not primarily to give a command, but to teach what people can expect to happen **if** they love wisdom.

**Do not abandon** wisdom and she will watch over you; **love** her and she will keep you safe.  
(Proverbs 4:6 ULT)

The purpose of Proverbs 22:6, below, is to teach what people can expect to happen if they teach their children the way they should go.

**Teach** a child the way he should go, and when he is old he will not turn away from that instruction. (Proverbs 22:6 ULT)

## Translation Strategies

- (1) If people would not use an imperative sentence for one of the functions in the Bible, try using a statement instead.
- (2) If people would not understand that a sentence is used to cause something to happen, add a connecting word like “so” to show that what happened was a result of what was said.
- (3) If people would not use a command as a condition, translate it as a statement with the words “if” and “then.”

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If people would not use an imperative sentence for one of the functions in the Bible, try using a statement instead.

**Be clean.** (Matthew 8:3b ULT)

“You are now clean.” “I now cleanse you.”

God said, “**Let there be light**,” and there was light. (Genesis 1:3 ULT)

God said, “**There is now light**” and there was light.

God blessed them and said to them, “**Be fruitful**, and **multiply**. **Fill** the earth, and **subdue** it. **Have dominion** over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the sky, and over every living thing that moves upon the earth.” (Genesis 1:28 ULT)

God blessed them and said to them, “**My will for you is that you be fruitful**, and **multiply**. **Fill** the earth, and **subdue** it. **I want you to have dominion** over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the sky, and over every living thing that moves upon the earth.”

- (2) If people would not understand that a sentence is used to cause something to happen, add a connecting word like “so” to show that what happened was a result of what was said.

God said, “**Let there be light**,” and there was light. (Genesis 1:3 ULT)

God said, ‘Let there be light,’ **so** there was light. God said, “Light must be;” **as a result**, there was light.

- (3) If people would not use a command as a condition, translate it as a statement with the words “if” and “then.”

Teach a child the way he should go, and when he is old he will not turn away from that instruction. (Proverbs 22:6 ULT)

Translated as:

**"If** you teach a child the way he should go, **then** when he is old he will not turn away from that instruction."

"

**Referenced in:** [Isaiah 6:9](#)

# Introduction of a New Event

## Description

When people tell a story, they tell about an event or a series of events. Often they put certain information at the beginning of the story, such as who the story is about, when it happened, and where it happened. This information that the writer gives before the events of the story begin is called the setting of the story. Some new events in a story also have a setting because they might involve new people, new times, and new places. In some languages, people also tell if they saw the event or heard about it from someone else.

This page answers the question: *How do we introduce a new event in a story?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Writing Styles* ([UTA PDF](#))

*Order of Events* ([UTA PDF](#))

When your people tell about events, what information do they give at the beginning? Is there a certain order that they put it in? In your translation, you will need to follow the way your language introduces new information at the beginning of a story or a new event rather than the way the source language did that. In this way your translation will sound natural and communicate clearly in your language.

## Examples From the Bible

**In the days of Herod**, king of Judea, **there was a certain priest named Zechariah**, from the division of Abijah. And **his wife was** from the daughters of Aaron, and her name was Elizabeth. (Luke 1:5 ULT)

The verses above introduce a story about Zechariah. The first bolded phrase tells when it happened, and the next two bolded phrases introduce the main people. The next two verses go on to explain that Zechariah and Elizabeth were old and did not have any children. All of this is the setting. Then the phrase “And it happened that” in Luke 1:8 helps to introduce the first event in this story:

**And it happened that** in his performing as priest before God, in the order of his division, according to the custom of the priesthood, he came up by lot to enter into the temple of the Lord to burn incense. (Luke 1:8-9 ULT)

**The birth of Jesus Christ happened in the following way.** His mother, Mary, was engaged to marry Joseph, but before they came together, she was found to be pregnant by the Holy Spirit. (Matthew 1:18 ULT)

The bolded sentence above makes it explicit that a story about Jesus is being introduced. The story will tell about how the birth of Jesus happened.

**Now after Jesus was born in Bethlehem of Judea in the days of Herod the king**, behold, learned men from the east arrived in Jerusalem. (Matthew 2:1 ULT)

The bolded phrase above shows that the events concerning the learned men happened **after** Jesus was born.

**Now in those days** John the Baptist came preaching in the wilderness of Judea. (Matthew 3:1-22 ULT)

The bolded phrase above shows that John the Baptist came preaching around the time of the previous events. It is probably very general and refers to when Jesus lived in Nazareth.

**Then** Jesus came from Galilee to the Jordan River to John, to be baptized by him. (Matthew 3:13 ULT)

The word “then” shows that Jesus came to the Jordan River some time after the events in the previous verses.



Now there was **a man from the Pharisees whose name was Nicodemus, a Jewish leader**.  
This man came to Jesus at night. (John 3:1-2a ULT)

The author first introduced the new person and then told about what he did and when he did it. In some languages, it might be more natural to tell about the time first.

6 Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. 7 Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

Verse 6 is a statement of the events that happen in the rest of chapter 7. Chapter 6 already told about how God told Noah that there would be a flood, and how Noah prepared for it. Chapter 7 verse 6 introduces the part of the story that tells about Noah and his family and the animals going into the ship, the rain starting, and the rain flooding the earth. Some languages might need to make it clear that this verse simply introduces the event, or move this verse after verse 7. Verse 6 is not one of the events of the story. The people went into the ship before the flood came.

## Translation Strategies

If the information given at the beginning of a new event is clear and natural to your readers, consider translating it as it is in the ULT or UST. If not, consider one of these strategies:

- (1) Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.
- (2) If readers would expect certain information but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase to fill in that information, such as: "another time" or "someone."
- (3) If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language's way of showing that it is a summary.
- (4) If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, indicate that the event would actually happen later in the story.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.

Now there was **a man from the Pharisees whose name was Nicodemus, a Jewish leader**.  
This man came to Jesus at night. (John 3:1-2a ULT)

There was a **man whose name was Nicodemus. He was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council**. One night he came to Jesus.

One night **a man named Nicodemus, who was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council**, came to Jesus.

As he passed by, **he saw Levi the son of Alpheus, sitting** at the tax collector's tent, and he said to him ... (Mark 2:14a ULT)

As he passed by, **Levi the son of Alpheus was sitting** at the tax collector's tent. Jesus saw him and said to him ...

As he passed by, **there was a man sitting** at the tax collector's tent. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him ...

As he passed by, **there was a tax collector** sitting at the tax collector's tent. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him ...

(2) If readers would expect certain information, but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase such as “another time,” or “someone.”

Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. (Genesis 7:6 ULT) — If people expect to be told something about when the new event happened, the phrase “after that” can help them see that it happened after the events already mentioned.

**After that**, when Noah was 600 years old, the flood came upon the earth.

**Again he began** to teach beside the sea. (Mark 4:1a ULT) — In chapter 3 Jesus was teaching at someone’s house. Readers may need to be told that this new event happened at another time, or that Jesus actually went to the sea.

**Another time** Jesus began to teach people again beside the sea.

Jesus went to the sea and **began to teach people again** there.

(3) If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language’s way of showing that it is a summary.

Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. (Genesis 7:6 ULT)

**Now this is what happened when** Noah was 600 years old and the flood came upon the earth.

**This part tells about what happened when** the flood came upon the earth. It happened when Noah was 600 years old.

(4) If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, show that the event will actually happen later in the story.

Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons’ wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

**Now this is what happened when** Noah was 600 years old. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons’ wives went into the ark together because **God had said that the waters of the flood would come.**

Next we recommend you learn about:

*Background Information* ([UTA PDF](#))

*Introduction of New and Old Participants* ([UTA PDF](#))

Referenced in: [Isaiah 37:1](#)

# Irony

## Description

Irony is a figure of speech in which the sense that the speaker intends to communicate is actually the opposite of the literal meaning of the words. Sometimes a person does this by using someone else's words, but in a way that communicates that he does not agree with them. People do this to emphasize how different something is from what it should be, or how someone else's belief about something is wrong or foolish. It is often humorous.

This page answers the question: *What is irony and how can I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Figures of Speech* ([UTA PDF](#))

Then Jesus answered and said to them, "People who are well do not have need of a physician, but those who have sickness. I did not come to call the righteous, but sinners to repentance."  
(Luke 5:31-32 ULT)

When Jesus spoke of "the righteous," he was not referring to people who were truly righteous, but to people who wrongly believed that they were righteous. By using irony, Jesus communicated that they were wrong to think that they were better than others and did not need to repent.

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

If someone does not realize that a speaker is using irony, he will think that the speaker actually believes what he is saying. He will understand the passage to mean the opposite of what it was intended to mean.

## Examples From the Bible

**How well you reject the commandment of God** so that you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9b ULT)

Here Jesus praises the Pharisees for doing something that is obviously wrong. Through irony, he communicates the opposite of praise: He communicates that the Pharisees, who take great pride in keeping the commandments, are so far from God that they do not even recognize that their traditions are breaking God's commandments. The use of irony makes the Pharisee's sin more obvious and startling.

"Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. **"Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled."** (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

People worshiped idols as if their idols had knowledge or power, and Yahweh was angry at them for doing that. So he used irony and challenged their idols to tell what would happen in the future. He knew that the idols could not do this, but by speaking as if they could, he mocked the idols, making their inability more obvious, and rebuked the people for worshiping them.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work? Can you find the way back to their houses for them? **You know, for you were born then, and the number of your days is many!** (Job 38:20-21 ULT)

Job thought that he was wise. Yahweh used irony to show Job that he was not so wise. The two phrases in bold above are irony. They emphasize the opposite of what they say, because they are so obviously false. They emphasize that Job could not possibly answer God's questions about the creation of light because Job was not born until many, many years later.

Already you are satisfied! Already you have become rich! **You began to reign** apart from us, and I wish you really did reign, so that we also might reign with you. (1 Corinthians 4:8 ULT)

The Corinthians considered themselves to be very wise, self-sufficient, and not in need of any instruction from the Apostle Paul. Paul used irony, speaking as if he agreed with them, to show how proudly they were acting and how far from being wise they really were.

## Translation Strategies

If the irony would be understood correctly in your language, translate it as it is stated. If not, here are some other strategies.

- (1) Translate the irony in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.
- (2) Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony. (Remember: The true meaning of the irony is **not** found in the literal words of the speaker, but instead the true meaning is found in the opposite of the literal meaning of the speaker's words.)

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.

**How well you reject the commandment of God** so that you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9a ULT)

**You think that you are doing well when you reject God's commandment** so you may keep your tradition!

or:

**You act like it is good to reject God's commandment** so you may keep your tradition!

I did not come to call **the righteous**, but sinners to repentance. (Luke 5:32 ULT)

I did not come to call **people who think that they are righteous** to repentance, but to call people who know that they are sinners to repentance.

- (2) Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony.

**How well you reject the commandment of God** so that you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9a ULT)

**You are doing a terrible thing when you reject the commandment of God** so you may keep your tradition!

"Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. **"Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled."** (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

'Present your case,' says Yahweh; 'present your best arguments for your idols,' says the King of Jacob. **Can your idols bring us their own arguments or come forward to declare to us what will happen** so we may know these things well? **No!** We cannot hear them because **they cannot speak** to tell us their earlier predictive declarations, so we cannot reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work? Can you find the way back to their houses for them? **You know, for you were born then, and the number of your days is many!** (Job 38:20-21 ULT)

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work? Can you find the way back to their houses for them? **You act like you know how light and darkness were created, as if you were there; as if you are as old as creation, but you are not!**

Next we recommend you learn about:

*Litotes* ([UTA PDF](#))

**Referenced in:** [Isaiah 5:19](#); [Isaiah 19:12](#); [Isaiah 29:1](#); [Isaiah 36:8](#); [Isaiah 41:21](#); [Isaiah 43:9](#); [Isaiah 43:26](#); [Isaiah 47:12](#); [Isaiah 55:1](#); [Isaiah 57:12](#); [Isaiah 57:13](#)

# Litotes

## Description

Litotes is a figure of speech in which the speaker expresses a strong positive meaning by negating a word or phrase that means the opposite of the meaning that he intends. For example, someone could intend to communicate that something is extremely good by describing it as "not bad." The difference between a litotes and a **double negative** is that a litotes heightens the positive meaning beyond what a plain positive statement would do, and a double negative does not. In the example above, the literal meaning of "not bad," taken as a plain double negative, would be "acceptable" or even "good." But if the speaker intended it as a litotes, then the meaning is "very good" or "extremely good."

This page answers the question: *What is litotes?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Figures of Speech* ([UTA PDF](#))

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not use litotes. People who speak those languages might not understand that a statement using litotes actually strengthens the positive meaning. Instead, they might think that it weakens or even cancels the positive meaning.

## Examples From the Bible

For you yourselves know, brothers, that our coming to you was **not useless**, (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

By using litotes, Paul emphasized that his visit with them was **very** useful.

Now when it became day, there was **no small disturbance** among the soldiers over what therefore had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

By using litotes, Luke emphasized that there was a **lot** of excitement or anxiety among the soldiers about what happened to Peter. (Peter had been in prison, and even though there were soldiers guarding him, he escaped when an angel let him out. So they were very agitated.)

But you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah, are **not the least** among the leaders of Judah, for from you will come a ruler who will shepherd my people Israel. (Matthew 2:6 ULT)

By using litotes, the prophet emphasized that Bethlehem would be a **very important city**.

## Translation Strategies

If the litotes would be understood correctly, consider using it.

(1) If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the **positive** meaning in a strong way.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the **positive** meaning in a strong way.

For you yourselves know, brothers, that our coming to you was **not useless**. (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

"For you yourselves know, brothers, our visit to you **did much good**."

Now when it became day, there was **no small disturbance** among the soldiers over what therefore had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

"Now when it became day, there was **great excitement** among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter."

or:

"Now when it became day, the soldiers were **very concerned** because of what had happened to Peter."

"

**Referenced in:** [Isaiah 40:26](#); [Isaiah 62:6](#); [Isaiah 65:8](#); [Isaiah 66:24](#)

# Merism

## Definition

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it. By referring to the extreme parts, the speaker intends to include also everything in between those parts.

"I am **the alpha and the omega**," says the Lord God, "the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty." (Revelation 1:8 ULT)

I am **the alpha and the omega, the first and the last, the beginning and the end**. (Revelation 22:13, ULT)

This page answers the question: *What does the word merism mean and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Figures of Speech* ([UTA PDF](#))

**Alpha and omega** are the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. This is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

... I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth** ..., (Matthew 11:25b ULT)

**Heaven and earth** is a merism that includes everything that exists.

## Reason This is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not use merism. The readers of those languages may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

## Examples From the Bible

**From the rising of the sun to its setting**, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

This bolded phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means "everywhere."

He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13)

The bolded phrase is merism because it speaks of old people and young people and everyone in between. It means "everyone."

## Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
- (2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth**. (Matthew 11:25b ULT)



I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything**.

**From the rising of the sun to its setting**, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

**In all places**, people should praise Yahweh's name.

(2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth**. (Matthew 11:25b ULT)

I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth**.

He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13 ULT)

He will bless **all those** who honor him, regardless of whether they are **young or old**.

"

**Referenced in:** [Isaiah 1:2](#); [Isaiah 5:11](#); [Isaiah 7:11](#); [Isaiah 10:18](#); [Isaiah 18:2](#); [Isaiah 18:7](#); [Isaiah 27:3](#); [Isaiah 28:19](#); [Isaiah 33:13](#); [Isaiah 34:10](#); [Isaiah 37:16](#); [Isaiah 37:28](#); [Isaiah 41:23](#); [Isaiah 43:5](#); [Isaiah 44:6](#); [Isaiah 44:23](#); [Isaiah 45:6](#); [Isaiah 45:7](#); [Isaiah 48:12](#); [Isaiah 59:19](#); [Isaiah 65:17](#)

# Metaphor

## Description

A metaphor is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of one thing as if it were a different thing because he wants people to think about how those two things are alike.

For example, someone might say, “The girl I love is a red rose.”

A girl and a rose are very different things, but the speaker considers that they are alike in some way. The hearer’s task is to understand in what way they are alike.

This page answers the question: *What is a metaphor and how can I translate a Bible passage that has one?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Figures of Speech* ([UTA PDF](#))

*Simile* ([UTA PDF](#))

## The Parts of a Metaphor

The example above shows us that a metaphor has three parts. In this metaphor, the speaker is talking about “the girl I love.” This is the **Topic**. The speaker wants the hearer to think about what is similar between her and “a red rose.” The red rose is the **Image** to which he compares the girl. Most probably, he wants the hearer to consider that they are both beautiful. This is the **Idea** that the girl and the rose both share, and so we may also call it the **Point of Comparison**.

Every metaphor has three parts:

- The **Topic**, the item being immediately discussed by the writer/speaker.
- The **Image**, the physical item (object, event, action, etc.) which the speaker uses to describe the topic.
- The **Idea**, the abstract concept or quality that the physical **Image** brings to the mind of the hearer when he thinks of how the **Image** and the **Topic** are similar. Often, the **Idea** of a metaphor is not explicitly stated in the Bible, but it is only implied from the context. The hearer or reader usually needs to think of the **Idea** himself.

Using these terms, we can say that a metaphor is a figure of speech that uses a physical **Image** to apply an abstract **Idea** to the speaker’s **Topic**.

Usually, a writer or speaker uses a metaphor in order to express something about a **Topic**, with at least one **Point of Comparison (Idea)** between the **Topic** and the **Image**. Often in metaphors, the **Topic** and the **Image** are explicitly stated, but the **Idea** is only implied. The writer/speaker often uses a metaphor in order to invite the readers/listeners to think about the similarity between the **Topic** and the **Image** and to figure out for themselves the **Idea** that is being communicated.

Speakers often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to make their language more vivid, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique. When a metaphor has become very common in a language, often it becomes a “passive” metaphor, in contrast to uncommon metaphors, which we describe as being “active.” Passive metaphors and active metaphors each present a different kind of translation problem, which we will discuss below.

## Passive Metaphors

A passive metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Linguists often call these “dead metaphors.” Passive metaphors are extremely common. Examples in English include the terms “table **leg**,” “family **tree**,” “book **leaf**” (meaning a page in

a book), or the word “crane” (meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads). English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples of passive metaphors in Biblical Hebrew include using the word “hand” to represent “power,” using the word “face” to represent “presence,” and speaking of emotions or moral qualities as if they were “clothing.”

## Patterned Pairs of Concepts Acting as Metaphors

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction “up” (the Image) often represents the concepts of “more” or “better” (the Idea). Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as “The price of gasoline is going **up**,” “A **highly** intelligent man,” and also the opposite kind of idea: “The temperature is going **down**,” and “I am feeling very **low**.”

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world’s languages because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities (such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities) as if they were body parts, or as if they were objects that could be seen or held, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- “Turn the heat **up**.” More is spoken of as up.
- “Let us **go ahead** with our debate.” Doing what was planned is spoken of as walking or advancing.
- “You **defend** your theory well.” Argument is spoken of as war.
- “A **flow** of words.” Words are spoken of as liquids.

English speakers do not view these as metaphorical expressions or figures of speech, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech. For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see [Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns](#) and the pages it will direct you to.

When translating something that is a passive metaphor into another language, do not treat it as a metaphor. Instead, just use the best expression for that thing or concept in the target language.

## Active Metaphors

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept, or one thing for another thing. Metaphors make people think about how the one thing is like the other thing, because in most ways the two things are very different. People also easily recognize these metaphors as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

But for you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.  
(Malachi 4:2a ULT)

Here, God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people. Here is another example:

And he said to them, “Go and tell that fox ...” (Luke 13:32a ULT)

Here, “that fox” refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was intending for them to apply certain characteristics of a fox to Herod. They probably understood that Jesus intended to communicate that Herod was evil, either in a cunning way or as someone who was destructive, murderous, or who took things that did not belong to him, or all of these.

Active metaphors require the translator’s special care to make a correct translation. To do so, you need to understand the parts of a metaphor and how they work together to produce meaning.

Jesus said to them, “I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty.” (John 6:35 ULT)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **Topic** is “I” (meaning Jesus himself) and the **Image** is “bread.” Bread was the primary food that people ate in that place and time. The similarity between bread and Jesus is that people need both to live. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have eternal life. The **Idea** of the metaphor is “life.” In this case, Jesus stated the central Idea of the metaphor, but often the Idea is only implied.

## Purposes of Metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **Topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **Image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something (the **Topic**) has a particular quality (the **Idea**) or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about the **Topic** as they would feel about the **Image**.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus, misunderstand it.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so, not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.
- People may think that they understand the metaphor, but they do not. This can happen when they apply points of comparison from their own culture, rather than from the biblical culture.

## Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

## Examples From the Bible

Listen to this word, **you cows of Bashan**, (Amos 4:1q ULT)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria (“you,” the Topic) as if they were cows (the Image). Amos does not say what similarity(s) he intends between these women and cows. He wants the reader to think of them, and he fully expects that readers from his culture will easily do so. From the context, we can see that he means that the women are like cows in that they are fat and interested only in feeding themselves. If we were to apply similarities from a different culture, such as that cows are sacred and should be worshiped, we would get the wrong meaning from this verse.

NOTE: Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows. He speaks to them as human beings.

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; **we are the clay. You are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

The example above has two related metaphors. The Topic(s) are “we” and “you,” and the Image(s) are “clay” and “potter.” The similarity between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish out of their material.

The potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people. The Idea being expressed by the comparison between the potter's clay and "us" is that **neither the clay nor God's people have a right to complain about what they are becoming.**

Jesus said to them, "Take heed and beware of **the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees.**"  
The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, "It is because we did not take bread."  
(Matthew 16:6-7 ULT)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said "yeast," they thought he was talking about bread, but "yeast" was the Image in his metaphor, and the Topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

## Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it in the right way.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

- (1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, it is a passive metaphor), then express the **Idea** in the simplest way preferred by your language.
- (2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible**. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
- (3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as." See [Simile](#).
- (4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.
- (5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
- (6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the Topic was.)
- (7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity (the **Idea**) between the topic and the image, then state it clearly.
- (8) If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the **Idea** plainly without using a metaphor.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, a passive metaphor), then express the Idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

Then, see, one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **fell at his feet.** (Mark 5:22 ULT)

Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **immediately bowed down in front of him.**

- (2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible**. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

But Jesus said to them, "He wrote this commandment to you because of your **hardness of heart.**" (Mark 10:5 ULT)

It was because of your **hard hearts** that he wrote you this law.

We made no change to this one, but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.”

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we **are the clay**. You **are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are **like** clay. You are **like** a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.

(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad**. (Acts 26:14b ULT)

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to **kick against a pointed stick**.

(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **clay**. You are our **potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

“And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **wood**. You are our **carver**; and we all are the work of your hand.” “And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **string**. You are the **weaver**; and we all are the work of your hand.”

(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

Yahweh lives; **He is my rock**. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity between the Topic and the Image, then state it clearly.

Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock **under which I can hide from my enemies**. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad**. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You **fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner’s pointed stick**.

(8) If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

I will make you to become **fishers of men**. (Mark 1:17b ULT)

I will make you to become **people who gather men**. Now you gather fish.

I will make you **gather people**.

To learn more about specific metaphors, see [Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns](#).

"

**Referenced in:** Isaiah 1:2; Isaiah 1:4; Isaiah 1:5; Isaiah 1:6; Isaiah 1:10; Isaiah 1:14; Isaiah 1:16; Isaiah 1:17; Isaiah 1:18; Isaiah 1:21; Isaiah 1:22; Isaiah 1:23; Isaiah 1:25; Isaiah 2:2; Isaiah 2:3; Isaiah 2:5; Isaiah 2:6; Isaiah 2:7; Isaiah 2:8; Isaiah 2:9; Isaiah 2:11; Isaiah 2:13; Isaiah 2:14; Isaiah 2:15; Isaiah 3:1; Isaiah 3:6; Isaiah 3:7; Isaiah 3:8; Isaiah 3:10; Isaiah 3:12; Isaiah 3:13; Isaiah 3:14; Isaiah 3:15; Isaiah 3:16; Isaiah 4:2; Isaiah 4:4; Isaiah 5:3; Isaiah 5:7; Isaiah 5:11; Isaiah 5:14; Isaiah 5:15; Isaiah 5:16; Isaiah 5:19; Isaiah 5:20; Isaiah 5:24; Isaiah 5:25; Isaiah 5:29; Isaiah 5:30; Isaiah 6:3; Isaiah 6:7; Isaiah 6:10; Isaiah 6:13; Isaiah 7:4; Isaiah 7:18; Isaiah 7:20; Isaiah 8:6; Isaiah 8:7; Isaiah 8:8; Isaiah 8:14; Isaiah 8:20; Isaiah 9:1; Isaiah 9:2; Isaiah 9:4; Isaiah 9:6; Isaiah 9:12; Isaiah 9:14; Isaiah 9:16; Isaiah 9:17; Isaiah 9:18; Isaiah 9:20; Isaiah 9:21; Isaiah 10:2; Isaiah 10:4; Isaiah 10:6; Isaiah 10:13; Isaiah 10:17; Isaiah 10:18; Isaiah 10:24; Isaiah 10:26; Isaiah 10:33; Isaiah 10:34; Isaiah 11:1; Isaiah 11:2; Isaiah 11:5; Isaiah 11:12; Isaiah 11:14; Isaiah 11:15; Isaiah 12:2; Isaiah 12:3; Isaiah 13:5; Isaiah 13:6; Isaiah 13:7; Isaiah 13:8; Isaiah 13:9; Isaiah 13:11; Isaiah 13:17; Isaiah 14:8; Isaiah 14:11; Isaiah 14:12; Isaiah 14:16; Isaiah 14:19; Isaiah 14:20; Isaiah 14:21; Isaiah 14:23; Isaiah 14:25; Isaiah 14:26; Isaiah 14:27; Isaiah 14:29; Isaiah 14:30; Isaiah 14:31; Isaiah 15:8; Isaiah 16:3; Isaiah 16:4; Isaiah 16:5; Isaiah 16:8; Isaiah 16:9; Isaiah 17:6; Isaiah 17:10; Isaiah 17:14; Isaiah 18 General Notes; Isaiah 18:1; Isaiah 18:2; Isaiah 19:1; Isaiah 19:10; Isaiah 19:13; Isaiah 19:14; Isaiah 19:15; Isaiah 20 General Notes; Isaiah 21 General Notes; Isaiah 21:9; Isaiah 21:10; Isaiah 21:15; Isaiah 22:18; Isaiah 22:19; Isaiah 22:21; Isaiah 22:23; Isaiah 22:24; Isaiah 22:25; Isaiah 23:8; Isaiah 23:11; Isaiah 23:15; Isaiah 23:16; Isaiah 23:17; Isaiah 24:5; Isaiah 24:6; Isaiah 24:18; Isaiah 24:20; Isaiah 25:4; Isaiah 25:7; Isaiah 25:8; Isaiah 25:10; Isaiah 25:11; Isaiah 26:1; Isaiah 26:4; Isaiah 26:5; Isaiah 26:8; Isaiah 26:9; Isaiah 26:11; Isaiah 26:14; Isaiah 26:19; Isaiah 27:1; Isaiah 27:2; Isaiah 27:4; Isaiah 27:6; Isaiah 27:8; Isaiah 27:9; Isaiah 27:11; Isaiah 27:12; Isaiah 28:1; Isaiah 28:2; Isaiah 28:3; Isaiah 28:4; Isaiah 28:5; Isaiah 28:7; Isaiah 28:13; Isaiah 28:15; Isaiah 28:16; Isaiah 28:17; Isaiah 28:18; Isaiah 28:22; Isaiah 29:9; Isaiah 29:10; Isaiah 29:15; Isaiah 29:16; Isaiah 29:17; Isaiah 29:18; Isaiah 29:21; Isaiah 30:1; Isaiah 30:2; Isaiah 30:3; Isaiah 30:8; Isaiah 30:9; Isaiah 30:11; Isaiah 30:14; Isaiah 30:15; Isaiah 30:21; Isaiah 30:26; Isaiah 30:27; Isaiah 30:28; Isaiah 30:29; Isaiah 30:30; Isaiah 30:31; Isaiah 30:32; Isaiah 31:1; Isaiah 31:2; Isaiah 31:5; Isaiah 32:3; Isaiah 32:15; Isaiah 33:5; Isaiah 33:6; Isaiah 33:10; Isaiah 33:11; Isaiah 33:16; Isaiah 33:20; Isaiah 33:23; Isaiah 34 General Notes; Isaiah 34:5; Isaiah 34:6; Isaiah 34:9; Isaiah 34:11; Isaiah 34:17; Isaiah 35:2; Isaiah 36:6; Isaiah 37:4; Isaiah 37:23; Isaiah 37:27; Isaiah 37:29; Isaiah 37:31; Isaiah 38:3; Isaiah 38:10; Isaiah 38:17; Isaiah 40:4; Isaiah 40:6; Isaiah 40:7; Isaiah 40:8; Isaiah 40:11; Isaiah 40:12; Isaiah 40:21; Isaiah 40:22; Isaiah 40:24; Isaiah 40:26; Isaiah 40:27; Isaiah 40:28; Isaiah 40:31; Isaiah 41:2; Isaiah 41:3; Isaiah 41:5; Isaiah 41:9; Isaiah 41:10; Isaiah 41:13; Isaiah 41:14; Isaiah 41:15; Isaiah 41:16; Isaiah 41:17; Isaiah 41:25; Isaiah 41:29; Isaiah 42:3; Isaiah 42:5; Isaiah 42:6; Isaiah 42:7; Isaiah 42:13; Isaiah 42:15; Isaiah 42:16; Isaiah 42:17; Isaiah 42:20; Isaiah 42:25; Isaiah 43:2; Isaiah 43:6; Isaiah 43:8; Isaiah 43:17; Isaiah 43:25; Isaiah 44:2; Isaiah 44:3; Isaiah 44:4; Isaiah 44:8; Isaiah 44:9; Isaiah 44:18; Isaiah 44:20; Isaiah 44:24; Isaiah 44:26; Isaiah 44:28; Isaiah 45:1; Isaiah 45:2; Isaiah 45:8; Isaiah 45:9; Isaiah 45:10; Isaiah 45:13; Isaiah 45:16; Isaiah 45:22; Isaiah 46:1; Isaiah 46:2; Isaiah 46:3; Isaiah 46:4; Isaiah 46:11; Isaiah 46:12; Isaiah 47:1; Isaiah 47:3; Isaiah 47:5; Isaiah 47:6; Isaiah 47:7; Isaiah 47:8; Isaiah 47:10; Isaiah 47:11; Isaiah 47:12; Isaiah 47:14; Isaiah 48:1; Isaiah 48:8; Isaiah 48:10; Isaiah 48:13; Isaiah 48:17; Isaiah 48:18; Isaiah 48:19; Isaiah 48:20; Isaiah 49:2; Isaiah 49:5; Isaiah 49:6; Isaiah 49:8; Isaiah 49:9; Isaiah 49:11; Isaiah 49:16; Isaiah 49:17; Isaiah 49:18; Isaiah 49:19; Isaiah 49:20; Isaiah 49:21; Isaiah 49:22; Isaiah 49:23; Isaiah 49:25; Isaiah 49:26; Isaiah 50:1; Isaiah 50:2; Isaiah 50:3; Isaiah 50:5; Isaiah 50:6; Isaiah 50:9; Isaiah 50:10; Isaiah 50:11; Isaiah 51:1; Isaiah 51:4; Isaiah 51:5; Isaiah 51:6; Isaiah 51:7; Isaiah 51:8; Isaiah 51:9; Isaiah 51:13; Isaiah 51:15; Isaiah 51:16; Isaiah 51:17; Isaiah 51:20; Isaiah 51:21; Isaiah 51:22; Isaiah 51:23; Isaiah 52:1; Isaiah 52:3; Isaiah 52:5; Isaiah 52:11; Isaiah 52:12; Isaiah 52:15; Isaiah 53:2; Isaiah 53:4; Isaiah 53:6; Isaiah 53:10; Isaiah 53:11; Isaiah 54:1; Isaiah 54:2; Isaiah 54:4; Isaiah 54:5; Isaiah 54:6; Isaiah 54:8; Isaiah 54:10; Isaiah 54:11; Isaiah 54:17; Isaiah 55:1; Isaiah 55:2; Isaiah 55:3; Isaiah 55:9; Isaiah 55:13; Isaiah 56:3; Isaiah 56:9; Isaiah 56:10; Isaiah 56:11; Isaiah 57:3; Isaiah 57:10; Isaiah 57:14; Isaiah 58:8; Isaiah 58:10; Isaiah 58:11; Isaiah 58:14; Isaiah 59:4; Isaiah 59:5; Isaiah 59:6; Isaiah 59:7; Isaiah 59:8; Isaiah 59:12; Isaiah 59:17; Isaiah 60:1; Isaiah 60:2; Isaiah 60:5; Isaiah 60:16; Isaiah 60:20; Isaiah 60:21; Isaiah 61:3; Isaiah 61:10; Isaiah 61:11; Isaiah 62:4;

Isaiah 62:6; Isaiah 62:11; Isaiah 63:3; Isaiah 63:6; Isaiah 63:9; Isaiah 63:11; Isaiah 63:17; Isaiah 64:1; Isaiah 64:8;  
Isaiah 65:5; Isaiah 65:8; Isaiah 65:14; Isaiah 66:1; Isaiah 66:4; Isaiah 66:7; Isaiah 66:11; Isaiah 66:12; Isaiah 66:15



# Metonymy

## Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which an item (either physical or abstract) is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A metonym is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something that it is associated with.

This page answers the question: *What is a metonymy?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Figures of Speech* ([UTA PDF](#))

... and **the blood** of Jesus his Son cleanses us from every sin. (1 John 1:7b ULT)

The blood represents Christ's death.

And he took **the cup** in the same way after supper, saying, "**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you." (Luke 22:20 ULT)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

## Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not familiar with metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

## Examples From the Bible

The Lord God will give to him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)

A throne represents the authority of a king. "Throne" is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship," or "reign." This means that God would make him become a king who would follow King David.

Then immediately his **mouth** was opened (Luke 1:64a ULT)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)

The word "wrath" or "anger" is a metonym for "punishment." God was extremely angry with the people and, as a result, he would punish them.

## Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

- (1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
- (2) Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

And he took the cup in the same way after the supper, saying, “**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.” (Luke 22:20 ULT)

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “**The wine in this cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.”

This verse also contains a second metonym: The cup, (representing the wine it contains) also represents the new covenant made with the blood Christ shed for us.

(2) Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

The Lord God will give him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)

“The Lord God will give him **the kingly authority** of his father, David.” or:  
“The Lord God will **make him king** like his ancestor, King David.”

Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)

“Who warned you to flee from God’s coming **punishment**?”

To learn about some common metonymies, see [Biblical Imagery — Common Metonymies](#).

”

**Referenced in:** Isaiah 1:1; Isaiah 1:3; Isaiah 1:14; Isaiah 1:15; Isaiah 1:20; Isaiah 1:21; Isaiah 1:25; Isaiah 1:26; Isaiah 1:27; Isaiah 2:1; Isaiah 2:2; Isaiah 2:4; Isaiah 2:5; Isaiah 2:11; Isaiah 3:9; Isaiah 3:11; Isaiah 3:18; Isaiah 3:25; Isaiah 3:26; Isaiah 4:4; Isaiah 5:7; Isaiah 5:15; Isaiah 5:21; Isaiah 5:25; Isaiah 5:29; Isaiah 6:5; Isaiah 6:10; Isaiah 7:1; Isaiah 7:2; Isaiah 7:5; Isaiah 7:8; Isaiah 7:13; Isaiah 7:20; Isaiah 8:8; Isaiah 8:17; Isaiah 9:1; Isaiah 9:7; Isaiah 9:20; Isaiah 10:10; Isaiah 10:11; Isaiah 10:13; Isaiah 10:14; Isaiah 10:27; Isaiah 10:29; Isaiah 10:30; Isaiah 10:31; Isaiah 10:32; Isaiah 11:2; Isaiah 11:4; Isaiah 11:9; Isaiah 11:10; Isaiah 11:11; Isaiah 12:4; Isaiah 13:1; Isaiah 13:2; Isaiah 13:3; Isaiah 13:11; Isaiah 13:18; Isaiah 14:1; Isaiah 14:2; Isaiah 14:4; Isaiah 14:5; Isaiah 14:7; Isaiah 14:16; Isaiah 14:19; Isaiah 14:21; Isaiah 14:31; Isaiah 15:2; Isaiah 15:4; Isaiah 15:9; Isaiah 16:5; Isaiah 16:6; Isaiah 16:7; Isaiah 16:9; Isaiah 16:10; Isaiah 16:11; Isaiah 16:12; Isaiah 16:13; Isaiah 17:4; Isaiah 17:8; Isaiah 18:2; Isaiah 18:7; Isaiah 19:2; Isaiah 19:4; Isaiah 19:13; Isaiah 19:14; Isaiah 19:16; Isaiah 19:17; Isaiah 19:18; Isaiah 19:21; Isaiah 19:22; Isaiah 19:24; Isaiah 19:25; Isaiah 20:1; Isaiah 20:4; Isaiah 20:5; Isaiah 21:1; Isaiah 21:2; Isaiah 21:5; Isaiah 21:13; Isaiah 21:15; Isaiah 22:1; Isaiah 22:2; Isaiah 22:4; Isaiah 22:6; Isaiah 22:13; Isaiah 22:15; Isaiah 22:18; Isaiah 22:21; Isaiah 22:22; Isaiah 22:23; Isaiah 22:25; Isaiah 23:1; Isaiah 23:3; Isaiah 23:7; Isaiah 23:8; Isaiah 23:9; Isaiah 23:10; Isaiah 23:11; Isaiah 23:12; Isaiah 23:14; Isaiah 23:17; Isaiah 24:3; Isaiah 24:4; Isaiah 24:11; Isaiah 24:15; Isaiah 25:1; Isaiah 25:3; Isaiah 25:10; Isaiah 25:11; Isaiah 25:12; Isaiah 26:2; Isaiah 26:3; Isaiah 26:5; Isaiah 26:8; Isaiah 26:10; Isaiah 26:11; Isaiah 26:13; Isaiah 26:18; Isaiah 27:6; Isaiah 27:7; Isaiah 27:8; Isaiah 27:9; Isaiah 28:23; Isaiah 29:1; Isaiah 29:2; Isaiah 29:3; Isaiah 29:7; Isaiah 29:8; Isaiah 29:13; Isaiah 29:17; Isaiah 29:22; Isaiah 29:23; Isaiah 29:24; Isaiah 30:12; Isaiah 30:14; Isaiah 30:20; Isaiah 30:27; Isaiah 30:29; Isaiah 30:30; Isaiah 30:31; Isaiah 31:2; Isaiah 31:3; Isaiah 31:5; Isaiah 31:8; Isaiah 32:9; Isaiah 32:14; Isaiah 32:15; Isaiah 33:2; Isaiah 33:9; Isaiah 33:11; Isaiah 33:16; Isaiah 33:17; Isaiah 34:5; Isaiah 36:5; Isaiah 36:6; Isaiah 36:10; Isaiah 36:15; Isaiah 36:17; Isaiah 36:18; Isaiah 36:20; Isaiah 37:4; Isaiah 37:9; Isaiah 37:10; Isaiah 37:20; Isaiah 37:21; Isaiah 37:29; Isaiah 37:31; Isaiah 37:32; Isaiah 38:3; Isaiah 38:6; Isaiah 38:18; Isaiah 40:9; Isaiah 40:10; Isaiah 41:1; Isaiah 41:5; Isaiah 41:10; Isaiah 42:4; Isaiah 42:6; Isaiah 42:11; Isaiah 43:7; Isaiah 43:13; Isaiah 43:28; Isaiah 44:1; Isaiah 44:20; Isaiah 44:21; Isaiah 45:22; Isaiah 47:1; Isaiah 47:6; Isaiah 47:10; Isaiah 47:14; Isaiah 48:1; Isaiah 48:9; Isaiah 48:19; Isaiah 48:20; Isaiah 49:1; Isaiah 49:2; Isaiah 49:8; Isaiah 50:2; Isaiah 50:4; Isaiah 50:10; Isaiah 51:2; Isaiah 51:3; Isaiah 51:5; Isaiah 51:6; Isaiah 51:8; Isaiah 51:14; Isaiah 51:16; Isaiah 51:17; Isaiah 51:19; Isaiah 51:22; Isaiah 52:1; Isaiah 52:2; Isaiah 52:4; Isaiah 52:5; Isaiah 52:6; Isaiah 52:7; Isaiah 52:9; Isaiah 52:10; Isaiah 52:15; Isaiah 53:1; Isaiah 53:3; Isaiah 53:7; Isaiah 53:9; Isaiah 53:11; Isaiah 53:12; Isaiah 54:3; Isaiah 54:6; Isaiah 54:17; Isaiah 55:13; Isaiah 56:6; Isaiah 57:15; Isaiah 57:17; Isaiah 57:19;

Isaiah 58:4; Isaiah 58:6; Isaiah 59:1; Isaiah 59:3; Isaiah 59:6; Isaiah 59:16; Isaiah 59:19; Isaiah 60:9; Isaiah 60:13;  
Isaiah 60:18; Isaiah 61:2; Isaiah 61:3; Isaiah 62:8; Isaiah 62:10; Isaiah 63:4; Isaiah 63:5; Isaiah 63:12; Isaiah 63:14;  
Isaiah 64:7; Isaiah 66:6; Isaiah 66:24

## Nominal Adjectives

### Description

In some languages an adjective can be used to refer to a class of things that the adjective describes. When it does, it acts like a noun. For example, the word “rich” is an adjective. Here are two sentences that show that “rich” is an adjective.

**The rich man** had huge numbers of flocks and herds.  
(2 Samuel 12:2 ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes before the word “man” and describes “man.”

**He will not be rich;** his wealth will not last. (Job 15:29a ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes after the verb “be” and describes “He.”

Here is a sentence that shows that “rich” can also function as a noun.

**The rich** must not give more than the half shekel, and **the poor** must not give less. (Exodus 30:15b ULT)

In Exodus 30:15, the word “rich” acts as a noun in the phrase “the rich,” and it refers to rich people. The word “poor” also acts as a noun and refers to poor people.

This page answers the question: *How do I translate adjectives that act like nouns?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Parts of Speech* ([UTA PDF](#))

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Many times in the Bible adjectives are used as nouns to describe a group of people.
- Some languages do not use adjectives in this way.
- Readers of these languages may think that the text is talking about one particular person when it is really talking about the group of people whom the adjective describes.

### Examples From the Bible

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **the righteous**. (Psalms 125:3a ULT)

“The righteous” here are people who are righteous, not one particular righteous person.

Blessed are **the meek**. (Matthew 5:5a ULT)

“The meek” here are all people who are meek, not one particular meek person.

### Translation Strategies

If your language uses adjectives as nouns to refer to a class of people, consider using the adjectives in this way. If it would sound strange, or if the meaning would be unclear or wrong, here is another option:

- (1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **the righteous**. (Psalms 125:3a ULT)

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **righteous people**.

Blessed are **the meek**. (Matthew 5:5a ULT)

Blessed are **people who are meek**.

"

**Referenced in:** [Isaiah 3:14](#); [Isaiah 7:15](#); [Isaiah 7:16](#); [Isaiah 11:4](#); [Isaiah 13:11](#); [Isaiah 25:4](#); [Isaiah 26:19](#); [Isaiah 29:20](#); [Isaiah 32:4](#); [Isaiah 32:6](#); [Isaiah 32:7](#); [Isaiah 33:23](#); [Isaiah 34:3](#); [Isaiah 35:5](#); [Isaiah 35:8](#); [Isaiah 35:9](#); [Isaiah 35:10](#); [Isaiah 38:11](#); [Isaiah 51:11](#); [Isaiah 52:1](#); [Isaiah 55:7](#)

# Numbers

## Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words ("five") or as numerals ("5"). Some numbers are very large, such as "two hundred" (200), "twenty-two thousand" (22,000), or "one hundred million" (100,000,000). Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

This page answers the question: *How do I translate numbers?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns \(UTA PDF\)](#)

Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

Abram was **86** years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

That day about **3,000** of the people died. (Exodus 32:28b ULT)

Here the number three thousand (3,000) is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word "about" shows that it is not an exact number.

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

## Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

## Examples From the Bible

When Jared had lived **162** years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived **800** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived **962** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULT)

The numbers 162, 800, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

Our sister, may you be the mother of **thousands of ten thousands**. (Genesis 24:60b ULT)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

## Translation Strategies

- (1) Write numbers using numerals.
- (2) Write numbers using your language's words or the Gateway Language words for those numbers.
- (3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parentheses after them.
- (4) Combine words for large numbers.
- (5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

We will use the following verse in our examples:

Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **1,000,000** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. (1 Chronicles 22:14a ULT)

(1) Write numbers using numerals.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **1,000,000** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(2) Write numbers using your language's words or the Gateway Language words for those numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **one million** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house one **hundred thousand (100,000)** talents of gold, **one million (1,000,000)** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(4) Combine words for large numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **a thousand thousand** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **a great amount of gold (100,000 talents), ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents)**, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

## Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

## Consistency in the ULT and UST

The *unfoldingWord® Literal Text* (ULT) and the *unfoldingWord® Simplified Text* (UST) use words for the numbers one through ten and use numerals for all numbers above ten.

When Adam had lived **130** years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived **800** years.

He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived **930** years, and then he died.  
(Genesis 5:3-5 ULT)

Next we recommend you learn about:

*Ordinal Numbers* ([UTA PDF](#))

*Fractions* ([UTA PDF](#))

**Referenced in:** [Isaiah 3:3](#); [Isaiah 7:8](#); [Isaiah 7:23](#); [Isaiah 23:15](#); [Isaiah 23:17](#); [Isaiah 30:17](#); [Isaiah 36:8](#); [Isaiah 37:36](#); [Isaiah 38:5](#); [Isaiah 60:22](#); [Isaiah 65:20](#)



## Ordinal Numbers

### Description

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

And God has indeed appointed some in the church, **first** apostles, **second** prophets, **third** teachers, then miracles. (1 Corinthians 12:28a ULT)

This page answers the question: *What are ordinal numbers and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Numbers \(UTA PDF\)](#)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

### Ordinal Numbers in English

Most ordinal numbers in English simply have “-th” added to the end.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
4	four	fourth
10	ten	tenth
100	one hundred	one hundredth
1,000	one thousand	one thousandth

Some ordinal numbers in English do not follow that pattern.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
1	one	first
2	two	second
3	three	third
5	five	fifth
12	twelve	twelfth

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not have special numbers for showing the order of items in a list. There are different ways to deal with this.

### Examples From the Bible

The **first** lot went to Jehoiarib, the **second** to Jedaiah, the **third** to Harim, the **fourth** to Seorim ... the **twenty-third** to Delaiah, and the **twenty-fourth** to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

The people cast lots and one went to each of these people in the order given.

You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The **first** row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. The **second** row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. The **third** row

must have a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. The **fourth** row must have a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They must be mounted in gold settings. (Exodus 28:17-20 ULT)

This describes four rows of stones. The first row is probably the top row, and the fourth row is probably the bottom row.

## Translation Strategies

If your language has ordinal numbers and using them would give the right meaning, consider using them. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

- (1) Use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.
- (2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Tell the total number of items, and use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.

The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

There were **24** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **another** to Jedaiah, **another** to Harim ... **another** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.

There were **24** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **the next** to Jedaiah, **the next** to Harim ... **the next** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.

A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became **four** rivers. The name of **the first** is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of **the second** river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of **the third** river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. **The fourth** river is the Euphrates. (Genesis 2:10-14 ULT)

A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became **four** rivers. The name of **one** is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of **the next** river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of **the next** river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The **last** river is the Euphrates.

- (2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

The **first** lot went to Jehoiarib, the **second** to Jedaiah, the **third** to Harim, the **fourth** to Seorim ... the **twenty-third** to Delaiah, and the **twenty-fourth** to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

They cast **24** lots. The lots went to Jerhoiarib, Jedaiah, Harim, Seorim ... Delaiah, and Maaziah.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Fractions \(UTA PDF\)](#)

Referenced in: [Isaiah 19:24](#); [Isaiah 36:1](#); [Isaiah 37:30](#)

## Parables

A parable is a short story that teaches something(s) that is true, and delivers the lesson in a way that is easy to understand and hard to forget.

## Description

A parable is a short story that is told to teach something(s) that is true. Though the events in a parable could happen, they did not actually happen. They are told only to teach the lesson(s) that the listener is meant to learn. Parables rarely contain the names of specific people. (This may help you identify what is a parable and what is an account of a real event.) Parables often use figures of speech such as [simile](#) and [metaphor](#).

This page answers the question: *What is a parable?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Figures of Speech* ([UTA PDF](#))

Then he also told them a parable. "A blind man is not able to guide a blind man, is he? Would not both fall into a pit?" (Luke 6:39 ULT)

This parable teaches that if a person does not have spiritual understanding, he cannot help someone else to understand spiritual things.

## Examples From the Bible

Neither do people light a lamp and put it under a basket but, rather, on the lampstand, and it shines for everyone in the house. Let your light shine before people in such a way that they see your good deeds and praise your Father who is in heaven. (Matthew 5:15-16 ULT)

This parable teaches us not to hide the way we live for God from other people.

Then Jesus presented another parable to them. He said, "The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and sowed in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all other seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches." (Matthew 13:31-32 ULT)

This parable teaches that the kingdom of God may seem small at first, but it will grow and spread throughout the world.

## Translation Strategies

- (1) If a parable is hard to understand because it has unknown objects in it, you can replace the unknown objects with objects that people in your culture know. However, be careful to keep the lesson the same.
- (2) If the teaching of the parable is unclear, consider telling a little about what it teaches in the introduction, such as "Jesus told this story about being generous."

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If a parable is hard to understand because it has unknown objects in it, you can replace the unknown objects with objects that people in your culture know. However, be careful to keep the lesson the same.

Jesus also said to them, "The lamp is not brought in order to put it under a basket, or under the bed, is it? Is it not so that it might be put on the **lampstand**?" (Mark 4:21 ULT)

If people do not know what a lampstand is, you could substitute something else that people put a light on so it can give light to the house.

Jesus also said to them, "The lamp is not brought in order to put it under a basket, or under the bed, is it? Is it not so that it might be put on **a high shelf?**"

Then Jesus presented another parable to them. He said, "The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and **sowed** in his field. It is indeed the smallest of all the seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants. It becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches." (Matthew 13:31-32 ULT)

To sow seeds means to toss them so that they scatter on the ground. If people are not familiar with sowing, you can substitute planting.

Then Jesus presented another parable to them. He said, "The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and **planted** in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all the seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants. It becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches."

(2) If the teaching of the parable is unclear, consider telling a little about what it teaches in the introduction, such as "Jesus told this story about being generous."

**Jesus also said to them,** "The lamp is not brought in order to put it under a basket, or under the bed, is it? Is it not so that it might be put on the lampstand?" (Mark 4:21 ULT)

**Jesus told them a parable about why they should witness openly.** Jesus also said to them, "The lamp is not brought in order to put it under a basket, or under the bed, is it? Is it not so that it might be put on the lampstand?" (Mark 4:21 ULT)

**Then Jesus presented another parable to them.** He said, "The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and sowed in his field. It is indeed the smallest of all the seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants. It becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches." (Matthew 13:31-32 ULT)

**Then Jesus presented another parable to them about how the kingdom of God grows.** He said, "The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and sowed in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all the seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants. It becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches."

"

**Referenced in:** [Isaiah 5:1](#); [Isaiah 5:3](#); [Isaiah 5:7](#); [Isaiah 18:6](#); [Isaiah 28:23](#)

# Parallelism

## Description

Parallelism is a poetic device in which two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. The following are some of the different kinds of parallelism.

- The second clause or phrase means the same as the first. This is called synonymous parallelism.
- The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
- The second completes what is said in the first.
- The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

This page answers the question: *What is parallelism?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Figures of Speech* ([UTA PDF](#))

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

This article will only discuss synonymous parallelism, the kind in which the two parallel phrases mean the same thing, because that is the kind that presents a problem for translation. Note that we use the term "synonymous parallelism" for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term "[doublet](#)" for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

In the poetry of the original languages, synonymous parallelism has several effects:

- It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
- It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
- It makes the language more beautiful and raises it above the ordinary way of speaking.

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or, since it is in the Bible, they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it would be confusing, rather than beautiful. They would not understand that the repetition of the idea in different words serves to emphasize the idea.

## Examples From the Bible

Your word is a lamp to my feet  
and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULT)

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God's word teaches people how to live. That is the single idea. The words "lamp" and "light" are similar in meaning because they refer to light. The words "my feet" and "my path" are related because they refer to a person walking. Walking is a metaphor for living.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands;  
you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything. "To rule over" is the same idea as putting things "under his feet," and "the works of your [God's] hands" is the same idea as "all things."

Yahweh sees everything a person does  
and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

The first phrase and the second phrase mean the same thing. There are three ideas that are the same between these two phrases. "Sees" corresponds to "watches," "everything...does" corresponds to "all the paths...takes," and "a person" corresponds to "he."

Praise Yahweh, all you nations;  
exalt him, all you peoples! (Psalm 117:1 ULT)

Both parts of this verse tell people everywhere to praise Yahweh. The words 'Praise' and 'exalt' mean the same thing. The words 'Yahweh' and 'him' refer to the same person. The terms 'all you nations' and 'all you peoples' refer to the same people.

For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people,  
and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2b ULT)

The two parts of this verse say that Yahweh has a serious disagreement with his people, Israel. These are not two different disagreements or two different groups of people.

## Translation Strategies

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

- (1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
- (2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and include words that emphasize the truth such as "truly" or "certainly."
- (3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and use words like "very," "completely," or "all."

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.

Until now you have dealt deceitfully with me and you have spoken lies to me. (Judges 16:13, ULT)

Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.

Until now you have deceived me with your lies.  
Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

The phrase "all the paths he takes" is a metaphor for "all he does."

Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does.  
For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2 ULT)

This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:

For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel.

- (2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and include words that emphasize the truth such as "truly" or "certainly."

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

Yahweh truly sees everything a person does.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands; you have put all things under his feet  
(Psalm 8:6 ULT)

You have certainly made him to rule over everything that you have  
created.

(3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

Until now you have dealt deceitfully with me and you have spoken lies to me. (Judges 16:13, ULT)

All you have done is lie to me.

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

Yahweh sees absolutely everything that a person does.

Next we recommend you learn about:

*Personification* ([UTA PDF](#))

**Referenced in:** [Isaiah 1:2](#); [Isaiah 1:4](#); [Isaiah 1:5](#); [Isaiah 1:7](#); [Isaiah 1:9](#); [Isaiah 1:10](#); [Isaiah 1:12](#); [Isaiah 1:14](#); [Isaiah 1:16](#); [Isaiah 1:21](#); [Isaiah 1:23](#); [Isaiah 1:24](#); [Isaiah 1:26](#); [Isaiah 1:27](#); [Isaiah 1:29](#); [Isaiah 1:31](#); [Isaiah 2:1](#); [Isaiah 2:3](#); [Isaiah 2:4](#); [Isaiah 2:5](#); [Isaiah 2:7](#); [Isaiah 2:8](#); [Isaiah 2:9](#); [Isaiah 2:12](#); [Isaiah 3:4](#); [Isaiah 4:3](#); [Isaiah 5:15](#); [Isaiah 5:18](#); [Isaiah 5:24](#); [Isaiah 5:26](#); [Isaiah 6:7](#); [Isaiah 8:9](#); [Isaiah 8:16](#); [Isaiah 9:6](#); [Isaiah 10:1](#); [Isaiah 10:2](#); [Isaiah 10:5](#); [Isaiah 10:15](#); [Isaiah 11:1](#); [Isaiah 11:4](#); [Isaiah 13:12](#); [Isaiah 13:15](#); [Isaiah 13:22](#); [Isaiah 14:24](#); [Isaiah 14:25](#); [Isaiah 14:29](#); [Isaiah 17:13](#); [Isaiah 18:3](#); [Isaiah 19:5](#); [Isaiah 19:11](#); [Isaiah 21:11](#); [Isaiah 22:16](#); [Isaiah 24:4](#); [Isaiah 24:11](#); [Isaiah 24:16](#); [Isaiah 26:6](#); [Isaiah 26:7](#); [Isaiah 26:15](#); [Isaiah 27:11](#); [Isaiah 28:7](#); [Isaiah 28:15](#); [Isaiah 28:23](#); [Isaiah 28:26](#); [Isaiah 29:14](#); [Isaiah 29:19](#); [Isaiah 31:3](#); [Isaiah 31:4](#); [Isaiah 31:9](#); [Isaiah 32:17](#); [Isaiah 33:1](#); [Isaiah 33:8](#); [Isaiah 34:1](#); [Isaiah 36:17](#); [Isaiah 37:32](#); [Isaiah 38:14](#); [Isaiah 38:19](#); [Isaiah 39:4](#); [Isaiah 40:3](#); [Isaiah 40:10](#); [Isaiah 40:22](#); [Isaiah 40:24](#); [Isaiah 40:29](#); [Isaiah 40:31](#); [Isaiah 41:1](#); [Isaiah 41:9](#); [Isaiah 41:16](#); [Isaiah 42:5](#); [Isaiah 42:7](#); [Isaiah 42:14](#); [Isaiah 42:16](#); [Isaiah 42:22](#); [Isaiah 42:24](#); [Isaiah 43:1](#); [Isaiah 43:2](#); [Isaiah 43:3](#); [Isaiah 43:4](#); [Isaiah 43:18](#); [Isaiah 43:24](#); [Isaiah 43:28](#); [Isaiah 44:15](#); [Isaiah 44:22](#); [Isaiah 44:26](#); [Isaiah 45:16](#); [Isaiah 46:10](#); [Isaiah 46:11](#); [Isaiah 47:1](#); [Isaiah 48:5](#); [Isaiah 48:9](#); [Isaiah 48:14](#); [Isaiah 48:19](#); [Isaiah 49:8](#); [Isaiah 49:22](#); [Isaiah 50:2](#); [Isaiah 50:5](#); [Isaiah 50:10](#); [Isaiah 51:3](#); [Isaiah 51:4](#); [Isaiah 51:9](#); [Isaiah 51:18](#); [Isaiah 53:5](#); [Isaiah 53:12](#); [Isaiah 54:1](#); [Isaiah 57:13](#); [Isaiah 57:15](#); [Isaiah 58:1](#); [Isaiah 59:9](#); [Isaiah 60:2](#); [Isaiah 60:5](#); [Isaiah 60:20](#); [Isaiah 60:21](#); [Isaiah 61:1](#); [Isaiah 61:9](#); [Isaiah 61:11](#); [Isaiah 62:1](#); [Isaiah 62:3](#); [Isaiah 62:4](#); [Isaiah 62:8](#); [Isaiah 62:9](#); [Isaiah 62:11](#); [Isaiah 65:12](#); [Isaiah 65:13](#); [Isaiah 65:14](#); [Isaiah 65:17](#); [Isaiah 66:3](#); [Isaiah 66:24](#)

# Personification

## Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1a ULT)

Or sin:

Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT)

People also use personification because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things such as wealth as if they were relationships between people.

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24b ULT)

In each case, the purpose of the personification is to highlight a certain characteristic of the non-human thing. As in metaphor, the reader needs to think of the way that the thing is like a certain kind of person.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

## Examples From the Bible

You cannot **serve** God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24b ULT)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

Does not Wisdom **call** out? Does not Understanding **raise her voice**? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they were woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

## Translation Strategies

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

- (1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.
- (2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.
- (3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

This page answers the question: *What is personification?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Figures of Speech* ([UTA PDF](#))



## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.

**Sin crouches** at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT) — God speaks of sin as if it were a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.

**Sin** is at your door, **waiting to attack you**.

(2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as “like” or “as” to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.

Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT) — This can be translated with the word “as.”

Sin is crouching at the door, **just as a wild animal does as it waits to attack a person..**

(3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Even the **winds and the sea obey him**. (Matthew 8:27b ULT) — The men speak of the “wind and the sea” as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus, just as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.

He even **controls the winds and the sea**.

**NOTE:** We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics) because the translation strategies for them are the same.

Next we recommend you learn about:

*Apostrophe* ([UTA PDF](#))

*Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns* ([UTA PDF](#))

**Referenced in:** [Isaiah 3:9](#); [Isaiah 3:26](#); [Isaiah 10:24](#); [Isaiah 12:1](#); [Isaiah 13:8](#); [Isaiah 14:8](#); [Isaiah 14:9](#); [Isaiah 14:23](#); [Isaiah 19:1](#); [Isaiah 19:3](#); [Isaiah 19:14](#); [Isaiah 23:4](#); [Isaiah 24:23](#); [Isaiah 26:21](#); [Isaiah 30:22](#); [Isaiah 32:13](#); [Isaiah 32:16](#); [Isaiah 33:9](#); [Isaiah 33:14](#); [Isaiah 34:1](#); [Isaiah 34:7](#); [Isaiah 35:1](#); [Isaiah 35:2](#); [Isaiah 35:7](#); [Isaiah 35:10](#); [Isaiah 40:2](#); [Isaiah 40:9](#); [Isaiah 43:6](#); [Isaiah 43:20](#); [Isaiah 46:13](#); [Isaiah 49:14](#); [Isaiah 51:3](#); [Isaiah 51:9](#); [Isaiah 51:11](#); [Isaiah 52:9](#); [Isaiah 55:11](#); [Isaiah 55:12](#); [Isaiah 59:2](#); [Isaiah 59:12](#); [Isaiah 59:14](#); [Isaiah 59:15](#); [Isaiah 59:16](#); [Isaiah 60:17](#); [Isaiah 64:9](#)

# Possession

## Description

In English, the grammatical form that commonly indicates possession is also used to indicate a variety of relationships between people and objects or people and other people. In English, that grammatical relationship is shown by using the word “**of**,” by using **an apostrophe and the letter “s”**, or by using a **possessive pronoun**. The following examples are different ways to indicate that my grandfather owns a house.

- the house **of** my grandfather
- my grandfather **'s** house
- **his** house

This page answers the question: *What is possession and how can I translate phrases that show it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Parts of Speech* ([UTA PDF](#))

*Sentence Structure* ([UTA PDF](#))

Possession is used in Hebrew, Greek, and English for a variety of situations. Here are a few common situations that it is used for.

- Ownership — Someone owns something.
  - The clothes of me - my clothes — The clothes that I own
- Social Relationship — Someone has some kind of social relationship with another.
  - The mother of John — John's mother - the woman who gave birth to John, or the woman who cared for John
  - A teacher of Israel - Israel's teacher — a person who teaches Israel
- Association — A particular thing is associated with a particular person, place, or thing.
  - The sickness of David - David's sickness — the sickness that David is experiencing
  - the fear of the Lord — the fear that is appropriate for a human being to have when relating to the Lord
- Contents — Something has something in it.
  - a bag of clothes — a bag that has clothes in it, or a bag that is full of clothes
- Part and whole: One thing is part of another.
  - my head — the head that is part of my body
  - the roof of a house — the roof that is part of a house

In some languages there is a special form of possession, termed **inalienable possession**. This form of possession is used for things that cannot be removed from you, as opposed to things you could lose. In the examples above, *my head* and *my mother* are examples of inalienable possession (at least in some languages), while *my clothes* or *my teacher* would be alienably possessed. What may be considered alienable vs. inalienable may differ by language. In languages that mark the difference, the expression of inalienable possession and alienable possession will be different.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- You (the translator) need to understand the relationship between two ideas represented by the two nouns when one is in the grammatical relationship of possessing the other.
- Some languages do not use grammatical possession for all of the situations that your source text Bible might use it for.

## Examples From the Bible

**Ownership** — In the example below, the son owned the money.

The younger son ... wasted his wealth by living recklessly. (Luke 15:13b)

**Social Relationship** — In the example below, the disciples were people who learned from John.

Then **the disciples of John** came to him. (Matthew 9:14a ULT)

**Association** — In the example below, the gospel is the message associated with Paul because he preaches it.

Remember Jesus Christ, raised from the dead, from the seed of David, according to **my gospel**,  
(2 Timothy 2:8 ULT)

**Material** — In the example below, the material used for making the crowns was gold.

On their heads were something like **crowns of gold**. (Revelation 9:7b)

**Contents** — In the example below, the cup has water in it.

For whoever gives you **a cup of water** to drink ... will not lose his reward. (Mark 9:41 ULT)

**Part of a whole** — In the example below, the door was a part of the palace.

But Uriah slept at **the door of the king's palace**. (2 Samuel 11:9a ULT)

**Part of a group** — In the example below, “us” refers to the whole group and “each one” refers to the individual members.

Now to **each one of us** grace has been given according to the measure of the gift of Christ.  
(Ephesians 4:7 ULT)

## Events and Possession

Sometimes one or both of the nouns is an abstract noun that refers to an event or action. In the examples below, the abstract nouns are in **bold** print. These are just some of the relationships that are possible between two nouns when one of them refers to an event.

**Subject** — Sometimes the word after “of” tells who would do the action named by the first noun. In the example below, **John baptized people**.

The **baptism of John**, was it from heaven or from men? Answer me. (Mark 11:30)

In the example below, **Christ loves us**.

Who will separate us from the **love of Christ**? (Romans 8:35)

**Object** — Sometimes the word after “of” tells who or what something would happen to. In the example below, **people love money**.

For the **love of money** is a root of all kinds of evil. (1 Timothy 6:10a ULT)

**Instrument** — Sometimes the word after “of” tells how something would happen. In the example below, God would **punish people by sending enemies to attack them with swords**.

Then be afraid of the sword, because wrath brings **the punishment of the sword**. (Job 19:29a ULT)

**Representation** — In the example below, John was baptizing people who were repenting of their sins. They were being baptized to show that they were repenting. Their **baptism represented their repentance**.

John came, baptizing in the wilderness and preaching **a baptism of repentance** for the forgiveness of sins. (Mark 1:4 ULT)

## Strategies for learning what the relationship is between the two nouns

- (1) Read the surrounding verses to see if they help you to understand the relationship between the two nouns.
- (2) Read the verse in the UST. Sometimes it shows the relationship clearly.
- (3) See what the notes say about it.

## Translation Strategies

If possession would be a natural way to show a particular relationship between two nouns, consider using it. If it would be strange or hard to understand, consider these.

- (1) Use an adjective to show that one noun describes the other.
- (2) Use a verb to show how the two are related.
- (3) If one of the nouns refers to an event, translate it as a verb.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use an adjective to show that one noun describes the other.

On their heads were something like **crowns of gold**. (Revelation 9:7b)

"On their heads were **gold crowns**"

- (2) Use a verb to show how the two are related.

Whoever gives you **a cup of water** to drink ... will not lose his reward. (Mark 9:41 ULT)

Whoever gives you a **cup that has water in it** to drink ... will not lose his reward.

Wealth is worthless on **the day of wrath**. (Proverbs 11:4a ULT)

Wealth is worthless on **the day when God shows his wrath**. or: Wealth is worthless on the **day when God punishes people because of his wrath**.

- (3) If one of the nouns refers to an event, translate it as a verb. (In the example below, there are two possession relationships, "punishment of Yahweh" and "your God.")

Notice that I am not speaking to your children, who have not known or seen **the punishment of Yahweh your God**. (Deuteronomy 11:2a ULT)

Notice that I am not speaking to your children who have not known or seen **how Yahweh, the God whom you worship, punished the people of Egypt**.

You will only observe and see the **punishment of the wicked**. (Psalms 91:8 ULT)

You will only observe and see **how Yahweh punishes the wicked**.

You will receive **the gift of the Holy Spirit**. (Acts 2:38b ULT)

You will receive the **Holy Spirit, whom God will give to you**.

"

Referenced in: [Isaiah 23:3](#); [Isaiah 33:2](#); [Isaiah 33:20](#); [Isaiah 34:16](#); [Isaiah 36:17](#)

## Predictive Past

### Description

The predictive past is a figure of speech that uses the past tense to refer to things that will happen in the future. This is sometimes done in prophecy to show that the event will certainly happen. It is also called the prophetic perfect.

Therefore my people have gone into captivity for lack of understanding; their honored leaders go hungry, and their common people have nothing to drink. (Isaiah 5:13 ULT)

In the example above, the people of Israel had not yet gone into captivity, but God spoke of their going into captivity as if it had already happened because he had decided that they certainly would go into captivity.

This page answers the question: *What is the predictive past?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Figures of Speech* ([UTA PDF](#))

*Verbs* ([UTA PDF](#))

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue:

Readers who are not aware of the past tense being used in prophecy to refer to future events may find it confusing.

### Examples From the Bible

Now Jericho was tightly closed because of the sons of Israel. No one went out and no one came in. Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I have delivered Jericho, and its king, and its powerful soldiers into your hand." (Joshua 6:1-2 ULT)

For to us a child has been born, to us a son has been given; and the rule will be on his shoulder. (Isaiah 9:6a ULT)

In the examples above, God spoke of things that would happen in the future as if they had already happened.

But even Enoch, the seventh from Adam, prophesied about them, saying, "Look! The Lord came with thousands and thousands of his holy ones." (Jude 1:14 ULT)

Enoch was speaking of something that would happen in the future, but he used the past tense when he said "the Lord came."

### Translation Strategies

If the past tense would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

- (1) Use the future tense to refer to future events.
- (2) If it refers to something in the immediate future, use a form that would show that.
- (3) Some languages may use the present tense to show that something will happen very soon.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the future tense to refer to future events.

For to us a child **has been born**, to us a son **has been given**. (Isaiah 9:6a ULT)

For to us a child **will be born**, to us a son **will be given**.

(2) If it refers to something that would happen very soon, use a form that shows that.

Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I have delivered Jericho, and its king, and its powerful soldiers into your hand." (Joshua 6:2 ULT)

Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I **am about to deliver** over to you Jericho, its king, and its powerful soldiers."

(3) Some languages may use the present tense to show that something will happen very soon.

Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I have delivered Jericho, and its king, and its powerful soldiers into your hand." (Joshua 6:2 ULT)

Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I **am delivering** over to you Jericho, its king, and its powerful soldiers."

"

**Referenced in:** [Isaiah 5:13](#); [Isaiah 5:14](#); [Isaiah 5:15](#); [Isaiah 5:25](#); [Isaiah 10:28](#); [Isaiah 10:29](#); [Isaiah 15:1](#); [Isaiah 24:15](#); [Isaiah 27:10](#); [Isaiah 34:2](#); [Isaiah 54:1](#)

# Pronouns

## Description

Pronouns are words that people might use instead of using a noun when referring to someone or something. Some examples are "I," "you," "he," "it," "this," "that," "himself," "someone," and others. The personal pronoun is the most common type of pronoun.

This page answers the question: *What are pronouns, and what kinds of pronouns are in some languages?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Parts of Speech* ([UTA PDF](#))

## Personal Pronouns

Personal pronouns refer to people or things and show whether the speaker is referring to himself, the person he is speaking to, or someone or something else. The following are kinds of information that personal pronouns may provide. Other types of pronouns may give some of this information, as well.

### Person

- First Person — The speaker and possibly others (I, me, we, us)
  - [Exclusive and Inclusive "We"](#)
- Second Person — The person or people that the speaker is talking to and possibly others (you)
  - [Forms of You](#)
- Third Person — Someone or something other than the speaker and those he is talking to (he, she, it, they)

### Number

- Singular — one (I, you, he, she, it)
- Plural — more than one (we, you, they)
  - [Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups](#)
- Dual — two (Some languages have pronouns specifically for two people or two things.)

### Gender

- Masculine — he
- Feminine — she
- Neuter — it

## Relationship to other words in the sentence

- Subject of the verb: I, you, he, she, it, we, they
- Object of the verb or preposition: me, you, him, her, it, us, them
- Possessor with a noun: my, your, his, her, its, our, their
- Possessor without a noun: mine, yours, his, hers, its, ours, theirs

## Other Types of pronouns

**Reflexive Pronouns** refer to another noun or pronoun in the same sentence: myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves.

- John saw **himself** in the mirror. The word "himself" refers to John.

**Interrogative Pronouns** are used to make a question that needs more than just a yes or no for an answer: what, which, who, whom, whose.

- **Who** built the house?

**Relative Pronouns** mark a relative clause. The relative pronouns, who, whom, whose, which and that give more information about a noun in the main part of the sentence. Sometimes, the relative adverbs when and where can also be used as relative pronouns.

- I saw the house **that John built**. The clause “that John built” tells which house I saw.
- I saw the man **who built the house**. The clause “who built the house” tells which man I saw.

**Demonstrative Pronouns** are used to draw attention to someone or something and to show distance from the speaker or something else. The demonstrative pronouns are: this, these, that, and those.

- Have you seen **this** here?
- Who is **that** over there?

**Indefinite pronouns** are used when no particular noun is being referred to. The indefinite pronouns are: any, anyone, someone, anything, something, and some. Sometimes a personal pronoun is used in a generic way to do this: you, they, he or it.

- He does not want to talk to **anyone**.
- **Someone** fixed it, but I do not know who.
- **They** say that **you** should not wake a sleeping dog.

In the last example, “they” and “you” just refer to people in general.

”

**Referenced in:** [Isaiah 2:6](#); [Isaiah 8:7](#)



# Proverbs

## Description

Proverbs are short sayings that give wise advice or teach something that is generally true about life. People enjoy proverbs because they give a lot of wisdom in few words. Proverbs in the Bible often use metaphor and parallelism. Proverbs should not be understood as absolute and unchangeable laws. Rather, proverbs offer general advice to a person about how to live his life.

This page answers the question: *What are proverbs, and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Metaphor* ([UTA PDF](#))

*Parallelism* ([UTA PDF](#))

*Writing Styles* ([UTA PDF](#))

Hatred stirs up conflicts, but love covers over all offenses. (Proverbs 10:12 ULT)

Here is another example from the book of Proverbs.

Look at the ant, you lazy person, consider her ways, and be wise. It has no commander, officer, or ruler, yet it prepares its food in the summer, and during the harvest it stores up what it will eat. (Proverbs 6:6-8 ULT)

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Each language has its own ways of saying proverbs. There are many proverbs in the Bible. They need to be translated in the way that people say proverbs in your language so that people recognize them as proverbs and understand what they teach.

## Examples From the Bible

A good name is to be chosen over great riches, and favor is better than silver and gold. (Proverbs 22:1 ULT)

This means that it is better to be a good person and to have a good reputation than it is to have a lot of money.

Like vinegar on the teeth and smoke in the eyes, so is the sluggard to those who send him. (Proverbs 10:26 ULT)

This means that a lazy person is very annoying to those who send him to do something.

The way of Yahweh protects those who have integrity, but it is destruction for the wicked. (Proverbs 10:29 ULT)

This means that Yahweh protects people who do what is right, but he destroys those who are wicked.

## Translation Strategies

If translating a proverb literally would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing that. If not, here are some options:

- (1) Find out how people say proverbs in your language, and use one of those ways.
- (2) If certain objects in the proverb are not known to many people in your language group, consider replacing them with objects that people know and that function in the same way in your language.
- (3) Substitute a proverb in your language that has the same teaching as the proverb in the Bible.
- (4) Give the same teaching but not in a form of a proverb.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Find out how people say proverbs in your language, and use one of those ways.

A good name is to be chosen over great riches,  
and favor is better than silver and gold. (Proverbs 22:1 ULT)

Here are some ideas for ways that people might say a proverb in their language.

It is better to have a good name than to have great riches,  
and to be favored by people than to have silver and gold.

Wise people choose a good name over great riches,  
and favor over silver and gold.

Try to have a good reputation rather than great riches.

Will riches really help you?  
I would rather have a good reputation.

(2) If certain objects in the proverb are not known to many people in your language group, consider replacing them with objects that people know and that function in the same way in your language.

Like **snow in summer** or rain in harvest,  
so a fool does not deserve honor. (Proverbs 26:1 ULT)

It is not natural for **a cold wind to blow in the hot season** or for it to rain  
in the harvest season;  
And it is not natural to honor a foolish person.

(3) Substitute a proverb in your language that has the same teaching as the proverb in the Bible.

Do not boast about tomorrow,  
for you do not know what a day may bring. (Proverbs 27:1a ULT)

Do not count your chickens before they hatch.

(4) Give the same teaching but not in a form of a proverb.

There is a generation that curses their father  
and does not bless their mother.  
There is a generation that is pure in their own eyes,  
and yet they are not washed of their filth. (Proverbs 30:11-12 ULT)

People who do not respect their parents think that they are righteous,  
and they do not turn away from their sin.

"

Referenced in: [Isaiah 28:20](#)

## Rhetorical Question

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

This page answers the question: *What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Figures of Speech* ([UTA PDF](#))

*Sentence Types* ([UTA PDF](#))

## Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all. Or, if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

But those who stood by said, “**Are you insulting the high priest of God?**”(Acts 23:4 ULT)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking if he was insulting God's high priest. Rather, they used this question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. These rhetorical questions might be used for the purposes: of expressing attitudes or feelings, rebuking people, teaching something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, or introducing something they want to talk about.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are different or more limited than in the Bible.
- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

## Examples From the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7b ULT)

Jezebel used the question above **to remind** King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order **to rebuke** him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that, since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

**Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

God used the question above **to remind** his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then **rebuked** his people for forgetting him who is so much greater than those things.

But you, why do you judge your brother? And you also, why do you despise your brother? (Romans 14:10 ULT)

Paul used these rhetorical questions **to rebuke** the Romans for doing what they should not do.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11a ULT)

Job used the question above **to show deep emotion**. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

And how has this happened to me that the mother of my Lord would come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULT)

Elizabeth used the question above **to show how surprised and happy she was** that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Jesus used the question above **to remind** the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on **to teach them** about God with his next rhetorical question:

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father who is in heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULT)

Jesus used this question **to teach** the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

**What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?** It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden ... (Luke 13:18b-19a ULT)

Jesus used the question above **to introduce what he was going to talk about**. He was about to compare the kingdom of God to something. In this case, he compared the kingdom of God to a mustard seed.

## Translation Strategies

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, "Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?" If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, did the person who asked it expect to receive an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you understand the purpose for the rhetorical question. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to express surprise or other emotion? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Add the answer after the question.
- (2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
- (3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
- (4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Add the answer after the question.

**Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? **Of course not!** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? **None of you would do that!**

(2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

**What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?** It is like a mustard seed. (Luke 13:18-19a ULT)

**This is what the kingdom of God is like.** It is like a mustard seed ...

**Are you insulting the high priest of God?** (Acts 23:4b ULT) (Acts 23:4 ULT)

**You should not insult God's high priest!**

**Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?** (Job 3:11a ULT)

**I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!**

**And how has this happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?** (Luke 1:43 ULT)

**How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!**

(3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

**Do you not still rule** the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7b ULT)

You still rule the kingdom of Israel, **do you not?**

(4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, **would you give him a stone?**

**Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

**What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!

But you, **why do you judge your brother?** And you also, **why do you despise your brother?** (Romans 14:10 ULT)

Do you think it is good to judge your brother? Do you think it is good to despise your brother?

"

**Referenced in:** Isaiah 1 General Notes; Isaiah 1:5; Isaiah 1:11; Isaiah 1:12; Isaiah 2:22; Isaiah 3:15; Isaiah 5:4; Isaiah 7:13; Isaiah 8:19; Isaiah 10:3; Isaiah 10:8; Isaiah 10:9; Isaiah 10:11; Isaiah 10:15; Isaiah 14:16; Isaiah 14:27; Isaiah 14:32; Isaiah 19:11; Isaiah 19:12; Isaiah 20:6; Isaiah 22:1; Isaiah 22:16; Isaiah 23:7; Isaiah 23:8; Isaiah 27:7; Isaiah 28:9; Isaiah 28:24; Isaiah 28:25; Isaiah 29:15; Isaiah 29:16; Isaiah 33:14; Isaiah 33:18; Isaiah 36 General Notes; Isaiah 36:4; Isaiah 36:5; Isaiah 36:7; Isaiah 36:9; Isaiah 36:10; Isaiah 36:12; Isaiah 36:18; Isaiah 36:19; Isaiah 36:20; Isaiah 37:11; Isaiah 37:12; Isaiah 37:13; Isaiah 37:23; Isaiah 37:26; Isaiah 38:15; Isaiah 40 General Notes; Isaiah 40:12; Isaiah 40:13; Isaiah 40:14; Isaiah 40:18; Isaiah 40:21; Isaiah 40:25; Isaiah 40:26; Isaiah 40:27; Isaiah 40:28; Isaiah 41:2; Isaiah 41:4; Isaiah 41:26; Isaiah 42:19; Isaiah 42:24; Isaiah 43:13; Isaiah 43:19; Isaiah 44:7; Isaiah 44:8; Isaiah 44:10; Isaiah 44:19; Isaiah 45:9; Isaiah 45:10; Isaiah 45:11; Isaiah 45:21; Isaiah 46:5; Isaiah 48:6; Isaiah 48:11; Isaiah 48:14; Isaiah 49:15; Isaiah 49:21; Isaiah 49:24; Isaiah 50 General Notes; Isaiah 50:1; Isaiah 50:8; Isaiah 50:9; Isaiah 50:10; Isaiah 51 General Notes; Isaiah 51:9; Isaiah 51:10; Isaiah 51:12; Isaiah 51:13; Isaiah 51:19; Isaiah 52:5; Isaiah 53:1; Isaiah 53:8; Isaiah 55:2; Isaiah 57:4; Isaiah 57:6; Isaiah 57:11; Isaiah 58:3; Isaiah 58:5; Isaiah 58:6; Isaiah 58:7; Isaiah 60:8; Isaiah 63:1; Isaiah 63:2; Isaiah 63:15; Isaiah 63:17; Isaiah 64:12; Isaiah 66:1; Isaiah 66:8; Isaiah 66:9

# Simile

## Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. The simile focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as,” or “than.”

This page answers the question: *What is a simile?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Figures of Speech* ([UTA PDF](#))

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were troubled and discouraged, **like sheep not having a shepherd**. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, so be as wise **as the serpents** and harmless **as the doves**. (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep; Jesus' enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12a ULT)

God's word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person's flesh. God's word is very effective in showing what is in a person's heart and thoughts.

## Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people's attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with both of the items being compared.

## Examples From the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, **as a good soldier** of Christ Jesus. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULT)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

Just as the lightning flashing from a place under the sky shines to another place under the sky, so will the Son of Man be. (Luke 17:24b ULT)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But in context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lighting flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

## Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

(1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience. (2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote. (3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**. (Matthew 10:16a ULT) — This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.

See, I send **you out among wicked people** and you will be in danger from them **as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves**.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12a ULT)

For the word of God is living and active and **more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword**.

(2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, (Matthew 10:16a ULT) — If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.

See, I send you out **as chickens in the midst of wild dogs**.

How often did I long to gather your children together, just **as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings**, but you were not willing! (Matthew 23:37b ULT)

How often I wanted to gather your children together, **as a mother closely watches over her infants**, but you refused!

If you have faith **as a grain of mustard** ... (Matthew 17:20)

If you have faith even as small **as a tiny seed**,

(3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**. (Matthew 10:16a ULT)

See, I send you out among **people who will want to harm you**.

How often did I long to gather your children together, just **as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings**, but you were not willing! (Matthew 23:37b ULT)



How often I wanted to **protect you**, but you refused!

Next we recommend you learn about:

*Metaphor* ([UTA PDF](#))

*Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns* ([UTA PDF](#))

**Referenced in:** [Isaiah 1:8](#); [Isaiah 1:18](#); [Isaiah 1:30](#); [Isaiah 1:31](#); [Isaiah 3:9](#); [Isaiah 5:17](#); [Isaiah 5:25](#); [Isaiah 5:28](#); [Isaiah 6:13](#); [Isaiah 7:2](#); [Isaiah 9:3](#); [Isaiah 10:6](#); [Isaiah 10:13](#); [Isaiah 10:14](#); [Isaiah 10:16](#); [Isaiah 10:18](#); [Isaiah 10:22](#); [Isaiah 11:9](#); [Isaiah 11:10](#); [Isaiah 14:19](#); [Isaiah 16:2](#); [Isaiah 17:5](#); [Isaiah 17:6](#); [Isaiah 17:12](#); [Isaiah 18:4](#); [Isaiah 19:14](#); [Isaiah 19:16](#); [Isaiah 21:1](#); [Isaiah 21:3](#); [Isaiah 23:10](#); [Isaiah 24:13](#); [Isaiah 24:20](#); [Isaiah 25:4](#); [Isaiah 25:5](#); [Isaiah 25:11](#); [Isaiah 26:17](#); [Isaiah 26:18](#); [Isaiah 28:2](#); [Isaiah 28:4](#); [Isaiah 29:2](#); [Isaiah 29:4](#); [Isaiah 29:5](#); [Isaiah 29:8](#); [Isaiah 29:11](#); [Isaiah 30:13](#); [Isaiah 30:14](#); [Isaiah 30:17](#); [Isaiah 30:22](#); [Isaiah 30:28](#); [Isaiah 30:29](#); [Isaiah 30:33](#); [Isaiah 31:4](#); [Isaiah 31:5](#); [Isaiah 32:2](#); [Isaiah 33:4](#); [Isaiah 33:9](#); [Isaiah 33:12](#); [Isaiah 34:4](#); [Isaiah 35:2](#); [Isaiah 35:6](#); [Isaiah 37:3](#); [Isaiah 38:12](#); [Isaiah 38:13](#); [Isaiah 40:6](#); [Isaiah 40:15](#); [Isaiah 40:22](#); [Isaiah 40:24](#); [Isaiah 41:25](#); [Isaiah 42:13](#); [Isaiah 42:14](#); [Isaiah 47:14](#); [Isaiah 48:4](#); [Isaiah 50:4](#); [Isaiah 51:6](#); [Isaiah 51:12](#); [Isaiah 51:20](#); [Isaiah 51:23](#); [Isaiah 53:2](#); [Isaiah 53:6](#); [Isaiah 53:7](#); [Isaiah 57:20](#); [Isaiah 58:1](#); [Isaiah 58:5](#); [Isaiah 58:11](#); [Isaiah 59:10](#); [Isaiah 59:11](#); [Isaiah 59:19](#); [Isaiah 61:10](#); [Isaiah 62:1](#); [Isaiah 62:5](#); [Isaiah 63:13](#); [Isaiah 63:14](#); [Isaiah 64:2](#); [Isaiah 64:6](#); [Isaiah 66:12](#); [Isaiah 66:14](#); [Isaiah 66:15](#)

# Symbolic Action

## Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their heads up and down to mean “yes” or turn their heads from side to side to mean “no.” Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures. In the Bible, sometimes people perform symbolic actions and sometimes they only refer to the symbolic action.

This page answers the question: *What is a symbolic action and how do I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Translate Unknowns* ([UTA PDF](#))

## Examples of symbolic actions

- In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
- In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

An action may have a meaning in one culture and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means “I am surprised” or “What did you say?” In other cultures it means “yes.”

In the Bible, people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible, we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture today.

You (the translator) need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in your own culture, then you need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

## Examples From the Bible

And behold, a man came whose name was Jairus, and he was a ruler of the synagogue. And **falling at the feet of Jesus**, he begged him to come to his house. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.

Look, I am standing at the door and am knocking. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come into him and will eat with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: When people wanted someone to welcome them into their home, they stood at the door and knocked on it.

## Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for translating it.

- (1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.
- (2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.
- (3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.

And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet in order to show that he greatly respected him.

Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in.

(2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Jairus showed Jesus great respect.

Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.

And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT) — Since Jairus actually did this, you should not substitute an action from your own culture.

Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT) — Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.

Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.

"

**Referenced in:** [Isaiah 2:6](#); [Isaiah 5:15](#); [Isaiah 15:2](#); [Isaiah 15:3](#); [Isaiah 16:1](#); [Isaiah 22:12](#); [Isaiah 32:11](#); [Isaiah 36:22](#); [Isaiah 37:1](#); [Isaiah 37:2](#); [Isaiah 37:22](#)

# Symbolic Language

## Description

Symbolic language in speech and writing is the use of symbols to represent other things, other events, etc. In the Bible it occurs most in prophecy and poetry, especially in visions and dreams about things that will happen in the future. Though people may not immediately know the meaning of a symbol, it is important to keep the symbol in the translation.

This page answers the question: *What is symbolic language and how do I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

Writing Styles ([UTA PDF](#))

■ Eat this scroll; then go speak to the house of Israel. (Ezekiel 3:1 ULT)

This was in a dream. Eating the scroll is a symbol of Ezekiel reading and understanding well what was written on the scroll, and accepting these words from God into himself.

## Purposes of Symbolism

- One purpose of symbolism is to help people understand the importance or severity of an event by putting it in other, very dramatic terms.
- Another purpose of symbolism is to tell some people about something while hiding the true meaning from others who do not understand the symbolism.

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

People who read the Bible today may find it hard to recognize that the language is symbolic, and they may not know what the symbol stands for.

## Translation Principles

- When symbolic language is used, it is important to keep the symbol in the translation.
- It is also important not to explain the symbol more than the original speaker or writer did, since he may not have wanted everyone living then to be able to understand it easily.

## Examples From the Bible

■ After this I saw in my visions of the night **a fourth animal**, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had **large iron teeth**; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had **ten horns**. (Daniel 7:7 ULT)

The meaning of the bolded symbols is explained in Daniel 7:23-24 as shown below. The animals represent kingdoms, iron teeth represent a powerful army, and the horns represent powerful leaders.

■ This is what that person said, 'As for the fourth animal, it will be **a fourth kingdom** on earth that will be different from all the other kingdoms. It will devour the whole earth, and it will trample it down and break it into pieces. As for the ten horns, out of this kingdom **ten kings** will arise, and another will arise after them. He will be different from the previous ones, and he will conquer the three kings.' (Daniel 7:23-24 ULT)

■ I turned around to see the voice that was speaking to me, and as I turned I saw **seven golden lampstands**. In the middle of the lampstands there was one like a son of man ... He had **seven stars** in his right hand and **a sword with two sharp edges** was coming out of his mouth. As for the hidden meaning about the seven stars that you saw in my right hand, and the seven

golden lampstands: **The seven stars are the angels of the seven churches**, and **the seven lampstands are the seven churches**. (Revelation 1:12-13a, 16a, 20 ULT)

This passage explains the meaning of the seven lampstands and the seven stars. The two-edged sword represents God's word and judgment.

## Translation Strategies

- (1) Translate the text with the symbols. Often the speaker or author explains the meaning later in the passage.
- (2) Translate the text with the symbols. Then explain the symbols in footnotes.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Translate the text with the symbols. Often the speaker or author explains the meaning later in the passage.

This is what that person said, 'As for the fourth animal, it will be **a fourth kingdom** on earth that will be different from all the other kingdoms. It will devour the whole earth, and it will trample it down and break it into pieces. As for the ten horns, out of this kingdom **ten kings** will arise, and another will arise after them. He will be different from the previous ones, and he will conquer the three kings.' (Daniel 7:23-24 ULT)

- (2) Translate the text with the symbols. Then explain the symbols in footnotes.

After this I saw in my visions of the night **a fourth animal**, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had **large iron teeth**; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had **ten horns**. (Daniel 7:7 ULT)

After this I saw in my dream at night a fourth animal, <sup>1</sup> terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had large iron teeth; <sup>2</sup> it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had ten horns. <sup>3</sup>

The footnotes would look like:

[1] The animal is a symbol for a kingdom. [2] The iron teeth is a symbol for the kingdom's powerful army. [3] The horns are a symbol of powerful kings.

"

Referenced in: [Isaiah 5:6](#)

# Synecdoche

## Description

Synecdoche is a figure of speech in which a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole thing, or uses the whole to refer to a part.

■ **My soul** magnifies the Lord. (Luke 1:46b ULT)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul,” which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

■ So **the Pharisees** said to him, “Look, why are they doing that which is not lawful?” (Mark 2:24a ULT)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some readers may not recognize the synecdoche and thus misunderstand the words as a literal statement.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

## Example From the Bible

■ Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished. (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person’s accomplishments. The hands are chosen to represent the person because they are the parts of the body most directly involved in the work.

## Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

■ “**My soul** magnifies the Lord.” (Luke 1:46b ULT)

■ “**I** magnify the Lord.”

So **the Pharisees** said to him ... (Mark 2:24a ULT)

■ **A representative of the Pharisees** said to him ...

Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished. (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)

■ I looked on all the deeds that **I** had accomplished

This page answers the question: *What is a synecdoche, and how can I translate such a thing into my language?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Figures of Speech* ([UTA PDF](#))

*Metonymy* ([UTA PDF](#))

*Biblical Imagery — Common Metonymies* ([UTA PDF](#))

Next we recommend you learn about:

*Metonymy* ([UTA PDF](#))

*Biblical Imagery — Common Metonymies* ([UTA PDF](#))

**Referenced in:** [Isaiah 1:20](#); [Isaiah 2:4](#); [Isaiah 2:8](#); [Isaiah 3:8](#); [Isaiah 4:2](#); [Isaiah 5:12](#); [Isaiah 6:5](#); [Isaiah 6:8](#); [Isaiah 7:1](#); [Isaiah 9:11](#); [Isaiah 9:17](#); [Isaiah 10:6](#); [Isaiah 10:13](#); [Isaiah 10:24](#); [Isaiah 11:12](#); [Isaiah 14:25](#); [Isaiah 15:5](#); [Isaiah 16:11](#); [Isaiah 17:3](#); [Isaiah 17:7](#); [Isaiah 17:8](#); [Isaiah 17:12](#); [Isaiah 21:14](#); [Isaiah 22:14](#); [Isaiah 23:7](#); [Isaiah 24:17](#); [Isaiah 24:18](#); [Isaiah 26:9](#); [Isaiah 28:2](#); [Isaiah 28:11](#); [Isaiah 28:17](#); [Isaiah 28:18](#); [Isaiah 29:18](#); [Isaiah 30:20](#); [Isaiah 30:21](#); [Isaiah 30:23](#); [Isaiah 30:27](#); [Isaiah 31:7](#); [Isaiah 32:6](#); [Isaiah 33:2](#); [Isaiah 33:9](#); [Isaiah 33:17](#); [Isaiah 33:18](#); [Isaiah 33:20](#); [Isaiah 34:16](#); [Isaiah 35:1](#); [Isaiah 35:3](#); [Isaiah 35:4](#); [Isaiah 35:6](#); [Isaiah 35:10](#); [Isaiah 36:1](#); [Isaiah 37:12](#); [Isaiah 37:14](#); [Isaiah 37:19](#); [Isaiah 37:24](#); [Isaiah 37:25](#); [Isaiah 37:33](#); [Isaiah 37:34](#); [Isaiah 37:37](#); [Isaiah 38:14](#); [Isaiah 40:2](#); [Isaiah 40:3](#); [Isaiah 40:5](#); [Isaiah 41:20](#); [Isaiah 44:18](#); [Isaiah 45:11](#); [Isaiah 45:12](#); [Isaiah 45:23](#); [Isaiah 48:3](#); [Isaiah 48:13](#); [Isaiah 50:4](#); [Isaiah 50:6](#); [Isaiah 50:7](#); [Isaiah 51:9](#); [Isaiah 51:11](#); [Isaiah 51:14](#); [Isaiah 51:17](#); [Isaiah 51:21](#); [Isaiah 52:7](#); [Isaiah 52:8](#); [Isaiah 55:2](#); [Isaiah 55:11](#); [Isaiah 56:2](#); [Isaiah 58:13](#); [Isaiah 58:14](#); [Isaiah 59:7](#); [Isaiah 62:10](#); [Isaiah 63:16](#); [Isaiah 64:4](#); [Isaiah 65:12](#); [Isaiah 66:2](#); [Isaiah 66:14](#); [Isaiah 66:16](#)

## Textual Variants

### Description

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people then copied them by hand and translated them. They did this work very carefully, and over the years many people made thousands of copies. However, people who looked at them later saw that there were small differences between them. Some copiers accidentally left out some words, or some mistook one word for another that looked like it. Occasionally, they added words or even whole sentences, either by accident or because they wanted to explain something. Modern Bibles are translations of the old copies. Some modern Bibles include some of these sentences that were added. In the ULT, these added sentences are usually written in footnotes.

This page answers the question: *Why does the ULT have missing or added verses, and should I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Choosing a Source Text* ([UTA PDF](#))

*Original Manuscripts* ([UTA PDF](#))

Bible scholars have read many old copies and compared them with each other. For each place in the Bible where there was a difference, they have figured out which wordings are most likely correct. The translators of the ULT based the ULT on wordings that scholars say are most likely correct. Because people who use the ULT may have access to Bibles that are based on other copies, the ULT translators have sometimes included information about some of the differences between them, either in the ULT footnotes or in the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes.

Translators are encouraged to translate the text in the ULT and to write about added sentences in footnotes, as is done in the ULT. However, if the local church really wants those sentences to be included in the main text, translators may put them in the text and include a footnote about them.

### Examples From the Bible

Matthew 18:10-11 ULT has a footnote about verse 11.

<sup>10</sup> See that you do not despise one of these little ones. For I say to you that in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is in heaven. <sup>11</sup> <sup>[1]</sup>

<sup>[1]</sup> Many authorities, some ancient, insert v. 11: **For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost.**

John 7:53-8:11 is not in the best earliest manuscripts. It has been included in the ULT, but it is marked off with square brackets ([ ]) at the beginning and end, and there is a footnote after verse 11.

53 [Then everyone went to his own house ... 11 She said, "No one, Lord." Jesus said, "Neither do I condemn you. Go and sin no more."] <sup>[2]</sup>

<sup>[2]</sup> Some ancient manuscripts include John 7:53-8:11

### Translation Strategies

When there is a textual variant, you may choose to follow the ULT or another version that you have access to.

- (1) Translate the verses as they are in the ULT and include the footnote that the ULT provides.
- (2) Translate the verses as another version has them, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.



## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The translation strategies are applied to Mark 7:14-16 ULT, which has a footnote about verse 16.

<sup>14</sup> He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand. <sup>15</sup> There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man." <sup>16</sup> [1]

[1] Some ancient manuscripts include verse 16: **If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.**

(1) Translate the verses as they are in the ULT and include the footnote that the ULT provides.

<sup>14</sup> He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand. <sup>15</sup> There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man." <sup>16</sup> [1]

[1] Some ancient manuscripts include verse 16: **If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.**

(2) Translate the verses as another version has them, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

<sup>14</sup> He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand. <sup>15</sup> There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man. <sup>16</sup> If any man has ears to hear, let him hear." [1]

[1] Some ancient manuscripts do not include verse 16.

Next we recommend you learn about:

*Chapter and Verse Numbers* ([UTA PDF](#))

*Original Manuscripts* ([UTA PDF](#))

*Terms to Know* ([UTA PDF](#))

*The Original and Source Languages* ([UTA PDF](#))

Referenced in: [Isaiah 19:18](#)

## Translate Unknowns

While working to translate the Bible, you (the translator) might find yourself asking: “How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?”

### Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The unfoldingWord® Translation Words pages and the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate ideas that my readers are not familiar with?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Sentence Structure* ([UTA PDF](#))

They said to him, “We have nothing here except five loaves of **bread** and two fish.” (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread and do not know what it is.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

### Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God’s commands and historical facts accurately.

### Examples From the Bible

So I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals**. (Jeremiah 9:11a ULT)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep’s clothing, but inwardly they are ravenous **wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

They offered him wine mixed with **myrrh**, but he did not drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT)

People may not know what myrrh is and that it was used as a medicine.

... to him who made **great lights** ... (Psalm 136:7a ULT)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

Your sins ... will be white like **snow**. (Isaiah 1:18b ULT)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

## Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

- (1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.
- (2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
- (3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
- (4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.
- (5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.

Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are inwardly they are **ravenous wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but **inwardly they are very hungry and dangerous animals**.

"Ravenous wolves" is part of a metaphor here, so the reader needs to know that they are very dangerous to sheep in order to understand this metaphor. (If sheep are also unknown, then you will need to also use one of the translation strategies to translate sheep, or change the metaphor to something else, using a translation strategy for metaphors. See [Translating Metaphors](#).)

"We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish." (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

We have nothing here except five **loaves of baked grain seeds** and two fish.

- (2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

Your sins ... will be white like **snow**. (Isaiah 1:18b ULT) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.

Your sins ... will be white like **milk**.

Your sins ... will be white like **the moon**.

- (3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **myrrh**. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT) — People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word "medicine."

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **a medicine called myrrh**. But he refused to drink it.

"We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish." (Matthew 14:17 ULT) —  
People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made  
of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).

We have nothing here except five loaves of **baked crushed seed bread**  
and two fish.

(4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals** (Jeremiah 9:11a ULT)

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **wild dogs**

"We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish." (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

We have nothing here except five **loaves of baked food** and two fish.

(5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

... to him who made **great lights** ... (Psalm 136:7a ULT)

to him who made **the sun and the moon**

Next we recommend you learn about:

*Copy or Borrow Words* ([UTA PDF](#))

*How to Translate Names* ([UTA PDF](#))

**Referenced in:** [Isaiah 2:20](#); [Isaiah 5:12](#); [Isaiah 6:2](#); [Isaiah 6:6](#); [Isaiah 6:13](#); [Isaiah 11:6](#); [Isaiah 11:7](#); [Isaiah 13:14](#);  
[Isaiah 13:21](#); [Isaiah 13:22](#); [Isaiah 18:2](#); [Isaiah 19:8](#); [Isaiah 19:9](#); [Isaiah 28:25](#); [Isaiah 29:3](#); [Isaiah 30:28](#); [Isaiah 41:19](#);  
[Isaiah 44:14](#); [Isaiah 51:20](#); [Isaiah 54:11](#); [Isaiah 54:12](#); [Isaiah 55:13](#)



# **unfoldingWord® Translation Words**

**Version 78**

## anoint, anointed, anointing

### Definition:

The term “anoint” means to rub or pour oil on a person or object. In biblical times, there were several reasons for anointing someone with oil. Often this was a [Symbolic Action](#), representing God empowering that person with the Holy Spirit for special service to him.

- In the Old Testament, priests, kings, and prophets were anointed with oil to set them apart for special service to God.
- Objects such as altars or the tabernacle were also anointed with oil to show that they were to be used to worship and glorify God.
- In the New Testament, sick people were anointed with oil for their healing.
- Sometimes the oil was mixed with spices, giving it a sweet, perfumed smell.
- The New Testament records two times that Jesus was anointed with perfumed oil by a woman, as an act of worship.
- People prepared dead bodies for burial by anointing them with perfumed oils and spices.
- In the New Testament, receiving the Holy Spirit is described as anointing.
- The titles “Messiah” (Hebrew) and “Christ” (Greek) mean “the Anointed (One).”
- Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “anoint” could be translated as “pour/put oil on” or “consecrate by pouring oil on” or “consecrate” or “appoint.”
- Depending on the context, to “be anointed” could be translated as “be consecrated with oil” or “be appointed” or “be consecrated” or “be given the Holy Spirit.”
- A phrase like “the anointed priest,” could be translated as “the priest who was consecrated with oil” or “the priest who was set apart by the pouring on of oil.”

(See also: [Christ](#), [consecrate](#), [high priest](#), [King of the Jews](#), [priest](#), [prophet](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 2:20
- 1 John 2:27
- 2 Corinthians 1:21
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- Acts 4:27-28
- Amos 6:5-6
- Exodus 29:5-7
- James 5:13-15

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0047, H0430, H1101, H1878, H3323, H4397, H4398, H4473, H4886, H4888, H4899, H5480, H8136, G00320, G02180, G07430, G14720, G20250, G34620, G55450, G55480

"

Referenced in: [Isaiah 45 General Notes](#)

## atonement, atone, atoned

### Definition:

The terms “atone” and “atonement” refer to how God provided a sacrifice to pay for people’s sins and to appease his wrath for sin.

- In Old Testament times, God allowed temporary atonement to be made for the sins of the Israelites by the offering of a blood sacrifice, which involved killing an animal.
- As recorded in the New Testament, Christ’s death on the cross is the only true and permanent atonement for sin.
- When Jesus died, he took the punishment that people deserve because of their sin. He paid the atonement price with his sacrificial death.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “atone” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “pay for” or “provide payment for” or “cause someone’s sins to be forgiven” or “make amends for a crime.”
- Ways to translate “atonement” could include “payment” or “sacrifice to pay for sin” or “providing the means of forgiveness.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to payment of money.

(See also: [atonement lid](#), [forgive](#), [propitiation](#), [reconcile](#), [redeem](#))

### Bible References:

- Ezekiel 43:25-27
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Leviticus 4:20
- Numbers 5:8
- Numbers 28:22

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3722, H3725, G26430

”

Referenced in: [Isaiah 53 General Notes](#)

# blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous

## Definition:

In the Bible, the term “blasphemy” refers to speaking in a way that shows a deep disrespect for God or people. To “blaspheme” someone is to speak against that person so that others think something false or bad about him.

- Most often, to blaspheme God means to slander or insult him by saying things that are not true about him or by behaving in an immoral way that dishonors him.
- It is blasphemy for a human being to claim to be God or to claim that there is a God other than the one true God.
- Some English versions translate this term as “slander” when it refers to blaspheming people.

## Translation Suggestions:

- To “blaspheme” can be translated as to “say evil things against” or to “dishonor God” or to “slander.”
- Ways to translate “blasphemy” could include “speaking wrongly about others” or “slander” or “spreading false rumors.”

(See also: [dishonor](#), [slander](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 1:12-14
- Acts 6:11
- Acts 26:9-11
- James 2:5-7
- John 10:32-33
- Luke 12:10
- Mark 14:64
- Matthew 12:31
- Matthew 26:65
- Psalms 74:10

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1288, H1442, H2778, H5006, H5007, H5344, G09870, G09880, G09890

”

Referenced in: [Isaiah 37 General Notes](#)



# Christ, Messiah

## Facts:

The terms “Messiah” and “Christ” mean “Anointed One” and refer to Jesus, God’s Son.

- Both “Messiah” and “Christ” are used in the New Testament to refer to God’s Son, whom God the Father appointed to rule as king over his people, and to save them from sin and death.
- In the Old Testament, the prophets wrote prophecies about the Messiah hundreds of years before he came to earth.
- Often a word meaning “anointed (one)” is used in the Old Testament to refer to the Messiah who would come.
- Jesus fulfilled many of these prophecies and did many miraculous works that proves he is the Messiah; the rest of these prophecies will be fulfilled when he returns.
- The word “Christ” is often used as a title, as in “the Christ” and “Christ Jesus.”
- “Christ” also came to be used as part of his name, as in “Jesus Christ.”

## Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using its meaning, “the Anointed One” or “God’s Anointed Savior.”
- Many languages use a transliterated word that looks or sounds like “Christ” or “Messiah.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- The transliterated word could be followed by the definition of the term as in, “Christ, the Anointed One.”
- Be consistent in how this is translated throughout the Bible so that it is clear that the same term is being referred to.
- Make sure the translations of “Messiah” and “Christ” work well in contexts where both terms occur in the same verse (such as John 1:41).

(See also: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Son of God](#), [David](#), [Jesus](#), [anoint](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 John 5:1-3
- Acts 2:35
- Acts 5:40-42
- John 1:40-42
- John 3:27-28
- John 4:25
- Luke 2:10-12
- Matthew 1:16

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:7** The **Messiah** was God’s Chosen One who would save the people of the world from sin.
- **17:8** As it happened, the Israelites would have to wait a long time before the **Messiah** came, almost 1,000 years.
- **21:1** From the very beginning, God planned to send the **Messiah**.
- **21:4** God promised King David that the **Messiah** would be one of David’s own descendants.
- **21:5** The **Messiah** would start the New Covenant.
- **21:6** God’s prophets also said that the **Messiah** would be a prophet, a priest, and a king.

- **21:9** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the **Messiah** would be born from a virgin.
- **43:7** "But God raised him to life again to fulfill the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your **Holy One** rot in the grave.'"
- **43:9** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both Lord and **Messiah**!"
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus **Christ** so that God will forgive your sins."
- **46:6** Saul reasoned with the Jews, proving that Jesus was the **Messiah**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H4899, G33230, G55470

"

**Referenced in:** [Introduction to Isaiah](#); [Isaiah 7 General Notes](#); [Isaiah 24 General Notes](#); [Isaiah 25 General Notes](#); [Isaiah 35 General Notes](#); [Isaiah 42 General Notes](#); [Isaiah 49 General Notes](#); [Isaiah 50 General Notes](#); [Isaiah 52 General Notes](#); [Isaiah 61 General Notes](#)

## eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever

### Definition:

The terms “everlasting” and “eternal” have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

- The term “eternity” refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
- After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.

The term “forever” refers to never-ending time.

- The phrase “forever and ever” has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like. It emphasizes that something will always happen or exist. It refers to time that never ends.
- God said that David’s throne would last “forever.” This is referred to the fact that David’s descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “eternal” or “everlasting” could include “unending” or “never stopping” or “always continuing.”
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” could also be translated as “life that never ends” or “life that continues without stopping” or “the raising up of our bodies to live forever.”
- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “eternity” could include “existing outside of time” or “unending life” or “life in heaven.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- “Forever” could also be translated by “always” or “never ending.”
- The phrase “will last forever” could also be translated as “always exist” or “will never stop” or “will always continue.”
- The emphatic phrase “forever and ever” could also be translated as “for always and always” or “not ever ending” or “which never, ever ends.”
- David’s throne lasting forever could be translated as “David’s descendant will reign forever” or “a descendant of David will always be reigning.”

(See also: [David](#), [reign](#), [life](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 17:8
- Genesis 48:4
- Exodus 15:17
- 2 Samuel 3:28-30
- 1 Kings 2:32-33
- Job 4:20-21
- Psalms 21:4
- Isaiah 9:6-7
- Isaiah 40:27-28
- Daniel 7:18

- Luke 18:18
- Acts 13:46
- Romans 5:21
- Hebrews 6:19-20
- Hebrews 10:11-14
- 1 John 1:2
- 1 John 5:12
- Revelation 1:4-6
- Revelation 22:3-5

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit **eternal life**?"
- **28:1** One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, "Good Teacher, what must I do to have **eternal life**?" Jesus said to him, "Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have **eternal life**, obey God's laws."
- **28:10** Jesus answered, "Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name's sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive **eternal life**."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3117, H4481, H5331, H5703, H5705, H5769, H5865, H5957, H6924, G01260, G01650, G01660, G13360

"

Referenced in: [Isaiah 66 General Notes](#)

## evil, wicked, unpleasant

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “evil” can refer either to the concept of moral wickedness or emotional unpleasantness. The context will usually make it clear which meaning is intended in the specific instance of the term.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral.”
- Other ways to translate these could include “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: disobey, [sin](#), [good](#), [righteous](#), [demon](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:11
- 1 Timothy 6:10
- 3 John 1:10
- Genesis 2:17
- Genesis 6:5-6
- Job 1:1
- Job 8:20
- Judges 9:57
- Luke 6:22-23
- Matthew 7:11-12
- Proverbs 3:7
- Psalms 22:16-17

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:4** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”
- **3:1** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **3:2** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **4:2** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **8:12** “You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!”
- **14:2** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **17:1** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **18:11** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.
- **29:8** The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- **45:2** They said, “We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!”

- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H0605, H1100, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2162, H2254, H2617, H3399, H3415, H4209, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5999, H6001, H6090, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, G00920, G01130, G04590, G09320, G09870, G09880, G14260, G25490, G25510, G25540, G25550, G25560, G25570, G25590, G25600, G26350, G26360, G41510, G41890, G41900, G41910, G53370

"

**Referenced in:** [Isaiah 1 General Notes](#); [Isaiah 33 General Notes](#); [Isaiah 57 General Notes](#)

## faith

### Definition:

In general, the term “faith” refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

- To “have faith” in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
- To “have faith in Jesus” means to believe all of God’s teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
- True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
- Sometimes “faith” refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression “the truths of the faith.”
- In contexts such as “keep the faith” or “abandon the faith,” the term “faith” refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, “faith” can be translated as “belief” or “conviction” or “confidence” or “trust.”
- For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb “believe.” (See: [abstractnouns](#))
- The expression “keep the faith” could be translated by “keep believing in Jesus” or “continue to believe in Jesus.”
- The sentence “they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith” could be translated by “they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught.”
- The expression “my true son in the faith” could be translated by something like “who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus” or “my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus.”

(See also: [believe](#), [faithful](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:7
- Acts 6:7
- Galatians 2:20-21
- James 2:20

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **5:6** When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham’s **faith** by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **31:7** Then he (Jesus) said to Peter, “You man of little **faith**, why did you doubt?”
- **32:16** Jesus said to her, “Your **faith** has healed you. Go in peace.”
- **38:9** Then Jesus said to Peter, “Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, Peter, that your **faith** will not fail.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0529, H0530, G16800, G36400, G41020, G60660

”

**Referenced in:** [Isaiah 55 General Notes](#); [Isaiah 56 General Notes](#)



## faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy

### Definition:

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”

(See also: [believe](#), [faith](#), [believe](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 24:49
- Leviticus 26:40
- Numbers 12:7
- Joshua 2:14
- Judges 2:16-17
- 1 Samuel 2:9
- Psalm 12:1
- Proverbs 11:12-13
- Isaiah 1:26
- Jeremiah 9:7-9
- Hosea 5:7
- Luke 12:46
- Luke 16:10
- Colossians 1:7
- 1 Thessalonians 5:24
- 3 John 1:5

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:5** Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- **14:12** Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- **15:13** The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- **17:9** David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **35:12** “The older son said to his father, ‘All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!’”
- **49:17** But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- **50:4** “If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you.”

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0529, H0530, H0539, H0540, H0571, H0898, H2181, H4603, H4604, H4820, G05690, G05710, G41030

"

**Referenced in:** [Isaiah 4 General Notes](#)

## fulfill, fulfilled, carried out

### Definition:

The term “fulfill” means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

- When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
- If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
- To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “fulfill” could be translated as “accomplish” or “complete” or “cause to happen” or “obey” or “perform.”
- The phrase “has been fulfilled” could also be translated as “has come true” or “has happened” or “has taken place.”
- Ways to translate “fulfill,” as in “fulfill your ministry,” could include “complete” or “perform” or “practice” or “serve other people as God has called you to do.”

(See also: [prophet](#), [Christ](#), [minister](#), call)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 2:27
- Acts 3:17-18
- Leviticus 22:17-19
- Luke 4:21
- Matthew 1:22-23
- Matthew 5:17
- Psalms 116:12-15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:4** John **fulfilled** what the prophets said, “See I send my messenger ahead of you, who will prepare your way.”
- **40:3** The soldiers gambled for Jesus’ clothing. When they did this, they **fulfilled** a prophecy that said, “They divided my garments among them, and gambled for my clothing.”
- **42:7** Jesus said, “I told you that everything written about me in God’s word must be **fulfilled**.”
- **43:5** “This **fulfills** the prophecy made by the prophet Joel in which God said, ‘In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.’”
- **43:7** “This **fulfills** the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”
- **44:5** “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to **fulfill** the prophecies that the Messiah would suffer and die.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H5487, G10960, G41380

”

**Referenced in:** [Isaiah 2 General Notes](#); [Isaiah 11 General Notes](#); [Isaiah 21 General Notes](#); [Isaiah 29 General Notes](#); [Isaiah 34 General Notes](#); [Isaiah 61 General Notes](#); [Isaiah 62 General Notes](#)

# God

## Definition:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh,” which means “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods,” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being” or “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god. Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for “God” and “god.”  
NOTE: In the biblical text, when a person who does not worship Yahweh speaks about Yahweh and uses the word “god,” it is acceptable to render the term without a capital letter in reference to Yahweh (see Jonah 1:6, 3:9).
- The phrase “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [create](#), [false god](#), [God the Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [false god](#), [Son of God](#), [Yahweh](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Timothy 4:10
- Colossians 1:16
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 3:1-2
- Genesis 1:2
- Hosea 4:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 2:20
- Jeremiah 5:5
- John 1:3
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Lamentations 3:43
- Micah 4:5
- Philippians 2:6
- Proverbs 24:12

- Psalms 47:9

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:1 God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- **1:15 God** made man and woman in his own image.
- **5:3** "I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- **9:14 God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **10:2** Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- **22:7** "You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- **24:9** There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **25:7** "Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- **28:1** "There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- **49:9** But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- **50:16** But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0136, H0305, H0410, H0426, H0430, H0433, H2486, H2623, H3068, H3069, H3863, H4136, H6697, G01120, G05160, G09320, G09350, G10960, G11400, G20980, G21240, G21280, G21500, G21520, G21530, G22990, G23040, G23050, G23120, G23130, G23140, G23150, G23160, G23170, G23180, G23190, G23200, G33610, G37850, G41510, G52070, G53770, G54630, G55370, G55380

"

Referenced in: [Isaiah 15 General Notes](#)

## god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry

### Definition:

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term “goddess” refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God’s people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as “idolatrous” if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An “idolatrous kingdom” means a “kingdom of people who worship idols” or a “kingdom of people who worship earthly things.”
- The term “idolatrous figure” is another word for a “carved image” or an “idol.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- There may already be a word for “god” or “false god” in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term “idol” could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case “g” is used to refer to false gods, and upper case “G” is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: [God](#), [Asherah](#), [Baal](#), [Molech](#), [demon](#), [image](#), [kingdom](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 35:2
- Exodus 32:1
- Psalms 31:6
- Psalms 81:8-10
- Isaiah 44:20
- Acts 7:41
- Acts 7:43
- Acts 15:20
- Acts 19:27
- Romans 2:22
- Galatians 4:8-9
- Galatians 5:19-21
- Colossians 3:5
- 1 Thessalonians 1:9

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **10:2** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's **gods**.
- **13:4** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other **gods**."
- **14:2** They (Canaanites) worshiped false **gods** and did many evil things.
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite **gods** instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **18:13** But most of Judah's kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols. Some of the kings even sacrificed their children to false **gods**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H0367, H0410, H0426, H0430, H0457, H1322, H1544, H1892, H2553, H3649, H4656, H4906, H5236, H5566, H6089, H6090, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6673, H6736, H6754, H7723, H8163, H8251, H8267, H8441, H8655, G14930, G14940, G14950, G14960, G14970, G22990, G27120

"

**Referenced in:** [Isaiah 19 General Notes](#); [Isaiah 41 General Notes](#); [Isaiah 46 General Notes](#); [Isaiah 48 General Notes](#); [Isaiah 57 General Notes](#)

## heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

### Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can’t directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.

### Translation Suggestions:

- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See also: [kingdom of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 1:8-10
- 1 Thessalonians 4:17
- Deuteronomy 9:1
- Ephesians 6:9
- Genesis 1:1
- Genesis 7:11
- John 3:12
- John 3:27
- Matthew 5:18
- Matthew 5:46-48

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:2** They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- **14:11** He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- **23:7** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **29:9** Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- **37:9** Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- **42:11** Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1534, H6160, H6183, H7834, H8064, H8065, G09320, G20320, G33210, G37700, G37710, G37720



"

**Referenced in:** [Isaiah 6 General Notes](#)

## holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

### Definition:

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Literally, the term “unholy” means “not holy.” It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

- This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
- A thing that is called “unholy” could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term “sacred” describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, the term “sacred” was oftentimes used to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as “religious.”
- “Sacred songs” and “sacred music” refer to music that was sung or played for God’s glory. This could be translated as “music for worshiping Yahweh” or “songs that praise God.”
- The phrase “sacred duties” referred to the “religious duties” or “rituals” that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “holy” might include “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”
- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God’s glory.”
- Ways to translate “unholy” could include “not holy” or “not belonging to God” or “not honoring to God” or “not godly.”
- In some contexts, “unholy” could be translated as “unclean.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [consecrate](#), [sanctify](#), set apart)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 28:22
- 2 Kings 3:2
- Lamentations 4:1
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Matthew 7:6

- Mark 8:38
- Acts 7:33
- Acts 11:8
- Romans 1:2
- 2 Corinthians 12:3-5
- Colossians 1:22
- 1 Thessalonians 3:13
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7
- 2 Timothy 3:15

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:16** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **9:12** "You are standing on **holy** ground."
- **13:1** "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation."
- **13:5** "Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**."
- **22:5** "So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God."
- **50:2** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0430, H2455, H2623, H4676, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, H6948, G00370, G00380, G00400, G00400, G00410, G00420, G04620, G18590, G21500, G24120, G24130, G28390, G37410, G37420

"

Referenced in: [Isaiah 6 General Notes](#)

# Israel, Israelites

## Facts:

The term "Israel" is the name that God gave to Jacob. Often it refers to the nation that is descended from him.

- The name Israel probably means "He struggles with God."
- The descendants of Jacob became known as the "sons of Israel" or the "people of Israel" or the "nation of Israel" or the "Israelites."
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called "Judah," and the northern kingdom, called "Israel."
- Often the term "Israel" can be translated as "the people of Israel" or "the nation of Israel," depending on the context.

(See also: [Jacob](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [nation](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:1
- 1 Kings 8:2
- Acts 2:36
- Acts 7:24
- Acts 13:23
- John 1:49-51
- Luke 24:21
- Mark 12:29
- Matthew 2:6
- Matthew 27:9
- Philippians 3:4-5

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:15** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- **9:3** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- **9:5** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- **10:1** They said, "This is what the God of **Israel** says, 'Let my people go!'"
- **14:12** But despite all this, the people of \_\_Israel\_\_ complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- **15:9** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- **15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** \_\_ **its own section of the Promised Land**. Then God gave \_\_**Israel**\_\_ peace along all its borders.
- **16:16** So God punished \_\_Israel\_\_ again for worshipping idols.
- **43:6** "Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G09350, G24740, G24750

"

**Referenced in:** [Introduction to Isaiah](#)

## judge, judgment

### Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether or not something is good, wise, or right. However, these terms can also refer to actions performed by a person as the result of a decision, usually in the context of deciding that something is bad, wrong, or evil.

- The terms “judge” and “judgment” can also mean “to cause harm to” (usually because God has decided a person or nation’s actions are wicked).
- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate to “judge” could include to “decide” or to “condemn” or to “punish” or to “decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: [decree](#), [judge](#), [judgment day](#), [just](#), [law](#), [law](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 4:17
- 1 Kings 3:9
- Acts 10:42-43
- Isaiah 3:14
- James 2:4
- Luke 6:37
- Micah 3:9-11
- Psalm 54:1

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **21:8** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.
- **39:4** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, “We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?”

- **50:14** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0148, H0430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1780, H1781, H1782, H2940, H4055, H4941, H6414, H6415, H6416, H6417, H6419, H6485, H8196, H8199, H8201, G01440, G03500, G09680, G11060, G12520, G13410, G13450, G13480, G13490, G29170, G29190, G29200, G29220, G29230, G42320

"

**Referenced in:** [Isaiah 3 General Notes](#)

## just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification

### Definition:

“Just” and “justice” refer to treating people fairly according to God’s laws. Human laws that reflect God’s standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be “just” is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God’s eyes.
- To act “justly” means to treat people in a way that is right, good, and proper according to God’s laws.
- To receive “justice” means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by the law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term “just” has the broader meaning of “righteous” or “following God’s laws.”

The terms “unjust” and “unjustly” refer to treating people in an unfair and often harmful manner.

- An “injustice” is something bad that is done to someone that the person did not deserve. It refers to treating people unfairly.
- Injustice also means that some people are treated badly while others are treated well.
- Someone who is acting in an unjust way is being “partial” or “prejudiced” because he is not treating people equally.

The terms “justify” and “justification” refer to causing a guilty person to be righteous. Only God can truly justify people.

- When God justifies people, he forgives their sins and makes it as though they have no sin. He justifies sinners who repent and trust in Jesus to save them from their sins.
- “Justification” refers to what God does when he forgives a person’s sins and declares that person to be righteous in his sight.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “just” could include “morally right” or “fair.”
- The term “justice” could be translated as “fair treatment” or “deserved consequences.”
- To “act justly” could be translated as “treat fairly” or “behave in a just way.”
- In some contexts, “just” could be translated as “righteous” or “upright.”
- Depending on the context, “unjust” could also be translated as “unfair” or “partial” or “unrighteous.”
- The phrase “the unjust” could be translated as “the unjust ones” or “unjust people” or “people who treat others unfairly” or “unrighteous people” or “people who disobey God.”
- The term “unjustly” could be translated as “in an unfair manner” or “wrongly” or “unfairly.”
- Ways to translate “injustice” could include, “wrong treatment” or “unfair treatment” or “acting unfairly.” (See: [abstractnouns](#))
- Other ways to translate “justify” could include “declare (someone) to be righteous” or “cause (someone) to be righteous.”
- The term “justification” could be translated as “being declared righteous” or “becoming righteous” or “causing people to be righteous.”
- The phrase “resulting in justification” could be translated as “so that God justified many people” or “which resulted in God causing people to be righteous.”
- The phrase “for our justification” could be translated as “in order that we could be made righteous by God.”

(See also: [forgive](#), [guilt](#), [judge](#), [righteous](#), [righteous](#))



## Bible References:

- Genesis 44:16
- 1 Chronicles 18:14
- Isaiah 4:3-4
- Jeremiah 22:3
- Ezekiel 18:16-17
- Micah 3:8
- Matthew 5:43-45
- Matthew 11:19
- Matthew 23:23-24
- Luke 18:3
- Luke 18:8
- Luke 18:13-14
- Luke 21:20-22
- Luke 23:41
- Acts 13:38-39
- Acts 28:4
- Romans 4:1-3
- Galatians 3:6-9
- Galatians 3:11
- Galatians 5:3-4
- Titus 3:6-7
- Hebrews 6:10
- James 2:24
- Revelation 15:3-4

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:9** David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
- **18:13** Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.
- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H2555, H3477, H4941, H5765, H5766, H5767, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6666, H8003, H8264, H8636, G00910, G00930, G00940, G13420, G13440, G13450, G13460, G13470, G17380

"

Referenced in: [Isaiah 2 General Notes](#); [Isaiah 5 General Notes](#)

## last day, last days, latter days

### Definition:

The term “the last days” refers generally to the time which begins with the first coming of Jesus and ends with his second coming and the final day of judgement. The Bible also calls the final day of judgement “the last day.” The phrase “the latter days” is sometimes used in the Bible with the same meaning as the phrase “the last days” but other times it can refer only to a time that is after the time in which the speaker is speaking but before the first coming of Jesus. The term “the last day” refers to the day of final judgement.

- This time period of “the last days” will have an unknown duration.
- The “the last day” is a time of judgment upon those who have turned away from God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “the last days” can also be translated as “the final days” or “the end times.”
- The term “the last day” can also be translated as “the final day.”
- In some contexts, this could be translated as “end of the world” or “when this world ends.”

(See also: [day of the Lord](#), [judge](#), [turn](#), [world](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Peter 3:3-4
- Daniel 10:14-15
- Hebrews 1:2
- Isaiah 2:2
- James 5:3
- Jeremiah 23:19-20
- John 11:24-26
- Micah 4:1

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0319, H3117, G20780, G22500

”

Referenced in: [Isaiah 12 General Notes](#)

## people of God

### Definition:

The concept of the “people of God” in the Bible refers to people with whom God has established a covenant relationship.

- In the Old Testament, the phrase “people of God” refers to the nation of Israel. The nation of Israel was chosen by God and set apart from the other nations of the world in order to serve and obey him.
- In the New Testament, the phrase “people of God” refers to the “Church,” meaning everyone who believes in Jesus. This includes both Jews and Gentiles. In the New Testament, sometimes this group of people is called the “sons of God” or “children of God.”
- When God uses the phrase “my people,” he is referring to people who have a covenant relationship with him. God’s people are chosen by him, and he wants them to live in a way that is pleasing to him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people of God” could be translated as “God’s people” or “the people who worship God” or “people who serve God” or “people who belong to God.”
- When God says “my people” other ways to translate it could include “the people I have chosen” or “the people who worship me” or “the people who belong to me.”
- Similarly, “your people” could be translated as “the people who belong to you” or “the people you chose to belong to you.”
- Also “his people” could be translated as “the people who belong to him” or “the people God chose to belong to himself.”

(See also: [Israel](#), [people group](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:2
- Acts 7:34
- Acts 7:51-53
- Acts 10:36-38
- Daniel 9:24-25
- Isaiah 2:5-6
- Jeremiah 6:20-22
- Joel 3:16-17
- Micah 6:3-5
- Revelation 13:7-8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0430, H5971, G23160, G29920

”

**Referenced in:** [Isaiah 17 General Notes](#); [Isaiah 25 General Notes](#)

## promise, promised

### Definition:

When used as a verb, the term “promise” refers to the action of a person saying that he will do something in such way that he obligates himself to fulfill what he has said. When used as a noun, the term “promise” refers to the thing that a person obligates himself to do.

- The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
- Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “promise” could be translated as “commitment” or “assurance” or “guarantee.”
- To “promise to do something” could be translated as “assure someone that you will do something” or “commit to doing something.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [oath](#), [vow](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 3:15-16
- Genesis 25:31-34
- Hebrews 11:9
- James 1:12
- Numbers 30:2

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:15** God said, “I **promise** I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children.”
- **3:16** God then made the first rainbow as a sign of his **promise**. Every time the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember what he **promised** and so would his people.
- **4:8** God spoke to Abram and **promised** again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky. Abram believed God’s **promise**.
- **5:4** “Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of **promise**.”
- **8:15** The covenant **promises** that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob’s twelve sons and their families.
- **17:14** Though David had been unfaithful to God, God was still faithful to his **promises**.
- **50:1** Jesus **promised** he would return at the end of the world. Though he has not yet come back, he will keep his **promise**.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0559, H0562, H1696, H8569, G18430, G18600, G18610, G18620, G36700, G42790

”

Referenced in: [Isaiah 54 General Notes](#)

## prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

### Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: [synecdoche](#))
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: [Baal](#), [divination](#), [false god](#), [false prophet](#), [fulfill](#), [law](#), [vision](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:14-16
- Acts 3:25
- John 1:43-45
- Malachi 4:4-6
- Matthew 1:23
- Matthew 2:18
- Matthew 5:17
- Psalm 51:1

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- **19:1** Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God’s messages.

- **19:6** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
- **19:17** Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- **21:9** The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **43:5** "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- **43:7** "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- **48:12** Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5197, G24950, G43940, G43950, G43960, G43970, G43980, G55780

"

**Referenced in:** [Isaiah 9 General Notes](#); [Isaiah 10 General Notes](#); [Isaiah 16 General Notes](#); [Isaiah 18 General Notes](#); [Isaiah 19 General Notes](#); [Isaiah 21 General Notes](#); [Isaiah 23 General Notes](#); [Isaiah 24 General Notes](#); [Isaiah 31 General Notes](#); [Isaiah 36 General Notes](#); [Isaiah 47 General Notes](#); [Isaiah 52 General Notes](#)

## remnant

### Definition:

The term “remnant” literally refers to people or things that are “remaining” or “left over” from a larger amount or group.

- Often a “remnant” refers to people who survive a life-threatening situation or who remain faithful to God while undergoing persecution.
- Isaiah referred to a group of Jews as being a remnant who would survive attacks from outsiders and live to return to the Promised Land in Canaan.
- Paul talks about there being a “remnant” of people who were chosen by God to receive his grace.
- The term “remnant” also implies that there were other people who did not remain or were not left over.

### Translation Suggestions:

- A phrase such as “the remnant of this people” could be translated as “the rest of these people” or “the people who are left.”
- The “whole remnant of people” could be translated by “all the rest of the people” or “the remaining people.”

### Bible References:

- Acts 15:17
- Amos 9:12
- Ezekiel 6:8-10
- Genesis 45:7
- Isaiah 11:11
- Micah 4:6-8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3498, H3499, H5629, H6413, H7604, H7605, H7611, H8281, H8300, G26400, G30050, G30620

"

Referenced in: [Isaiah 4 General Notes](#)

## repent, repentance

### Definition:

The terms “repent” and “repentance” refer to turning away from sin and turning back to God.

- To “repent” literally means to “change one’s mind.”
- In the Bible, “repent” usually means to turn away from a sinful, human way of thinking and acting, and to turn to God’s way of thinking and acting.
- When people truly repent of their sins, God forgives them and helps them start obeying him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “repent” can be translated with a word or phrase that means “turn back (to God)” or “turn away from sin and toward God” or “turn toward God, away from sin.”
- Often the term “repentance” can be translated using the verb “repent.” For example, “God has given repentance to Israel” could be translated as “God has enabled Israel to repent.”
- Other ways to translate “repentance” could include “turning away from sin” or “turning to God and away from sin.”

(See also: [forgive](#), [sin](#), turn)

### Bible References:

- Acts 3:19-20
- Luke 3:3
- Luke 3:8
- Luke 5:32
- Luke 24:47
- Mark 1:14-15
- Matthew 3:3
- Matthew 3:11
- Matthew 4:17
- Romans 2:4

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:2** After many years of disobeying God and being oppressed by their enemies, the Israelites **repented** and asked God to rescue them.
- **17:13** David **repented** of his sin and God forgave him.
- **19:18** They (prophets) warned people that God would destroy them if they did not **repent**.
- **24:2** Many people came out to the wilderness to listen to John. He preached to them, saying, “**Repent**, for the kingdom of God is near!”
- **42:8** “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to **receive** forgiveness for their sins.”
- **44:5** “So now, **repent** and turn to God so that your sins will be washed away.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5150, H5162, H5164, G02780, G33380, G33400, G33410

”



**Referenced in:** [Isaiah 6 General Notes](#); [Isaiah 65 General Notes](#)

## restore, restoration

### Definition:

The terms "restore" and "restoration" refer to causing something to return to its original place or condition.

- When a diseased body part is restored, this means it has been "healed."
- A broken relationship that is restored has been "reconciled." God restores sinful people and brings them back to himself.
- If people have been restored to their home country, they have been "brought back" or "returned" to that country.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "restore" could include "renew" or "repay" or "return" or "heal" or "bring back."
- Other expressions for this term could be "make new" or "make like new again."
- When property is "restored," it has been "repaired" or "replaced" or "given back" to its owner.
- Depending on the context, "restoration" could be translated as "renewal" or "healing" or "reconciliation."

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 5:10
- Acts 3:21
- Acts 15:15-18
- Isaiah 49:5-6
- Jeremiah 15:19-21
- Lamentations 5:22
- Leviticus 6:5-7
- Luke 19:8
- Matthew 12:13
- Psalm 80:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H7725, H7999, H8421, G06000, G26750

"

**Referenced in:** [Isaiah 11 General Notes](#); [Isaiah 14 General Notes](#); [Isaiah 49 General Notes](#); [Isaiah 60 General Notes](#); [Isaiah 65 General Notes](#)

## sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

### Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a “sinful nature,” a nature that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- To “sin” could also be translated as to “disobey God” or to “do wrong.”
- Depending on the context “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebellious against God.”
- Depending on the context the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: disobey, [evil](#), flesh, [tax collector](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:1-3
- 1 John 1:10
- 1 John 2:2
- 2 Samuel 7:12-14
- Acts 3:19
- Daniel 9:24
- Genesis 4:7
- Hebrews 12:2
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 18:23
- Leviticus 4:14
- Luke 15:18
- Matthew 12:31

- Romans 6:23
- Romans 8:4

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:15** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- **13:12** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- **20:1** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- **35:1** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinner**s who had gathered to hear him.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- **48:8** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- **49:17** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0817, H0819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H5771, H6588, H7683, H7686, G02640, G02650, G02660, G02680, G03610, G37810, G39000, G42580

"

Referenced in: [Isaiah 22 General Notes](#)

## trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness

### Definition:

To “trust” something or someone is to believe that the thing or person is true or dependable. That belief is also called “trust.” A “trustworthy” person is one you can trust to do and say what is right and true, and therefore one who has the quality of “trustworthiness.”

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To “trust in” Jesus means to believe that he is God, to believe that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A “trustworthy saying” refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “trust” could include “believe” or “have faith” or “have confidence” or “depend on.”
- The phrase “put your trust in” is very similar in meaning to “trust in.”
- The term “trustworthy” could be translated as “dependable” or “reliable” or “can always be trusted.”

(See also: [believe](#), confidence, [faith](#), [faithful](#), true)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:22-24
- 1 Timothy 4:9
- Hosea 10:12-13
- Isaiah 31:1-2
- Nehemiah 13:13
- Psalm 31:5
- Titus 3:8

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they **trusted** in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **14:15** Joshua was a good leader because he **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **17:2** David was a humble and righteous man who **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **34:6** Then Jesus told a story about people who **trusted** in their own good deeds and despised other people.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0539, H0982, H1556, H2620, H2622, H3176, H4009, H4268, H7365, G16790, G38720, G39820, G40060, G41000, G42760

”

**Referenced in:** [Isaiah 30 General Notes](#); [Isaiah 31 General Notes](#); [Isaiah 36 General Notes](#); [Isaiah 37 General Notes](#)

## wrath, fury

### Definition:

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. The Bible describes both people and God as experiencing intense anger. When speaking about God's "wrath," make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage (which might be true of a human person).

- In the Bible, "wrath" often refers to God's righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.
- The "wrath of God" can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God's wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include "intense anger" or "righteous judgment" or "anger."
- God's wrath is just and holy. When talking about God's wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful human rage.

(See also: [judge](#), [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 1:8-10
- 1 Timothy 2:8-10
- Luke 3:7
- Luke 21:23
- Matthew 3:7
- Revelation 14:10
- Romans 1:18
- Romans 5:9

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0639, H2197, H2528, H2534, H2740, H3707, H3708, H5678, H7107, H7109, H7110, H7265, H7267, G23720, G37090, G39490, G39500

"

Referenced in: [Isaiah 63 General Notes](#)

# Contributors

## unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors

Door43 World Missions Community

Aaron Fenlason

Abner Bauman

Adam Van Goor

Alan Bird

Alan Borkenhagen

Alfred Van Dellen

Alice Wright

Allen Bair

Allyson Presswood Nance

Amanda Adams

Andrew Belcher

Andrew Johnson

Andrew Rice

Angelo Palo

Anita Moreau

April Linton

Aurora Lee

Barbara Summers

Barbara White

Becky Hancock

Beryl Carpenter

Bethany Fenlason

Betty Forbes

Bianca Elliott

Bill Cleveland

Bill Pruett

Bob Britting

Bram van den Heuvel

Brian Metzger

Bruce Bridges

Bruce Collier

Bruce Smith

Caleb Worgess

Carlyle Kilmore

Carol Pace

Carol Heim

Caroline Crawford

Caroline Fleming

Caroline S Wong

Carol Lee

Carol Moyer

Carolyn Lafferty

Catherine C Newton

Charese Jackson

Charlotte Gibson

Charlotte Hobbs

Cheryl A Chojnacki  
Cheryl Stieben  
Cheryl Warren  
Christian Berry  
Christine Harrison  
Clairmene Pascal  
Connie Bryan  
Connie Goss  
Craig Balden  
Craig Lins  
Craig Scott  
Cynthia J Puckett  
Dale Hahs  
Dale Masser  
Daniel Lauk  
Daniel Summers  
Darlene M Hopkins  
Darlene Silas  
David Boerschlein  
David F Withee  
David Glover  
David J Forbes  
David Mullen  
David N Hanley  
David Sandlin  
David Shortess  
David Smith  
David Whisler  
Debbie Nispel  
Debbie Piper  
Deborah Bartow  
Deborah Bush  
Deborah Miniard  
Dennis Jackson  
Dianne Forrest  
Donna Borkenhagen  
Donna Mullis  
Douglas Hayes  
Drew Curley  
Ed Davis  
Edgar Navera  
Edward Kosky  
Edward Quigley  
Elaine VanRegenmorter  
Elizabeth Nataly Silvestre Herbas  
Ellen Lee  
Emeline Thermidor  
Emily Lee  
Esther Roman  
Esther Trew  
Esther Zirk  
Ethel Lynn Baker  
Evangeline Puen  
Evelyn Wildgust  
Fletcher Coleman



Freda Dibble  
Gail Spell  
Gary Greer  
Gary Shogren  
Gay Ellen Stulp  
Gene Gossman  
George Arlyn Briggs  
Gerald L. Naughton  
Glen Tallent  
Grace Balwit  
Grace Bird  
Greg Stoffregen  
Gretchen Stencil  
Hallie Miller  
Harry Harriss  
Heather Hicks  
Helen Morse  
Hendrik deVries  
Henry Bult  
Henry Whitney  
Hilary O'Sullivan  
Ibrahim Audu  
Ines Gipson  
Irene J Dodson  
Jackie Jones  
Jacqueline Bartley  
James Giddens  
James Pedersen  
James Pohlig  
James Roe  
Janet O'Herron  
Janice Connor  
Jaqueline Rotruck  
Jeanette Friesen  
Jeff Graf  
Jeff Kennedy  
Jeff Martin  
Jennifer Cunneen  
Jenny Thomas  
Jerry Lund  
Jessica Lauk  
Jim Frederick  
Jim Lee  
Jimmy Warren  
Jim Rotruck  
Jim Swartzentruber  
Jody Garcia  
Joe Chater  
Joel Bryan  
Joey Howell  
John Anderson  
John Geddis  
John D Rogers  
John Hutchins  
John Luton

John Pace  
John P Tornifolio  
Jolene Valeu  
Jon Haahr  
Joseph Fithian  
Joseph Greene  
Joseph Wharton  
Joshua Berkowitz  
Joshua Calhoun  
Joshua Rister  
Josh Wondra  
Joy Anderson  
Joyce Jacobs  
Joyce Pedersen  
JT Crowder  
Judi Brodeen  
Judith Cline  
Judith C Yon  
Julia N Bult  
Patty Li  
Julie Susanto  
Kahar Barat  
Kannah Sellers  
Kara Anderson  
Karen Davie  
Karen Dreesen  
Karen Fabean  
Karen Riecks  
Karen Smith  
Karen Turner  
Kathleen Glover  
Kathryn Hendrix  
Kathy Mentink  
Katrina Geurink  
Kay Myers  
Kelly Strong  
Ken Haugh  
Kim Puterbaugh  
Kristin Butts Page  
Kristin Rinne  
Kwesi Opoku-debrah  
Langston Spell  
Larry Sallee  
Lawrence Lipe  
Lee Sipe  
Leonard Smith  
Lester Harper  
Lia Hadley  
Linda Buckman  
Linda Dale Barton  
Linda Havemeier  
Linda Homer  
Linda Lee Sebastien  
Linn Peterson  
Liz Dakota

Lloyd Box  
Luis Keelin  
Madeline Kilmore  
Maggie D Paul  
Marc Nelson  
Mardi Welo  
Margo Hoffman  
Marilyn Cook  
Marjean Swann  
Marjorie Francis  
Mark Albertini  
Mark Chapman  
Mark Thomas  
Marselene Norton  
Mary Jane Davis  
Mary Jean Stout  
Mary Landon  
Mary Scarborough  
Megan Kidwell  
Melissa Roe  
Merton Dibble  
Meseret Abraham-Zemedede  
Michael Bush  
Michael Connor  
Michael Francis  
Michael Geurink  
Mike Tisdell  
Mickey White  
Miel Horrilleno  
Monique Greer  
Morgan Mellette  
Morris Anderson  
Nancy C. Naughton  
Nancy Neu  
Nancy VanCott  
Neal Snook  
Nicholas Scovil  
Nick Dettman  
Nils Friberg  
Noah Crabtree  
Pamela B Johnston  
Pamela Nungesser  
Pamela Roberts  
Pam Gullifer  
Pat Ankney  
Pat Giddens  
Patricia Brougher  
Patricia Carson  
Patricia Cleveland  
Patricia Foster  
Patricia Middlebrooks  
Paul Mellema  
Paula Carlson  
Paula Oestreich  
Paul Holloway

Paul Nungesser  
Peggy Anderson  
Peggyrose Swartzentruber  
Peter Polloni  
Phillip Harms  
Phyllis Mortensen  
Priscilla Enggren  
Rachel Agheyisi  
Rachel Ropp  
Raif Turner  
Ray Puen  
Reina Y Mora  
Rene Bahrenfuss  
Renee Triplett  
Rhonda Bartels  
Richard Beatty  
Richard Moreau  
Richard Rutter  
Richard Stevens  
Rick Keaton  
Robby Little  
Robert W Johnson  
Rochelle Hook  
Rodney White  
Rolaine Franz  
Ronald D Hook  
Rosario Baria  
Roxann Carey  
Roxanne Pittard  
Ruben Michael Garay  
Russell Isham  
Russ Perry  
Ruth Calo  
Ruth E Withee  
Ruth Montgomery  
Ryan Blizek  
Sam Todd  
Samuel Njuguna  
Sandy Anderson  
Sandy Blanes  
Sara Giesmann  
Sara Van Cott (Barnes)  
Sharon Johnson  
Sharon Peterson  
Sharon Shortess  
Shelly Harms  
Sherie Nelson  
Sherman Sebastien  
Sherry Mosher  
Stacey Swanson  
Steve Gibbs  
Steve Mercier  
Susan Langohr  
Susan Quigley  
Susan Snook

Suzanne Richards  
Sylvia Thomas  
Sze Suze Lau  
Tabitha Price  
Tammy L Enns  
Tammy White  
Teresa Everett-Leone  
Teresa Linn  
Terri Collins  
Theresa Baker  
Thomas Jopling  
Thomas Nickell  
Thomas Warren  
Tim Coleman  
Tim Ingram  
Tim Linn  
Tim Lovestrand  
Tim Mentink  
Tom Penry  
Tom William Warren  
Toni Shuma  
Tracie Pogue  
Tricia Coffman  
Vicki Ivester  
Victoria G DeKraker  
Victor M Prieto  
Vivian Kamph  
Vivian Richardson  
Ward Pyles  
Warren Blaisdell  
Wayne Homer  
Wendy Coleman  
Wendy Colon  
Wilbur Zirk  
Wil Gipson  
William Carson  
William Cline  
William Dickerson  
William Smitherman  
William Wilder  
Yvonne Tallent

## **unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors**

Nicholas Alsop  
Scott Bayer  
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary  
Matt Carlton  
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages  
Dan Dennison  
Jamie Duguid  
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D.Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary  
Michael Francis  
Laura Glassel, MA in Bible Translation  
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages

Jesse Harris  
 C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.  
 Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.  
 Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.  
 John Huffman  
 D. Allen Hutchison, MA in Old Testament, MA in New Testament  
 Jack Messarra  
 Gene Mullen  
 Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University  
 Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies  
 Kristy Nickell  
 Tom Nickell  
 Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics  
 Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics  
 James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages  
 Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary  
 Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics  
 Dean Ropp  
 Joel D. Ruark, M.A.Th., Th.M., Ph.D. in Old Testament, University of Stellenbosch  
 Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary  
 Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy  
 Doug Smith, M.T.S., M.Div., Th.M., Midwestern Baptist Theological Seminary  
 Leonard Smith  
 Suzanna Smith  
 Tim Span  
 Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary  
 Maria Tijerina  
 David Trombold, M. Div.  
 Aaron Valdizan, M.Div., Th.M. in Old Testament, The Masters Seminary  
 James Vigen  
 Hendrik "Henry" de Vries  
 Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary  
 Angela Westmoreland, M.A. in Theological Studies (Biblical Language track)  
 Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics  
 Benjamin Wright, MA Applied Linguistics, Dallas International University  
 Grant Ailie, BA Biblical Studies, M.Div.  
 Door43 World Missions Community

## **unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors**

Nicholas Alsop  
 Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary  
 Matt Carlton  
 George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages  
 Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D. Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary  
 Michael Francis  
 Laura Glassel, MA in Bible Translation  
 Kailey Gregory  
 Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages  
 C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.  
 Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.  
 Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.  
 John Huffman  
 D. Allen Hutchison, MA in Old Testament, MA in New Testament  
 Robert Hunt

Demsin Lachin  
 Jack Messarra  
 Gene Mullen  
 Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University  
 Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies  
 Kristy Nickell  
 Tom Nickell  
 Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics  
 Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics  
 James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages  
 Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary  
 Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics  
 Dean Ropp  
 Joel D. Ruark, M.A.Th., Th.M., Ph.D. in Old Testament, University of Stellenbosch  
 Larry Saltee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary  
 Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy  
 Christopher Smith, M.A.T.S. Gordon-Conwell Theological Seminary, Ph.D. Boston College  
 Leonard Smith  
 Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary  
 David Trombold, M. Div.  
 James Vigen  
 Hendrik ♦ Henry ♦ de Vries  
 Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary  
 Angela Westmoreland, M.A. in Theological Studies (Biblical Language track)  
 Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics  
 Benjamin Wright, MA Applied Linguistics, Dallas International University  
 Door43 World Missions Community

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors**

Jesse Griffin, BA in Biblical Studies, MA in Biblical Languages  
 Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics, MA in Theology, BA in Biblical Studies  
 Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics  
 Henry Whitney, BA in Linguistics  
 James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages  
 Ben Jore, BA Biblical Studies, M.Div.  
 Joel D. Ruark, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Theology  
 Todd L. Price, PhD in New Testament/Linguistics  
 Bev Staley  
 Carol Brinneman  
 Jody Garcia  
 Kara Anderson  
 Kim Puterbaugh  
 Lizz Carlton  
 Door43 World Missions Community

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors**

Andrew Belcher  
 David Book  
 Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages  
 Henry Whitney, Bible translator, Papua New Guinea, 1982-2000  
 Larry Saltee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary  
 Lizz Carlton

Jan Zanutto  
Matthew Latham  
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics  
Richard Joki  
Door43 World Missions Community

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Words Links Contributors**

Door43 World Missions Community  
Jesse Griffin (BA Biblical Studies, Liberty University; MA Biblical Languages, Gordon-Conwell Theological Seminary)  
Perry Oakes (BA Biblical Studies, Taylor University; MA Theology, Fuller Seminary; MA Linguistics, University of Texas at Arlington; PhD Old Testament, Southwestern Baptist Theological Seminary)  
Larry Sallee (Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary)  
Joel D. Ruark (M.A.Th. Gordon-Conwell Theological Seminary; Th.M. Stellenbosch University; Ph.D. Candidate in Old Testament Studies, Stellenbosch University)